



# Being Colloquial in Esperanto

## A Reference Guide

David K. Jordan

As explained in its preface, my book *Being Colloquial in Esperanto*, originally published in 1992, was intended to answer the questions of American learners of that language who had completed an introductory textbook. It therefore consists of more complete descriptions of Esperanto than would be appropriate in an introductory work, but it is also characterized by very many examples, always fully translated. In addition, it tries to use the most familiar vocabulary possible to discuss Esperanto grammar, eschewing innovative analyses in favor of sometimes less precise terms already known to most readers.

Like many another reference work, *Being Colloquial in Esperanto* is likely to be more useful in electronic format than in paper. The on-line rendering of this book still requires proofing, and active links among its many parts have yet to be fully developed.

The web version differs from the paper one in that a small number of proof errors have been corrected and a few minor additions or trivial modifications have been included. The full paper version is still in print and available from the book service of [Esperanto USA](http://esperanto-usa.org).

---

The normal citation form for the paper edition is:

**JORDAN, David K.**

1999 *Being colloquial in Esperanto: a reference guide*. Revised edition. El Cerrito, CA: Esperanto League for North America. ISBN:0-939785-04-8

The full colophon of the paper edition is:

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Jordan, David K., 1942-

Being colloquial in Esperanto: a reference guide /David K. Jor  
ix, 232 p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN 0-939785-04-8 (alk. paper)  
1. Esperanto – Grammar. I. Title.  
PM8211.J67 1999 499'.9925—dc21 99-36515  
CIP

(First edition © 1992 University Press of America.  
Original title: Being Colloquial in Esperanto:  
A Reference Guide for Americans.)

---

## **Preface & Acknowledgements**

### **Preface**

This book is directed principally to speakers of English who have completed a basic course in Esperanto, either with a teacher or alone, and who seek a moderately complete Esperanto reference grammar in English with many examples. It is not intended as a first introduction to Esperanto, and hence is not arranged as a text book. There is of course tremendous variation in English usage around the world. This book uses American English as its standard.

Esperanto was originally the creation of Ludwik Lejzer Zamenhof (1859-1917), who, after years of experimentation, finally made his project public in 1887 in a simple list of sixteen grammatical rules and a vocabulary of a scant 900 roots. To this day Esperanto has a well-deserved reputation for being uncomplicated and logical. This does not imply that Esperanto words, sentences, or turns of phrase correspond exactly with those of English (or any other language). Other languages, after all, have no reputation at all for being logical!

Further, in the course of the century and more of its use, Esperanto has been substantially refined and expanded by its community of speakers, just as Zamenhof intended. Conventions of style and usage have grown up through active usage of the language in different situations and for different goals. Learners of Esperanto therefore often have questions about Esperanto usage. This book seeks to take account of how Esperanto is actually used by thoughtful speakers and writers today, and to provide answers to the kinds of questions English-speaking learners tend to ask.

(A couple of reviewers of the first edition took exception to this approach, arguing that one should not admit to “beginners” that speakers were ever inconsistent with each other or ever had stylistic disagreements, or that any corner of Esperanto could possibly harbor illogicality, or even that Esperanto had evolved or was continuing to evolve. But then one reviewer also argued that examples should never be funny either. So much for reviewers.)

It has always seemed to me that, for the adult student of a foreign language, the best kind of usage to aim for is a style which does not call attention to itself. We want to avoid errors, to be sure, and this book should help you do that. And most of the time we also seek to talk in a way that draws attention to what we are saying, not to how we are saying it. And of course we want to understand everything said to us, even if it is badly phrased. This book is not intended to make you a poet or a novelist or a stand-up comic. But it should help you say what you want to say inconspicuously, without tripping, and to understand what people say to you, even if they speak much more or much less fluently than you do.

The book consists of two parts. Part I is the reference grammar. It is not intended to be a linguistically innovative, complete, or entirely consistent descriptive study of Esperanto grammar. (In Esperanto, Bertilo Wennergren's 2005 *Plena Manlibro de Esperanta Gramatiko*. [El Cerrito: Esperanto-Ligo por Norda Ameriko., 696 pp. ISBN: 0-939785-07-2] is such a work.). Nor does it concentrate equally on all issues. Instead I have included a general description of most of the grammar that a student might learn in an elementary course, but I have made frequent reference to points of style, taste, and usage that are normally left unexplained; and I have expanded points that in my experience give native English speakers particular trouble or that we find especially interesting. I have also included a very large number of examples, since in my experience an example often makes more sense than an abstract explanation. All examples are accompanied by more or less colloquial English translations. The examples are intended to be clear, above all, and after that to be memorable if possible, and amusing at least some of the time.

A problem in creating a book of this kind is how much to rely on the technical terms of traditional grammar (words like “accusative,” “imperative,” and “preposition”). Many learners do not feel comfortable with such terms, and for that reason some instructors try to avoid them, often by painful circumlocution or by alternative terms thought to be simpler. On the other

hand, most Esperanto textbooks do use standard grammatical terms, and in my experience most beginning Esperanto students have in fact learned most of them. People who come to Esperanto after having studied other languages are also already familiar with a range of relatively standardized terms used to talk about language. Alternative grammatical terminologies, I have found, introduce confusing exoticism far more often than clarity. Accordingly, in this book a noun is called a noun and a participle is called a participle.

Deciding to stick with traditional terms in most cases, I have tried to provide minimal definitions in lay language, but have still faced the problem that using such terms necessarily involves links to underlying theoretical issues about Esperanto grammar that cannot appropriately be laid out here. (Should the -N suffix on adverbs be construed as an “accusative,” for example? If not, is the similar directional -N on nouns really an accusative case after all? Why?) Whenever possible, I have tried to follow a line likely to be closest to elementary textbooks, sometimes briefly describing how grammarians differ, but more often quietly suppressing the larger theoretical issues and allowing them to operate out of sight of the reader. On a few points about which Esperanto speakers have become particularly self-conscious (e.g., compound verb forms and transitivity) I have provided fuller explanations of why the issue is interesting in Esperanto. Others (like the inherent part-of-speech properties of roots) I have left largely out of sight, although specialists will easily spot their salience here and there.

Part II contains an alphabetical list of words that seem to me to pose special challenges to an English speaker. Some are false cognates (*falsaj amikoj*); some are words easily confused with each other (*paronimoj*); some are terms that English speakers tend to fit into sentences wrong. Finally, some simply strike me as interesting or amusing. The list is in alphabetical order to facilitate reference use, but it is really intended for casual browsing. I have made no particular attempt to be brief; extensive translated examples are again included to provide clarification, amusement, and with luck an aid to memory.

Nearly all examples used throughout the book are my own. A few derived from writings of Zamenhof have a small raised “Z” at the end, as is customary in Esperanto reference works.

I hope that the new printing of this little book may prove helpful to the

ever growing Anglophone esperantistaro as we strive to fulfill our dream of overcoming language barriers to achieve more satisfying world citizenship.

## **Acknowledgements**

This work has benefited by conversations over the last half century with hundreds of Esperanto speakers, but most important have been students and colleagues in several intensive summer workshops at San Francisco State University and my many friends in the Esperanto Club of San Diego and our international guests. My sense of international usage has been much enlightened by conversations and correspondence with Esperanto speakers in a number of countries, and particularly at the Kultura Centro Esperantista at La Chaux-de-Fonds, Switzerland.

The work has been hugely improved due to the efforts of many helpful readers of preliminary drafts and of the first printing. These include: Scott Cambell, Mingchi Chien, James F. Cool, Bonnie Fonseca-Greber, Nancy Friedlander, Dorothy Holland, Donald Harlow, William R. Harmon, Richard L. Horn, Ralph A. Lewin, E. James Lieberman, Paul Merrill, Gary Moore, Ionel Oneț, Jonathan Pool, Reg Reid, Derek Roff, Donald Rogers, Catherine Schulze, Michael Sloper, and Dorothy Stermer, and members of an advanced Esperanto class taught by Dorothy Holland in 1995. Finally, Gregory V. Wasson kindly provided an Esperanto type font to facilitate computerized preparation of the final copy of the first edition.

After the release of the first edition, my poor proofreading became increasingly evident as many helpful readers worked with the book and sent lists of corrections. I am very much indebted to these patient and constructive people, and the present revision owes much to them.

The second edition still had proof errors, and I am grateful to John P. Prystupa for tagging some of them for me in 2000.

Unsurprisingly, the on-line version has turned up a few more. My thanks are due to Adam Wolf, Douglas Mosier, Camden Parks, and Rommel Martinez for tagging some of them for me. If you find more, I shall be delighted to acknowledge your help here.

D. K. Jordan  
La Jolla, St. Patrick's Day, 1999 (2nd ed.)  
& August 8, 2018 (Acknowledgements Updated)

---

# Table of Contents

## Preface

## Part I: Esperanto Grammar

### 1. Pronunciation

### 2. Alternative Spellings

### 3. Roots & Stems

### 4 (Part 1). Nouns

#### 4.1. Nouns & Pronouns

##### 4.1.1. The Plural of Nouns

##### 4.1.2. Compound Nouns

##### 4.1.3. Word Order With Nouns

##### 4.1.4. Word Order With Personal Names

##### 4.1.5. Deleting -O in Poetry

##### 4.1.6. The Accusative Case.

##### 4.1.7. Personal Names

##### 4.1.8. Place Names

### 4 (Part 2). Pronouns, Adjectives, & Adverbs

#### 4.2. Pronouns

##### 4.2.1. The Pronoun Ci.

##### 4.2.2. The Pronoun Oni.

##### 4.2.3. The Pronoun Si.

#### 4.3. Adjectives

##### 4.3.1. The Plural & Accusative of Adjectives

#### 4.4. Adverbs

##### 4.4.1. Adverbs of Place & Movement (Accusative Adverbs)

#### 4.5. Comparisons of Adjectives & Adverbs

### **5. Prepositions**

### **6. Capitalization**

### **7. Questions**

### **8. The Article**

### **9. Numbers & Measurement.**

#### 9.1. Numbers as Nouns

#### 9.2. Decimal Points

#### 9.3. Ordinal Numbers

#### 9.4. Arithmetic

#### 9.5. Fractions

#### 9.6. Time

#### 9.7. Monarchs

#### 9.8. Quantities of Things

##### 9.8.1. More about Da

### **10. Correlatives**

#### 10.1. Special Features of the Series in -O

#### 10.2. Special Features of the Series in K-

#### 10.3. The Particle Ĉi

#### 10.4. The Particle Ajn

#### 10.5. Special Features of Correlatives Ending in -OM

##### 10.5.1. Kioma = “Whichth”

### **11. Forms in T-K and Ĉ-K: Overview**

#### 11.1. Tio kio = what, whatever, that which

#### 11.2. Tiu kiu = (the) one who

#### 11.3. Tia kia = the kind (of ...) that/who

11.4. Tiel kiel = in whatever way, as ... as

11.5. Tiom kiom = as much as

11.6. Tiam kiam = when(ever)

11.7. Forms in Ĉ-K.

11.8. Forms in T- + Ke/Ĉu

11.8.1. Tio, ke/ĉu

11.8.2. Other Correlatives + Ke to Show Result

## **12. Verbs**

12.1. Four Moods of the Verb

12.1.1. The As-Mood (Indicative Mood)

12.1.2. The Us-Mood (Conditional Mood)

12.1.3. The U-Mood (Imperative/Volitive Mood)

12.1.4. The I-Mood (Infinitive Mood)

12.2. Impersonal Verbs (“Weather Verbs”)

12.3. Participles

12.3.1. Participial Adverbs (Adverbial Participles)

12.3.2. Participial Nouns

12.3.3. The “Passive Voice”

12.3.4. Tense & Aspect (Summary of Appendix)

12.4. Transitivity & Intransitivity: Verbs in -ig- and -iĝ-

12.4.1. Common Transitive Verbs

12.4.2. Common Intransitive Verbs

12.4.3. Verbs That Are Both Transitive & Intransitive

12.4.4. Using -ig- and -iĝ- to Transform Verbs



12.4.5. -ig- with Two Objects

12.4.6. Verbs Made From Nouns and Adjectives With -ig- and -îg-

12.4.7. Nouns and Adjectives With -ig-

12.4.8. Nouns and Adjectives With -îg-

12.4.9. Summary of -ig- and -îg- With Different Kinds of Roots

12.4.10. Igi and Îgi As Independent Verbs

### **13. Affixes (Prefixes & Suffixes)**

13.1. Prefixes

13.2. Suffixes

13.3. Affixes as Roots

13.4. Pseudo-affixes

13.5. Prepositions & Other Roots as Affixes

### **14. Reduplication**

### **15. Writing Letters**

### **16. Speed of Speech**

### **17. Abbreviations**

### **18. Interjections & Verbal Play**

## **Part II: Potentially Troublesome Words**

### **Appendix on Participles**

Participles: The Brief Story

Participles: The Full Story (And the Famous –Ata/Ita– Problem)

---

## Part I: Esperanto Grammar

### Chapter 1: Pronunciation

Each letter of the Esperanto alphabet has a fixed pronunciation, very little influenced by adjacent letters. Here are some approximate English equivalents.

Esperanto Letter	English Letter	English Example
<b>a</b>	<b>a</b>	fAther
<b>b</b>	<b>b</b>	Boat
<b>c</b>	<b>ts</b>	haTS; TSeTSe fly
<b>ĉ</b>	<b>ch</b>	CHurch; CHear
<b>d</b>	<b>d</b>	Danger
<b>e</b>	<b>e</b>	bEt, bEll
<b>f</b>	<b>f</b>	Fantastic
<b>g</b>	<b>g</b>	Go
<b>ĝ</b>	<b>j</b>	Jump, Judge, George, Giant
<b>h</b>	<b>h</b>	Happy
<b>ĥ</b>	<b>kh, ch</b>	bleCH! (very hard h of Scottish <i>Loch Lomond</i> , Hebrew <i>Lachish</i> , German <i>Bach</i> )
<b>i</b>	<b>ee</b>	sEE, machIne
<b>j</b>	<b>y</b>	Yard; boY
<b>ĵ</b>	<b>(s)</b>	meaSure, pleaSure, treaSure, beauJolais
<b>k</b>	<b>k</b>	sKip <sup>1</sup>
<b>l</b>	<b>l</b>	Leap

<b>m</b>	<b>m</b>	Motor
<b>n</b>	<b>n</b>	Nancy
<b>o</b>	<b>o</b>	cOke, lOne, prOletariat <sup>2</sup>
<b>p</b>	<b>p</b>	sPeak (See note about K.)
<b>r</b>	<b>r</b>	a flap or trill R, as in Italian or Spanish <sup>3</sup>
<b>s</b>	<b>s</b>	Sing
<b>ŝ</b>	<b>sh</b>	fiSH
<b>t</b>	<b>t</b>	sTorm (See note about K.)
<b>u</b>	<b>oo</b>	tOO, nOOOn, mOO, OOps! (Never like ew in “mew”!)
<b>ŭ</b>	<b>w</b>	coW (Occurs only after a or e) <sup>4</sup>
<b>v</b>	<b>v</b>	Vacuum
<b>z</b>	<b>z</b>	Zap

Footnotes for the table:

1. Note for the phonologically sophisticated: Esperanto P, T, and K differ from English P, T, and K in being unvoiced and unaspirated (as in several European languages), while the English ones are unvoiced but aspirated. Comparable values of P, T, and K occur in English only when these sounds follow S. However, there is enough phonetic “space” around Esperanto sounds that a little aspiration doesn’t usually hinder communication very much, even if it contributes slightly to an American accent.
2. Some speakers lower this slightly so that it is somewhere between the O in Oaf and the O in Off. The important thing is to avoid drawing it out into a U sound at the end.
3. The ordinary American R is phonetically a vowel. In Esperanto it is one of the least admired features of a strong American accent.

Similarly, speakers of French and German often import a back-of-the-throat, gargled R into Esperanto, which is equally inappropriate and (worse yet) potentially confused with Ĥ. For those who distinguish between a flap and trill R (represented by R and RR in Spanish), either may be used for Esperanto R, although the flap seems to be preferred by most speakers who notice a difference.

4. The letter Ŭ functions very much like an English W. There are few Esperanto words that use it except after A or E, but in borrowed words it is sometimes pressed into service to represent a W sound in other positions (e.g., **poŭpo** alternating with **pobo** = “stern”). Usually when Esperanto borrows words with W sounds in them, it converts the W to a V. For example, the Swahili language is normally called **la svahilia** in Esperanto, but I have seen and heard **la sŭahilia** as well.

In the above list, J corresponds with the English consonant Y. Unlike Y, Esperanto J is *only* a consonant, never a vowel. It merges with an adjacent vowel to form a diphthong, just as English Y often does:

pajlo = straw  
orgojlo = pride  
bonaj knaboj = good boys  
ĉiuj virinoj = all women

The letter Ŭ also merges with a preceding vowel to form a diphthong:

morgaŭ = tomorrow  
apenaŭ = scarcely  
Eŭropo = Europe  
eŭnuko = eunuch

An Esperanto word has one syllable for every vowel (or diphthong) in it. When two vowels come together, each is pronounced separately. A word has as many syllables as it has vowels. The stress (“accent”) always falls on the second-to-the-last syllable:

díru = say (2 syllables)  
donáco = gift (3 syllables)  
familío = family (4 syllables)

morgaŭ = tomorrow (2 syllables)  
Biblio = Bible (3 syllables)  
sekretariino = female secretary (6 syllables)  
kontraŭrevolucia = counter-revolutionary (7 syllables)  
ĉiuj feinoj = all fairies (5 syllables)

When, occasionally, two identical vowels happen to come together, some speakers separate them with a very slight pause (**sekretari-ino**). Others run them together, but hold the combined vowel slightly longer. Both of these approaches can produce pleasing and easily understood Esperanto, if not carried to extremes. If one of the vowels happens to be the second-to-the-last vowel in the word, then the stress on it also helps to show that there are two separate syllables.

Esperanto words should properly have but one stress, and accordingly the difference in pronunciation between **skríbo táblo** (two words) and **skribotáblo** (one word) is one of stress.

Many Esperantists (including most English speakers) do, however, put a secondary stress on the syllable that originally carried it in the first element (**skribotáblo**). That doesn't hurt anything, but don't expect to find it universal.\* Naturally, when the occasion calls for special emphasis, the secondary stress can become primary:

\*-Some observers note a growing tendency for a light secondary stress to appear on the first syllable of four-syllable words. If so, it is a trend of interest to linguists, but for learners it can be ignored.

Ni loĝas en ĥaosa Babelturo. = We live in a chaotic tower of Babel.

En kia turo? = In what kind of tower?

En BABEL-turo! = In a tower OF BABEL.

Developing a good international Esperanto accent requires practice and attention. Speakers who do not make a continuing effort toward proper pronunciation show varying influences from their native languages. Besides the problem cases of some consonants, noted in the list, we English speakers tend to have trouble keeping our vowels pure. E, for example, tends to be drawn

\*-Because native Esperanto speakers are few and spread all over the globe, a certain amount of variation from speaker to speaker is normal. Among skillful speakers, this is less than one might think. For one thing, the influence of writing on speaking is great in Esperanto, so that the most eloquent speakers tend to pronounce words very precisely following their spelling. Despite interference from

out as though it were spelled EJ (as in English “dAY”). This is inelegant, although it can usually be understood. Similarly O is sometimes shortened to something more like the OU in English “OUght” and begins to sound enough like A to confuse some listeners. Sometimes unstressed vowels lose their distinctiveness, producing muddy speech as well as a very non-Esperanto accent. All these tendencies must be resisted if one is to be easily understood internationally.

hundreds of different native languages, Esperanto pronunciation among the best speakers is probably more uniform from Amsterdam to Zanzibar than is the pronunciation of English from Amarillo to Zanesville. With care, it is apparently possible for the adult learner to lose a “foreign” accent in Esperanto much more easily than in other languages. But it does take care.

Aim for the properly international pronunciation and you will reap praise and respect from the international community, who tend to stereotype native English speakers as stumble-tongued. But however excellent your own pronunciation, don't be surprised if you hear some variants, especially among beginners or unskillful speakers.\*

---

## Chapter 2: Alternative Spellings

The circumflex accent over the Esperanto letters Ĉ, Ĝ, Ĥ, Ĵ, andŜ is often called a **ĉapelo** = “hat” in Esperanto, and they are referred to collectively as **ĉapelitaj literoj** = “letters with hats.” The breve accent over Ŭ is usually called a **hoko** = “hook.” Because typefonts of his day often did not include the letters Ĉ, Ĝ, Ĥ, Ĵ,Ŝ, or Ŭ, Zamenhof provided that the sounds represented by these letters could, in a pinch, be spelled CH, GH, HH, JH, and U, respectively. The proposal is rarely acted upon, and the alternative spellings, although understood, are usually experienced as distracting. (Some printers substitute Û for Ŭ. Unlike Ŭ, Û is in many European typefonts, and of course the trivial substitution causes no confusion.)

Ghi apenau shanghighis!  
= Ĝi apenaŭ ŝanĝiĝis!  
= It scarcely changed at all!

These days of computers and telecommunications, however, have seen a revival of these alternative spellings, as well as some other new conventions:

(1) For purposes of telecommunications, the letter X is today often used to represent the diacritical mark, producing CX, GX, HX, JX, and SX. In this usage Ŭ is usually spelled UX (or occasionally W).

Gxi apenaux sxangxigxis!  
= Ĝi apenaŭ ŝanĝiĝis!  
= It scarcely changed at all!

(2) A few writers, usually in Email, place the circumflex before or after the relevant letter, or adopt other relatively obvious but unusual conventions, such as doubling any letter that should have a circumflex.

G^i apenau^ s^ang^ig^is!  
= ^Gi apena^u ^san^gi^gis!  
= GGi apenauu ssanggiggis!  
= Ĝi apenaŭ ŝanĝiĝis!  
= It scarcely changed at all!

The advantage of X over other conventions is that it produces correct Esperanto alphabetical ordering of lists, and facilitates global substitutions if the text is reconverted to standard Esperanto spellings. The international Unicode standard for computing includes the Esperanto letters, so we can probably expect the need for alternative representations to vanish in the next few years.

(The Internet provides various tools for on-line or off-line use. On this web site the [Mad Hatter](#) converts to and from X and XX conventions.)

---

## Chapter 3: Roots & Stems

Esperanto words are built on “roots” (**radikoj**). Some roots can function directly as words. This is true, for example, of prepositions, numbers, conjunctions, pronouns, and some adverbs (like **tuj** = “immediately,” **nun** = “now,” **for** = “away,” and **baldaŭ** = “soon”). Other roots (the vast majority) require grammatical endings to be used as words. By the addition of these endings, roots become nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and verbs. In verbs, the endings also show the tense and mood of the verb. In nouns and adjectives, the endings show the case and number. In adverbs, endings show whether motion is involved. Here is a table of the grammatical endings used in

Esperanto:

Noun	= Root +	o (+j) (+n)
Pronoun	= Root	(+n)
Adjective	= Root +	a (+j) (+n)
Adverb	= Root +	e (+n)
Verb	= Root +	as/is/os/us/u/i

\*-In this book we distinguish “affixes” (prefixes and suffixes), which modify the meaning of a root and produce a “stem,” as against “endings,” which show the function of the word in the sentence. Items like **mal-** and **-ig-** are affixes. Items like **-o** and **-is** are endings. For our purposes the combination of two or more endings (e.g. **-a-j-n**) is still called “an ending.”

\*\* -Some Esperanto grammarians doubt whether it is useful to distinguish “agglutinative affixes” as a distinctive class, since they too are roots and, given appropriate endings, they too can function as words. Examples will be found throughout this book.

In addition to the grammatical endings listed above, roots may be modified by combination with other roots and by a host of “affixes”(prefixes and suffixes) that modify the meaning before the grammatical endings are added.\* (They are technically called “agglutinative affixes.”\*\*) The combination of a root and one or more affixes is called a “stem” in English and is sometimes called a **bazo** in Esperanto.

<b>re-</b>	<b>-memor-</b>	<b>-ig-</b>	<b>-as</b>	<b>=reminds</b>
prefix	root	suffix	ending	
stem			ending	

The use of the grammatical suffixes is discussed in the appropriate sections of this book. A list of the affixes will be found in Section 13.

## Chapter 4 (Part 1): Nouns

The ending -o makes a stem into a noun. The ending -a makes a stem into an adjective. The ending -e makes a stem into an adverb:



<b>Nouns</b>	<b>Adjectives</b>	<b>Adverbs</b>
energio = energy	energia = energetic	energie = energetically
diskreto = discretion	diskreta = discreet	diskrete = with discretion
vespero = evening	vespera = evening	vespere = in the evening
hejmo = home	hejma = domestic	hejme = at home
nokto = night	nokta = nocturnal	nokte = at night
tagmezo = noon	tagmeza = midday	tagmeze = at noon
posttagmezo = afternoon	posttagmeza = afternoon	posttagmeze = in the afternoon
fanatiko = fanaticism	fanatika = fanatical	fanatike = fanatically
kunulo = companion	kunula = companionable	kunule = companionably

## 4.1. Nouns & Pronouns

A noun is, in general, the word used to name a person, animal, place, thing, idea, or abstraction. Words like “house,” “Gerald,” “militarism,” “Connecticut,” and “hypochondria” are nouns. A pronoun is used in a sentence to take the place of a noun. Words like “she,” “it,” and “myself” are pronouns.

### 4.1.1. The Plural of Nouns

Esperanto nouns (and their associated adjectives) form plurals by adding **-j**, producing a pleasant-sounding diphthong modeled on Greek.

bienisto = farmer	bienistoj = farmers
elefanto = elephant	elefantoj = elephants
koloro = color	koloroj = colors
trogo = manger, trough	trogoj = mangers, troughs
granda hundo = big dog	grandaj hundoj = big dogs

### 4.1.2. Compound Nouns

The meaning of a noun may be amplified with a prepositional phrase, nearly always following the noun:

minejo de oro = gold mine

forko por fojno = fork for hay  
leviĝo de la suno = rising of the sun

Such structures can be converted to compound words by attaching the object of the preposition (with or without its final -o) as a prefix to the noun and omitting the preposition. The -o is usually omitted unless its presence eases pronunciation (in the opinion of the speaker).

or(o)minejo = gold mine  
fojn(o)forko = hay fork  
sun(o)leviĝo = sunrise

More examples:

sofolito = sofa bed  
monsumo = sum of money  
skribotablo = writing table  
radiodissendo = radio broadcast  
Esperanto-klubo = Esperanto club  
dormsako = sleeping bag  
vinglaso = wineglass

This is possible only if context still makes the meaning clear.

skatolo da oro = boxful of gold  
skatolo por oro = box for gold  
skatolo el oro = box made of gold  
orskatolo = box for gold or box made of gold

Note that the result is not necessarily the same as that of an adjective-noun compound:

ora skatolo = golden box  
ora minejo = golden mine  
suna leviĝo = sunny rise

As long as the meaning remains clear, the compound can of course become an adjective (ending in a) or adverb (ending in e), just as any other stem can:

ormineja enirejo = gold mine entrance

fojnoforkaj prezoj = prices of hay forks  
sunleviĝa beleco = sunrise beauty

Just as the linking **-o-** is optional, a hyphen may optionally be placed between the joined elements:

sun(o)-leviĝa belo = sunrise beauty

Since the word **esperanta** means “hoping,” the language name **Esperanto** tends to be compounded this way in preference to using the adjective **Esperanta**, although **Esperanta** does occur as well.

Universala Esperanto-Asocio = Universal Esperanto Association

Esperanto-kurso = Esperanto course

Esperanto-Kursaro de Sanfrancisko = Esperanto Workshop of San Francisco

When two noun roots are linked, the linking vowel, if it is included, is **-o-**, but sometimes elements are linked that are not both nouns. Usually nothing special needs to be done to show the precise relationship between them because it is obvious:

de diversaj koloroj = of various  
colors

diverskolora =  
multicolored

kiu donas profiton = which gives a  
profit

profitdona = profitable

de alta nivelo = of a high level

altnivela = high-level

nenion fari = to do nothing

nenifarulo = a do-  
nothing

Occasionally the two elements have an original grammatical relationship between them that requires a different ending on the first element:

unua rango = first rate

unuaranga = first-rate

bele kantinta = having sung well

belekantinto = person who sang well

lasta tempo = recent time

lastatempe = recently

parolantaj angle = speaking English

angleparolantoj = English speakers

nenion fari = do nothing

nenionfarulo = a do-nothing

(Notice that “a do-nothing” is in this list as **nenionfarulo** and in the previous list as **nenifarulo**. Both were suggested by readers of earlier drafts of this book. And both are colloquial. Although the guiding logic must be observed, it is often the case that there is more than one “correct” form. Some stylists regard the shortest correct form as slightly preferable.)

#### **4.1.3. Word Order With Nouns**

Note that a structure is possible in English but not in Esperanto: the piling up of a series of nouns each of which modifies one or more of the ones that follow: “Orange County gun control activist hater” is meaningful in English, but consists entirely of nouns. The relationships among the elements are shown entirely by word order. In Esperanto it is also essential to show the relationships, but differently, since no free-standing noun ever modifies the noun that follows it.

**Rio Grande Valley Esperanto League**

**Wrong: Rio Grande Valo Esperanto Ligo**

**Right: Esperanto-Ligo de la Valo “Rio Grande”**

**San Francisco State University:**

**Wrong: San Francisco Ŝtata Universitato**

**Right: Ŝtata Universitato de San Francisco (or Sanfrancisko)**

**Right: Sanfranciska Ŝtata Universitato**

**Orange County gun control activist hater**

**Wrong: Oranĝo kantono pafilo limigo aktivulo malamanto**

**Right: Oranĝkantona malamanto de aktivuloj pri limigo de pafiloj**

**Right: Oranĝkantona malamanto de aktivuloj por limigo de pafiloj**

**“Right” but silly: Oranĝ-kanton-pafil-limig-aktivul-malamanto**

(The last, “silly” line is the same as the “wrong” one, but it is technically possible because it is a single noun; the first was a string of nouns, each with its own final **-o**.)

It is usual for proper names used as titles of things to follow the nouns they refer to. The article **la** is usually used when the named item is unique. Some writers put quotation marks around the proper name, especially if it does not follow standard Esperanto spelling:

knabino de la kantono “Cook” = a Cook County girl

la universitato “Cornell” = Cornell University

la lago Ĝenevo = Lake Geneva

la lago Barney = Barney Lake  
 la monto Sankta Heleno = Mount St. Helens  
 la urbo "Saskatoon" = Saskatoon  
 aŭtomobilo Nissan = a Nissan automobile  
 la restoracio Esperanto = the Esperanto Restaurant  
 la hotelo U.S. Grant = the U.S. Grant Hotel  
 la ŝtato Vaŝingtono = Washington State  
 komputilo IBM = an IBM computer  
 la insulo Fajro = Fire Island  
 la ŝoseo Ventura = the Ventura Freeway  
 la kolegio Bennington = Bennington College  
 la provinco Ŝanŝji = Shanxi Province

A minority usage links the proper name with a hyphen as a prefix: **Cornell-universitato**. People who speak languages with a modifier-before-modified word order (like English or Chinese) tend to create more compounds of this kind than is normal in Esperanto. Thus Chinese dynasties and provinces are routinely referred to in Chinese publications as, for example, **Hunan-provinco** or **Tang-dinastio**, where more international usage would say **la provinco Hunan** and **la dinastio Tang**.\*

\*-The hyphenated usages (**Tang-dinastio**, etc.) are not particularly graceful Esperanto, but they are common to virtually all publications from China and have become more or less standard when speaking of China. I recommend against extending this to any other part of the world. It makes less jarring Esperanto to live in **la ŝtato Connecticut** than in **Connecticut-ŝtato** (or in **Kanetikat-ŝtato**!).

#### 4.1.4. Word Order With Personal Names

In Western Europe and America the family name follows the given name: Adelle Hanson is Ms. Hanson. In East Asia the family name comes first: Wang Delu is Mr. Wang. In other regions usage also varies. To simplify identifying the surname, it is common (although not yet universal) to write the surname all in capital letters: WANG Delu, Adelle HANSON, Yoram BILU, HUGIMOTO Tacuo. I recommend this procedure. (In Japan some Esperantists capitalize the first name but not the given name: Huĝimoto tacuo. This usage is limited, so far as I know, to Japan and Korea.)

#### 4.1.5. Deleting -O in Poetry

The original rules of Esperanto permit one to omit the final **-o** of a noun (never a final **-oj** or **-on**!). The missing **-o** is replaced with an apostrophe. The

stress remains where it was, so the effect is to have the noun end with a stressed syllable. This is common in poetry. Notice what a mess it would make of the following translation of “Mary Had a Little Lamb” if we could not omit the final **-o**’s on two nouns.

Sur la ŝafido de Meri’	On Mary’s lamb
ŝaflano neĝe blankis;	the fleece was snowy white;
ne gravis kien iris ŝi,	it didn’t matter where she went,
ŝafid’ neniam mankis.	the lamb was never lacking.
—Derek Roff	(Literal translation)

The omission of the final **-o** of a noun is most common in poetry, but it occasionally occurs in other contexts, sometimes humorously:

Dank’ al Dio! = Thank God!

Venu la manĝo! = Bring on the food! (Literally: Let the meal come!)

Kaj nun estas ĉio en ord’. = And now everything is in order.

#### **4.1.6. The Accusative Case.**

The so-called accusative case is marked in Esperanto with the letter **-n** at the end of adjectives, nouns, or pronouns. When there is a **-j** to show the plural, the **-n** follows the **-j**:

Mi deziras kukojn. = I want cakes.

Ĉu kafon vi deziras? = Do you want coffee?

Ŝi min ĉiam batas! = She always hits me!

Some grammarians regard the expression “accusative case” as referring to a relationship between a noun and a verb; others consider it to refer to a distinctive form of a word (in Esperanto, any form to which the ending **-n** has been added). This second is the definition we will use here. In Esperanto the accusative ending may be added to nouns, pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs of location.

##### **4.1.6.1. The Accusative of Direct Object**

The direct object of a verb in Esperanto is always in the accusative case. In English, the subject and direct object of a verb are shown by word order. In Esperanto, they are shown by the presence or absence of the accusative

ending **-n**. For this reason, word order is much more flexible in Esperanto.

Viro mordas hundon.

= Man bites dog.

Hundon mordas viro.

= Man bites dog.

Viro hundon mordas.

= Man bites dog.

Hundo mordas viron.

= Dog bites man.

Viron mordas hundo.

= Dog bites man.

Viron hundo mordas.

= Dog bites man.

Although in principle the subject, verb, and object may occur in any order, in fact, there *is* a tendency for Esperanto word order to be very similar to English word order, although this is by no means inevitably the case. Since grammatical information is shown in Esperanto word endings, fluent speakers feel free to vary word order for emphasis or stylistic effect. If you assume the word order of an Esperanto phrase parallels English, you will be right some of the time, but you will be misled sooner or later. I suggest making it a practice to try to create Esperanto sentences in which the word order does *not* follow the English pattern in order to try to break the habit of depending on word order for grammatical information. Instead of saying **Ĉu vi deziras kukon?** = “Do you want cake?” try to remember to say **Ĉu vi kukon deziras?** or **Ĉu deziras vi kukon?** or **Ĉu kukon vi deziras?**

The fact that there is a clearly marked accusative form leads to some efficiencies not shared with English. For example, sometimes we do not need to repeat a verb for a second clause:

Ŝi amas blondulojn, sed mi brunulojn.

= She likes blonds, but I [like] brunets.

Riĉaĵojn li havas; mi nur “psikan enspezon”.

= He has riches; I [have] only “psychic income”.

Hieraŭ Daĉjeto mordis la hundon, hodiaŭ la katon.

= Yesterday Little Davey bit the dog, today [he bit] the cat.

Hieraŭ Daĉjeto mordis la hundon, hodiaŭ la kato.

= Yesterday Little Davey bit the dog, today the cat [did so].

#### 4.1.6.2. Other uses of the Accusative

##### 4.1.6.2.1. The Accusative of “Movement Toward”

When a preposition indicates location, the accusative of movement is used to shift its meaning to location *toward which* the action proceeds.

Li paŝis en la salono.  
= He paced about in the living room.

Li paŝis en la salonon.  
= He paced into the living room.

La kato sidis sur la tablo.  
= The cat was sitting on the table.

La kato saltis sur la tablon.  
= The cat jumped onto the table.

La muso kuris sub la planko.  
= The mouse ran around under the floor.

La muso kuris sub la plankon.  
= The mouse ran [to] under the floor.

The movement away from a place, by the way, is expressed by adding the preposition *de* before the preposition. No accusative is necessary:

La kato saltis de sur la tablo.  
= The cat jumped off of the table.

La supo de Daĉjeto iel fluis de sur lia telero sur lian pantalonon.  
= Little Davey's soup somehow leaked off of his plate onto his trousers.

What constitutes “motion towards” is not always clear, particularly in metaphorical cases, although it seems as though more and more speakers are sensing “motion” in cases where their grandparents might not have. Esperanto speakers have differing instincts about usages like the following examples. The capitalized Ns would be omitted by some, included by others.

Mi serĉos en ŝiajN komputilajN dosierojN.  
= I'll look into her computer files.



Li elspezas sian monon en ludojN.  
= He spends his money on games.

Eŭropanoj investas tro da tempo en la lernadoN de lingvoj.  
= Europeans invest too much time in the study of languages.

The accusative is not used after the prepositions **al** = “to,” **el** = “from,” or **ĝis** when it means “as far as,” since these prepositions already show motion:

La kantistino vojaĝis al Vinipego.  
= The singer travelled to Winnipeg.

La bubaco kuris el la domo.  
= The urchin ran out of [or from] the house.

La muso kuris el sub la planko.  
= The mouse ran out from under the floor.

Ŝi kuniros nur ĝis la montopiedo.  
= She will go along only as far as the foot of the mountain.

#### **4.1.6.2.2. The Accusative of Movement With Adverbs**

Since some adverbs also indicate location, the same **-n** device is used to indicate “motion toward” expressed by adverbs:

Ŝi nur staris tie.  
= She just stood there.

Ŝi rapide kuris tien.  
= She quickly ran [to] there.

Li kuris de tie.  
= He ran from there.

Venu ĉi tien!  
= Come here.

Li nun estas hejme.  
= He's at home now.

Li ĵus iris hejmen.

= He just went home.

In modern English this distinction between “place where” and “place to which” is not often shown in the words themselves\* We must depend upon the verb and the context to tell us whether “there” means “at that place” or “to that place” (= “thither”). In Esperanto the **-n** is *always* used in adverbs showing motion towards a place, so that **tien** and **hejmen** always indicate “place to which” while **tie** and **hejme** always show “place where.”

\*-Older English sensibly had “there,” “thither” (= “to there”), and “thence” (= “from there”) and “where,” “whither,” and “whence,” but that was about the extent of it.

#### 4.1.6.2.3. The Accusative Replacing a Preposition

In his original publication of Esperanto, Zamenhof provided (as rule 14) that when no other preposition was clearly applicable, the “generic” preposition **je** could be used. Alternatively, the accusative case could be used. This must have been the result of some very deep thinking on his part. Many times it is difficult to decide what the “natural” relationship is between a verb and its complement. Why do we “see” something but we “look at” it? Why do we “hear” something but “listen to” it? Why do we “thank” somebody but “speak to” the same person? Why the “at” and the “to”? How should we expect Esperanto verbs to act?

Zamenhof’s ingenious solution allowed great flexibility, and several intransitive verbs are found just as often with an accusative as with a preposition.\*

\*-Although Zamenhof probably intended the preposition/accusative alternation to be confined to **je**, it was early extended to other prepositions, most conspicuously to **al** in actual practice.

Demandu al ŝi; ne demandu min!  
= Ask her; don’t ask me!

Ne danku min; danku al Marko!  
= Don’t thank me; thank Mark.

Even so-called travel verbs, though more rarely, sometimes undergo this change:

iri la kinejon = iri al la kinejo = to go to the movies

veturi Novjorkon = veturi al Novjorko = to travel to New York

Some speakers even use the accusative as a way to express the indirect object, although this usage is considered substandard:\*

**Wrong: *Ŝi donis min belan portreton.* = She gave me a beautiful portrait.**

**Right: *Ŝi donis al mi belan portreton.* = She gave me a beautiful portrait.**

**Wrong: *Li min kantadis kaj kantadis.* = He sang and sang to me.**

**Right: *Li al mi kantadis kaj kantadis.* = He sang and sang to me.**

\*-Readers of early drafts of this book universally condemned such forms, although I have heard some of them use them in unguarded moments, as I do myself. The use of **-n** instead of **al** to show an indirect object may be the Esperanto equivalent of the English illiteracy “ain’t.” Everybody seems ashamed of it, but it ain’t easy to stamp out. For pronouns it corresponds of course with a common turn of phrase in Romance languages.

#### 4.1.6.2.4. The Accusative With Intransitive Verbs

The opposite process also occurs, and a direct object becomes the object of the preposition **al**. This happens when a causative verb with the suffix **-ig-** takes two objects, one for the root, and the other for the causative suffix. This is treated in detail in Section 12.4.5, but we can anticipate it here.

*Ni aĉetos kolbason.* = We shall buy a sausage.

*Ni aĉetigos ŝin.* = We’ll make her buy [something].

Note that **aĉet-ig-os** has two objects, one for **aĉet-** (she is buying a sausage) and one for **-ig-** (we are making her do it). It is usual to convert whichever of these is the person into a prepositional phrase with **al**:\*

\*-It is also possible, if uncommon, to separate the **-ig-** and make it a separate word, as in English: **Mi igos ŝin aĉeti la kolbason.** This is not actually bad Esperanto, so long as it is not overused. More than once a month counts as overuse.

**Wrong: Ni aĉetigos ŝin la kolbason. = We'll make her buy the sausage.**

**Right: Ni aĉetigos la kolbason al ŝi. = We'll make her buy the sausage.**

**Right: Ni aĉetigos al ŝi la kolbason. = We'll make her buy the sausage.**

**Right but Rare: Ni aĉetigos ŝin je la kolbaso. = We'll make her buy the sausage.**

Poetry, often pushing grammar to its limits, is another area in which occasionally a direct object turns into a prepositional phrase, usually with **al**:

Kaj la steloj tuŝintaj per flam' / La  
flugilojn brulvundis al mi.  
= "And the stars that had touched  
their / Wings with flame, burned [to]  
me."\*

\*-E. Mieželaitis (1971) 1986 *Homo*. Trad.  
Petras Čeliaskas. Vilnius: Vaga.

#### 4.1.6.2.5. The Accusative of Exclamation.

The accusative ending -n is generally used in greetings consisting of a single noun phrase:

Saluton! = Hello!

Gratulon! = Congratulations!

Bonan matenon! = Good morning!

Bonan Tagon! = Hello! (used anytime during daylight hours)

Feliĉan Novan Jaron! = Happy New Year!

Dankon! = Thanks!\*

One explanation for the accusative in these expressions is that these forms are shortened from full sentences beginning **Mi deziras al vi ...** This helps the usage seem logical, but the hypothetical "full" forms are virtually never used.

\*-The related verb is **dankas**. One thanks someone or "to" (**al**) someone "for" (**pro** or **por**) something: **Mi dankas al vi por/ pro ĝi.** = "Thanks for that." (**Pro** is generally preferred over **por** in thanks.) Zamenhof used the expression **Dank' al** to mean "thanks to." It is apparently a short form of **[Estu] danko al ...** = "[Let] thanks be to ..." A common expression is **Dank' al Dio, ke ...** = "Thank God that..."

#### 4.1.6.2.6. The Accusative in Days and Dates

Names of days (including names of days of the week, which, by the way, are not capitalized) are normally used with the **-n** ending to mean *on* such and such a day or to mean *every* such-and-such a day. An alternative to this is the adverb ending **-e**.\*

lundon ~ lunde = on Monday, Mondays,  
every Monday

Kristnaskon ~ Kristnaske = on Christmas, every Christmas

iun tagon ~ iutage = one day, some day

ĉiun tagon ~ ĉiutage = every day

With months and years, it is slightly commoner to use a preposition: **en**  
**februaro** = “in February.” \*

Dates are usually given with an ordinal number:

Hodiaŭ estas la 7-a de julio. = Today is the 7th of July.

To indicate the date of an action, the preposition *je* or (much more commonly) the accusative is used:

Ŝi mortis je la 4-a de septembro, 1979.  
= Ŝi mortis la 4-an de septembro, 1979.  
= She died September 4th, 1979.

\*-In the case of names of holidays or of days of the week, most speakers observe a distinction between accusative (one time) and adverb (many times). But most speakers use both expressions in both meanings. If you really want to stress, say, every Christmas, it is clearer to say **ĉiun Kristnaskon** than to depend upon your hearer interpreting the **-e** that way.

\*-With the element **foj-** = “time,” it is common for the form **foje** to mean “once” (= **unufoje** = **unu fojon**) rather than “sometimes” (= **kelkfoje** = **kelkajn fojojn**). This is a matter of comparative frequency, however: some speakers do in fact use **foje** for “sometimes” or “a few times,” so you should be prepared for such a usage. **Foje** never means “every time” (which is **ĉiufoje** or **ĉiun fojon**).

#### 4.1.6.2.7. The Accusative with Measurements

In measurements of time, distance, or quantity of anything, the unit of measure often functions to complement the verb, and tells us how much of something is involved. In this circumstance, the accusative is usual in Esperanto, substituting for **dum**, **je**, and other prepositions.

Li parolis tri horojn.

= He talked for three hours. (= **dum tri horoj**)

Li studis teologion dekkvar jarojn kaj ne plu kredas je Dio.

= He studied theology for fourteen years and no longer believes in God.  
(= **dum dekkvar jaroj**)

Ŝi ŝoforis 200 kilometrojn hore.

= She drove 125 miles an hour. (= **je rapideco de 200 kilometroj hore**)

Li estas du metrojn alta.

= He's 6 feet 7 inches tall! (= **alta ĝis du metroj**)

Ili loĝas plurajn kilometrojn for.

= They live several kilometers away. (= **for je pluraj kilometroj**)

#### 4.1.7. Personal Names

Personal names are nouns, and can reasonably be expected to end in **-o**, like other Esperanto nouns. But there is a wide latitude in this, since people's names already exist in other forms in their home languages. There is no strong need for proper names to end in any particular letter. Many Esperantists over the years have preferred that even Esperantized names end in **-a** for women and **-o** for men (**Paŭla** and **Paŭlo**, for example). Many common European names have more or less standardized Esperanto forms: **Johano**, **Miĥaelo**, **Maria**, **Ana**, **Ludoviko**, etc.

Some people prefer to retain the national-language pronunciation but respell the name in Esperanto orthography. For example, "Mike" = **Majk**, "Jane" = **Ĝejn**.

Others keep the original spelling but change the pronunciation to match it. For example, I pronounce my last name, Jordan, "Yordahn" in Esperanto; people can still find me in the telephone book that way.

Still others translate their names into Esperanto words with the same meanings. Thus "Hope" becomes **Espero**, "June" becomes **Junio**, and so on. This is reasonable only when the result is not silly. "David" is derived from a Hebrew word meaning "beloved," but I have never met a David who went around calling himself **Amata** in Esperanto!

Some people leave the original spelling but give a figured pronunciation

in parentheses after it and expect people to learn to pronounce it despite the non-Esperanto original spelling. If I did that I would spell the name **Jordan** (**Ĝordn**) and pronounce it as I do in English.

Finally (and least helpfully), some people write and pronounce their name exactly as they do in their native language, leaving it to the listener or reader to “wing it.” That only works if both parties already speak the same language, which defeats the point of Esperanto in the first place. Obviously this is to be avoided!

**Recommendation:** Dealing with foreign names is a problem in any language, and there is no perfect solution. Remember that for at least some Esperanto speakers, your name, no matter how simple it seems to you to be, is potentially difficult. Furthermore, names that cannot be pronounced can seldom be remembered. Here are some ways to try to make life easier for your fellow speakers:

1. Use the established Esperanto name if there is one corresponding to yours (**Johano** for John, for example).
2. If your name is fairly simple to spell and pronounce for people of other language backgrounds, leave it alone.
3. If it is difficult for others to spell, but not pronounce, give figured pronunciation (in regular Esperanto spelling) after the normal spelling.
4. If it contains sounds that are difficult for non-English speakers, re-pronounce it following Esperanto rules or adopt a more Esperantized nickname to use in Esperanto circles. There is nothing wrong with having an Esperanto nickname, especially if your “regular” name is found difficult for people to pronounce. If your name is Thaddeus Auchinleck, consider calling yourself **Johano** among foreign Esperantists.
5. Provide your name in writing wherever possible.
6. Don’t be a stickler about the pronunciation of your name. If you can recognize it well enough to come to dinner when called, that’s good enough.

#### 4.1.8. Place Names

From the name of a place, one can use the suffix **-an-** to create the name of a person who is associated with the place:

Novjorko = New York	novjorkano = New Yorker
Berlino = Berlin	berlinano = Berliner
Amazono = Amazon River	amazonano = Amazonian
Peruo = Peru	peruano = Peruvian
Kongo = Congo	Kongano = Congolese
Usono = USA	usonano = American
Hongkongo = Hong Kong	Hongkongano = Hongkonger
Irano = Iran	iranano = Iranian
Tunizo = Tunis	tunizano = person from Tunis

(This is not the only use of the suffix **-an-**. See the section on affixes.)

From the name of an ethnic group, one can use the suffix **-uj-** to create the name of a place that is associated with that group:

franco = a Frenchman	Francujo = France
polo = a Pole	Polujo = Poland
ĉino = a Chinese	Ĉinujo = China
kurdo = a Kurd	Kurdujo = Kurdistan
heleno = an ancient Greek	Helenujo = ancient Greece
berbero = a Berber	Berberujo = land of the Berbers

When the place associated with the ethnicity roughly corresponds with a modern state, the form in **-uj-** is usually used as the name of the country (such as **Francujo** = “France”). Other **-uj-** forms have nothing on modern political maps that exactly corresponds to them (such as **Kurdujo** = “Kurdistan”). The geographically dispersed world of Esperanto speakers, by the way, is often affectionately designated **Esperantujo**, which defies graceful translation into English, since “Esperantoland” sounds like a theme park.

#### 4.1.8.1. The Use of **-uj-** and **-i-** in Place Names

The basic meaning of **-uj-** is “container” or “producer” of something, and it is used for baskets and boxes, as well as (especially in early Esperanto) fruit trees. (See the section on affixes.) Thus **Francujo** is literally a “container of Frenchmen.” There is something slightly silly about the idea of containers of Frenchmen, however. Further, many names for countries end in **-ia** in several European languages, and some people feel that **-io** is therefore most



appropriate in Esperanto. To make things more complex, the word **lando** = “country” early came into use to make compound names for countries (as in **Skotlando** = “Scotland” or **Pollando** = “Poland”). Thus **Francujo** and **Francio** are in use, and **Franclando** is not by any means impossible. If there is a trend, it is for **-i-** to replace **-uj-** most of the time in modern Esperanto.

Since **-i-** was not originally designated for this usage, nouns ending in **-io** are not always country names.

Svedio = Sweden  
Bulgario = Bulgaria  
fantazio = fantasy  
kalumnio = slander

Furthermore, unlike **-uj-**, **-i-** often cannot be removed to make the name of a resident.

Francio (= Francujo) = France  
franco = a French national  
but:  
Kalifornio (the place) = California  
kaliforniano (NOT kaliforno!) = a Californian

Unfortunately, in some countries (especially in Spain and Latin America) the name of the capital is the same as or closely similar to the name of the country. Examples are Guatemala and Mexico (with capitals also called Guatemala and Mexico). Some Esperantists have experimented with using the base form for the name of the capital and the **-i-** suffix for the name of the country. (Thus **Meksiko** is the capital, populated by **meksikanoj**; and **Meksikio** is the country, inhabited by **meksikianoj**.)

There are two problems with this. First, it flies in the face of already ingrained international custom if Mexico is **Meksikio** in Esperanto when it is simply “México” in Spanish and most other languages. The same goes for Mexicans being **meksikianoj** rather than simply **meksikanoj**. More importantly, however, it would logically also apply to subordinate levels of administration, changing province and region names all over the Spanish-speaking world, and possibly in other regions as well, often for terms that lack established Esperanto names anyway. (Albacete is both a city and a province in Spain. Must we create **Albateto** and **Albatetio** as contrasting Esperanto names?)

It gets worse. Brazil has its capital at Brazilia. Should **Brazilo** be the country and **Brazilio** the capital, following Brazilian usage in Portuguese? That would offend our growing Esperanto sense that country names should end in **-io**, especially when contrasting with names of capitals. But if one makes **Brazilio** the country and **Brazilo** the capital, one reverses Portuguese usage, which has been borrowed into most other languages and has become international usage. This leaves Esperanto high and dry as “odd man out” against ingrained habits around the world.

Note that when the root designates a member of an ethnic group (such as **franco**), the country is the derived form (**Francujo**), but when the root designates a region (such as **Kanado**), it is the resident of the region that is designated by the derived form (**kanadano**).

It was probably a mistake from the beginning to allow regional names derived from ethnic group names to do secondary service as names of political entities, since it produces a division between national states that seem to be conceived of as monoethnic and those that seem to be seen as polyethnic.

#### “Polyethnic”

Kanado = land of kanadanoj  
Usono = land of usonanoj  
Irano = land of irananoj  
Venezuelo = land of venezuelanoj  
Tibeto = land of tibetanoj

#### “Monoethnic”

Britujo = land of britoj  
Francujo = land of francoj  
Japanujo = land of japanoj  
Egiptujo = land of egiptoj

Zamenhof probably did not really think of nations this way. But European languages generally agreed in making approximately such a distinction, and Zamenhof, seeking internationality, generally followed them. Thus **Rusujo** (Russia) was the land of the Russians; never mind that non-Russians lived there too. But **Usono** (USA) was a root in itself, and a resident of it took his national identity from the name of the country, whatever his ethnic identity might be. **Norvegujo** took its name from its residing **norvegoj**, while **Tibeto** gave its name to the **tibetanoj** who dwelt there. Whether the unmodified root named a person or a place was, in the

\* - The traditional Esperanto name for India, **Hindujo**, was derived from the (ethnic) name of the inhabitants, **hindo** = “Indians.” Fascinatingly, **Hindujo** is rapidly being replaced today by the country name **Bharato** (or **Barato**). Citizens of that land are therefore **bharatanoj**, a citizenship category rather than an ethnic one.

end, the result of the historical evolution of the European languages that contributed to it.\*

There are three practical results for Esperanto usage:

1. If a dictionary form ends in **-lando** or **-ujo** and names a country (such as **Pollando** or **Britujo**), then dropping these endings and substituting a final **-o** gives the name of a citizen (**polo**, **brito**). This is true for *some* country names that end in **-io**, but not for all. **Italio** is inhabited by **italoj**, but **Kolombio** by **kolombianoj**, who should not be referred to as **kolomboj** = “pigeons.”
2. If the country name ends any other way, replacing the final **-o** with **-ano** will produce the name for a person living there. (**Kanado** is inhabited by **kanadanoj**, **Usono** by **usonanoj**.)
3. For a few countries, usage varies and may be hotly contested:\*

<b>-o &amp;-ano</b>	<b>-io/-ujo &amp; -o</b>	<b>English</b>
Koreo : koreanoj	Koreio : koreoj	Korea(ns)
Brazilo : brazilanoj	Brazilio : braziloj	Brazil(ians)
Meksiko : meksikanoj	Meksikio : meksikoj	Mexico, Mexicans
Egipto : egiptanoj	Egiptio : egiptoj	Egypt(ians)

An interesting aspect of this problem is differing opinions about where authority ought to lie to make a decision. One position argues that Esperanto speakers in the country concerned should establish the usage that pleases them. The opposite position argues that the Esperanto Academy possesses both the moral authority and the view of the overall system to make the best decision. There is room for honest disagreement on this, as well as for considerable hot-headedness.

\*-One of the most acrimonious recent discussions has been over the name for Korea. Using the form **Koreo/koreano** (just as in English we say “Korea” and “Korean”) has been traditional in Esperanto and still has support. However it seems to imply that Koreans are not also an ethnic group, which some Koreans find offensive. Most (not all!) Koreans now use the form **koreo** for a Korean and **Koreujo** or **Koreio** for the country.

My prediction is that usage will eventually decide that each country has an invariant name (often but not always including the emergent suffix **-i-**) to which **-an-** is added to name a citizen. We will see the appearance of such forms as **franciano** for a citizen of France. Names of ethnic groups will then

emerge as a separate, often similar, set of roots, to which the suffix **-uj-** will be added to designate the “community” of the people designated by the root. Thus **Ĉinio** will mean China (as it already does); **ĉiniano** will be a citizen of China; **ĉino** will be an ethnic Chinese anywhere in the world; and **Ĉinujo** will refer to the international “Chinese community” or “Greater China.” When the name of the country does not have any strong historical relationship to any particular ethnic name, there will, as now, be no corresponding (and confusing) ethnic group term.

<b>Nation</b>	<b>Citizen</b>	<b>Ethnic Person</b>	<b>Community</b>
Francio	franciano	franco	Francujo
Rumanio	rumanio	rumano	Rumanujo
Ĉinio	ĉiniano	ĉino	Ĉinujo
Malajzio	malajziano	malajo	malajujo
Bharato	bharatano	hindo	hindujo
Usono	Usonano		
Koreio	koreiano	koreo	Koreujo
Zambio	zambiano		

This evolution of the language has not yet fully taken place, even though hints of it exist, so it is best to stick with ordinary usage.

Esperanto is not alone in facing such problems. In English we find such spelling doublets as Peking and Beijing, Ceylon and Sri Lanka, Hong Kong and Hongkong (and Xianggang for that matter), Moldova and Moldavia, or alternative names like Falklands and Malvinas. English too is unclear about whether a “Chinese businessman” is of Chinese nationality or Chinese ethnicity (or whether a “Chinese specialist” is even Chinese). On the whole, Esperanto has approached the problem more methodically than English has and shows better signs of evolving real clarity in this area.

**Recommendation:** (1) Follow the usage of your hosts when traveling or of your guests when you are the host; some of them may feel strongly on the matter. (2) Prefer forms ending in **-land** when they are already common (**Skotlando**, **Pollando**). (3) use **-i-** in preference to **-uj-** most of the rest of the time. (4) Given a choice, I tend to resist forms that introduce the **-i-** into country names like Mexico and Brazil. It seems clearer to designate the capital of Mexico as **Meksikurbo** and simply to let the city of Brazilia remain **Brazilio**. I find I am almost never misunderstood this way.

#### 4.1.8.2. Table of Nation Names

Here is a table of nation names in Esperanto as presented by the Universal Esperanto Association in its 2010 yearbook (p. 278), together with their official two-letter abbreviations as developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO 3166), and their English names. It is here organized in Esperanto alphabetical order.

AF	Afgano	Afghanistan
AL	Albanio	Albania
DZ	Alĝerio	Algeria
AO	Angolo	Angola
AG	Antigvo k Barbuda	Antigua & Barbuda
AR	Argentino	Argentina
AM	Armenio	Armenia
AU	Aŭstralio	Australia
AT	Aŭstrio	Austria
AZ	Azerbajĝano	Azerbaijan
BD	Bangladeŝo	Bangladesh
BB	Barbado	Barbados
BH	Barejno	Bahrain
BE	Belgio	Belgium
BZ	Belizo	Belize
BJ	Benino	Benin
BM	Bermudoj	Bermuda
MM	Birmo	Myanmar (Birma)
BY	Bjelorusio	Belarus
BW	Bocvano	Botswana
BO	Bolivio	Bolivia
BA	Bosnio k Hercegovino	Bosnia-Herzegovina
BR	Brazilo	Brazil
GB	Britio	Britain
BN	Brunejo	Brunei
BG	Bulgario	Bulgaria
BI	Burundo	Burundi
BT	Butano	Bhutan
TD	Ĉado	Chad
CZ	Ĉeĥio	Czech Rep.

CF	Centrafriko	Central African Republic
CL	Ĉilio	Chile
CN	Ĉinio	China
DK	Danio	Denmark
DO	Dominika Respubliko	Dominica
CI	Ebur-Bordo	Cote D'Ivoire
EG	Egiptio	Egypt
EC	Ekvadoro	Equador
ISO	Esperanto	English
EE	Estonio	Estonia
ET	Etiopio	Ethiopia
FO	Feroio	Feroe Islands
FJ	Fiĝio	Fiji
PH	Filipinoj	Philippines
FI	Finnlando	Finland
FR	Francio	France
GA	Gabono	Gabon
GM	Gambio	Gambia
GH	Ganao	Ghana
DE	Germanio	Germany
GR	Grekio	Greece
GD	Grenado	Granada
GL	Grenlando	Greenland
GY	Gujano	Guinea
GY	Gvajano	Guyana
GT	Gvatemalo	Guatemala
GN	Gvineo	Guinea
GQ	Gvineo Ekvatora	Equatorial Guinea
GW	Gvineo-Bisaŭo	Guinea-Bissau
DJ	Ĝibujtio	Djibouti
HT	Haitio	Haiti
IN	Hinda Unio	India
ES	Hispanio	Spain
HN	Honduro	Honduras
HK	Honkongo	Hong Kong
HU	Hungario	Hungary
ID	Indonezio	Indonesia

IQ	Irako	Iraq
IR	Irano	Iran
IE	Irlando	Ireland
IS	Islando	Iceland
IL	Israelo	Israel
IT	Italio	Italy
JM	Jamajko	Jamaica
JP	Japanio	Japan
YE	Jemeno	Yemen
JO	Jordanio	Jordan
YU	Jugoslavio	Yugoslavia
KV	Kaboverdo	Cape Verde
KH	Kamboĝo	Cambodia
CM	Kamerunio	Cameroon
CA	Kanado	Canada
GE	Kartvelio	Georgia
QA	Kataro	Qatar
KZ	Kazaĥio	Kazakhstan
KE	Kenjo	Kenya
CY	Kipro	Cyprus
KG	Kirgizio	Kyrgyzstan
KI	Kiribato	Kiribati
CO	Kolombio	Colombia
KM	Komoroj	Comorro Islands
CG	Kongo (Rep.)	Congo (Rep.)
CD	Kongo DR (Kinŝaso)	Congo (Zaire)
KP	Korea PR (Pjongjango)	North Korea
KR	Korea Respubliko (Seŭlo)	South Korea
CR	Kostariko	Costa Rica
HR	Kroatio	Croatia
CU	Kubo	Cuba
KW	Kuvajto	Kuwait
LS	Laoso	Laos
LV	Latvio	Latvia
LS	Lesoto	Lesotho
LB	Libano	Lebanon
LR	Liberio	Liberia

LY	Libio	Libya
LI	Liĥtenŝtejno	Lichtenstein
LT	Litovio	Lithuania
LU	Luksemburgio	Luxembourg
MG	Madagaskaro	Madagascar
MK	Makedonio	Macedonia
MY	Malajzio	Malaysia
MW	Malavio	Malawi
MV	Maldivoj	Maldives Islands
ML	Malio	Mali
MT	Malto	Malta
MA	Maroko	Morocco
MH	Marŝaloj	Marshall Islands
MU	Maŭricio	Mauritius
MR	Maŭritanio	Mauritania
MX	Meksiko	Mexico
FM	Mikronezio	Micronesia
MD	Moldavio	Moldova
MC	Monako	Monaco
MN	Mongolio	Mongolia
MS	Monserato	Montserrat
ME	Montenegro	Montenegro
MZ	Mozambiko	Mozambique
NA	Namibio	Namibia
NR	Nauro	Nauru
NL	Nederlando	Netherlands
NP	Nepalo	Nepal
NG	Niĝerio	Nigeria
NE	Niĝero	Niger
NI	Nikaragvo	Nicaragua
NO	Norvegio	Norway
NC	Nov-Kaledonio	New Caledonia
NZ	Nov-Zelando	New Zealand
OM	Omano	Oman
TL	Orienta Timoro	East Timor
PK	Pakistano	Pakistan
PW	Palaŭo	Palau



PS	Palestino	Palestine
PA	Panamo	Panama
PG	Papuo-Nov-Gvineo	Papua New-Guinea
PY	Paragvajo	Paraguay
PE	Peruo	Peru
PL	Pollando	Poland
PR	Porto-Riko	Puerto Rico
PT	Portugalia	Portugal
RE	Reunio	Reunion
RW	Ruando	Rwanda
RO	Rumanio	Romania
RU	Rusio	Russia
SB	Salomonoj	Solomon Islands
SV	Salvadoro	El Salvador
WS	Samoo	Samoa
KN	Sankta Kristoforo k Neviso	St. Kitts and Nevis
LC	Sankta Lucio	Santa Lucia
VC	Sankta Vincento k Grenadinoj	S. Vincent & Grenedines
SM	Sanmarino	San Marino
ST	Santomeo k Principeo	Sao Tome and Principe
SA	Saŭda Arabio	Saudi Arabia
SN	Senegalia	Senegal
RS	Serbio	Serbia
SL	Sieraleono	Sierra Leone
SG	Singapuro	Singapore
SY	Sirio	Syria
SK	Slovakio	Slovakia
SI	Slovenio	Slovenia
SO	Somalia	Somalia
LK	Srilanko	Sri Lanka
ZA	Sud-Afriko	South Africa
SD	Sudano	Sudan
SR	Surinamo	Surinam
SZ	Svazilando	Swaziland
SE	Svedio	Sweden
CH	Svislando	Switzerland
TJ	Taĝikio	Tajikistan

TJ	Taĝikio	Tajikistan
PF	Tahitio	Tahiti
TH	Tajlando	Tailand
TW	Tajvano	Taiwan
TZ	Tanzanio	Tanzanio
TG	Togolando	Togo
TO	Tongo	Tonga
TT	Trinidado k Tobago	Trinidad & Tobago
TN	Tunizio	Tunisia
TR	Turkio	Turkey
TM	Turkmenio	Turkmenistan
TV	Tuvalo	Tuvalu
UG	Ugando	Uganda
UA	Ukrainio	Ukraine
AE	Unuiĝintaj Arabaj Emirlandoj	United Arab Emirates
UY	Urugvajo	Uruguay
US	Usono	United States
UZ	Uzbekio	Uzbekistan
VU	Vanuatuo	Vanuatu
VA	Vatikano	Vatican City
VE	Venezuelo	Venezuela
VN	Vjetnamio	Vietnam
ZM	Zambio	Zambia
ZW	Zimbabvo	Zimbabwe

#### 4.1.8..3. Names of American States

Note that a few American state names already end in **-io**, based on their English forms in “-ia” (e.g., **Kalifornio**). Some speakers tend to extend this also to other states (**Floridio** and **Alaskio**, for example), although even more people say **Florido** and **Alasko**, letting the Esperanto follow along after the English.\* If we were to decide consistently to use **-io** for all US state names, the world would probably honor (and possibly even applaud) our preference, but what would we do about some of the less obvious cases? (Maryland = **Mario**? **Mariio**? **Marilando**? **Marilandio**?

\*-Other considerations sometimes enter in. In the *Plena Ilustrita Vortaro*, for example, **Oregonio** as a state name contrasts with **Oregono** as a river name. The same device distinguishes **Koloradio**, the state, from **Kolorado**, the river.

Illinois = **Ilinio**? **Ilinojio**? **Ilinojzio**?\* )

**Recommendation:** State names should probably remain as close as practical to the English original, consistent with being pronounceable in Esperanto. Sometimes it may be best even to leave a name un-Esperantized (**Illinois**). At least a foreign friend can find the state on a map that way! A resident of a state is named with **-an-** whatever the root: **kaliforniano**, **ilinojsano**, **Illinois-ano**, etc.

\*-The *Plena Ilustrita Vortaro* gives **Ilinojso**, by the way, ignoring the state-river distinction.

## Chapter 4 (Part 2): Pronouns, Adjectives, & Adverbs

### 4.2. Pronouns

A pronoun stands in a sentence in place of a noun. Esperanto uses the following pronouns.

<b>mi</b> = <i>I</i>	<b>ni</b> = <i>we</i>
<b>(ci</b> = <i>thou</i> )	<b>vi</b> = <i>you</i>
<b>li</b> = <i>he</i>	<b>ili</b> = <i>they</i>
<b>ŝi</b> = <i>she</i>	<b>si</b> = <i>him/her/it/-self, themselves</i>
<b>ĝi</b> = <i>it</i>	<b>oni</b> = <i>one, "they"</i>

In the accusative case, pronouns require a final **-n**.

Ŝi mortigis sin. = She killed herself.

Oni neniam scias. = One never knows.

Ci amas min. = Thou lovest me.

Se la hundo mordos, mi frapos ĝin. = If the dog bites, I'll hit it.

The pronouns may be converted to corresponding adjectives by adding **-a** to the root. This is discussed in the section on adjectives (Section 4.3).

#### 4.2.1. The Pronoun Ci.

The pronoun **vi**, "you," is both singular and plural.

The pronoun **ci**, "thou," is only singular, but is very rarely used; when it

does occur it is always rather affected. On the model of European languages, it is intended to communicate intimacy or to be used to persons of lower status (or animals). Sometimes it is used to create pseudo-archaic effects (like “thou” in English), and I have heard it used to children on rare occasions by speakers of languages with comparable pronouns, but it is fair to say that it never really caught on. Indeed, examples are so forced that some authors use **ci** only to suggest quaintness!

#### 4.2.2. The Pronoun **Oni**.

The pronoun **oni** is much more extensively used and is much less stuffy than its English equivalent “one.”

Oni amas belajn vestojn. = People love pretty clothes.

Librojn oni donacas. = They’re giving away books.

Oni ne devas iri. = You don’t have to go.

Oni devas ne iri. = People mustn’t go.

Oni tion malpermesas. = They don’t allow that.

Oni ne scias tion. = That is not known.

Oni diras, ke.... = It is said that...; They say that...

Mi aŭdis onidiron, ke.... = I heard a rumor that...

Most speakers avoid using **oni** in the accusative case. **Oni** is used in many cases where in English a passive would be colloquial. Because English speakers tend to use far too many passives in Esperanto, it is perhaps legitimate to propose **oni** as “a way to avoid the passive.”

Oni ne plu konstruas tiajn domojn.

= Such houses are not built any more.

Oni jam formanĝis ĉiom!

= Everything had already been eaten up.

#### 4.2.3. The Pronoun **Si**.

The reflexive pronoun **si** is translated “herself,” “himself,” “itself,” “themselves,” or “oneself.” **Si** never stands as the subject of the clause.; it is used to refer back to the subject.

Li lavis la infanon kaj poste sin. = He washed the child and then himself.

Li razis sin. = He shaved.

Ŝi vestos sin rapide. = She'll get dressed fast.

Ŝi jam scias vesti sin. = She already knows how to dress herself.

Ili kombis sin. = They brushed their hair.

Oni devas sin prepari. = One must prepare oneself.

**Si** refers to the nearest available subject, not necessarily the subject of the whole sentence. (More precisely, **sin** refers to the subject of the verb of which **sin** is the object, even if that subject is simultaneously the object of a different verb and therefore in the accusative case.)\*

<p>*-Caution to students of Latin: In a subordinate clause, Latin <i>se</i> normally refers to an antecedent outside its own clause. This does not usually occur with Esperanto <b>si</b>.</p>
--

Li helpis ŝin lavi sin.

= He helped her wash herself.

Li helpis, ke ŝi lavu sin.

= He helped her wash herself.

Ŝi igis lin vundi sin.

= She made him hurt himself.

Ŝi ordonis al li dediĉi sin al la movado por vegetalaj rajtoj.

= She ordered him to dedicate himself to the vegetable rights movement.

**Si** is used with reference only to a third-person subject, never “I” or “you.”

Mi razos min tuj. = I'll shave immediately.

Mi duŝos min. = I'll take a shower.

Purigu cin! = Cleanse thyself!

Kombu vin! = Comb your hair!

In conformity with usage in several European languages (but not English), reference to parts of one's body oftentimes is accomplished with **la** and **al si** (or other appropriate pronoun):

Mi razos al mi la vizaĝon.

= I'll shave [my face].

Ŝi neniam razas al si la krurojn.

= She never shaves her legs.

Ŝi neniam lavas al si la orelojn!

= She never washes her ears!

Ŝi vundis al si la fingrojn je rompita glaso.<sup>z</sup>

= She hurt her fingers on a broken glass.

**Sin** is used in a few compounds:

Ŝi estas sindona. = She is generous. [= self-giving]

Li estis tre singarda. = He was very cautious. [= self-preserving]

These compounds are understood as root-like and do not change the **sin** even when the person in question is **vi**, **ni**, or **mi**:

Vi estas tre sindona, sinjoro.

= You are very generous, sir.

Mi studas sindefendon.

= I am studying self-defense.

Vi tro gardas vin! Ne estu tiel singarda!

= You're too cautious! Don't be so cautious.

The word **mem** is also translated "herself, himself, themselves, itself" in English. The similarity between **si** and **mem** lies only in the English translations, however. They are quite different words. **Si** is a reflexive pronoun, while **mem** is an intensifying particle, which stands beside a noun or pronoun but does not replace it.\*

\*-Caution to students of French: **Mem** is apparently derived from French *même* but corresponds to it only in the sense of "self." When *même* means "same" or "even" the Esperanto word is **sama** or **eĉ**:  
*Elle porte toujours le même manteau.* = **Ŝi portas ĉiam la saman mantelon.** *Cette règle est valable même pour vous.* = **Tiu regulo validas eĉ por vi.**

Ŝi mem dresis la leonon.

= She trained the lion herself.

Ŝi dresis la leonon mem.

= She trained the lion itself.

Mi mem batos lian pugaĉon.

= I shall beat his miserable backside myself!

Naturally it is possible to use **mem** together with **si** if sense and required emphasis require this:

Li donis tri al mi kaj kvar al si mem.

= He gave three to me and four to himself.

Ŝi mem lavis sin.

= She herself washed herself.

### 4.3. Adjectives

An adjective is a word used to modify a noun or pronoun. Words like “wide,” “miserable,” “secondary,” “his,” and “Japanese” are adjectives. Esperanto adjectives end in **-a**

Jen mia nova libro. = Here’s my new book.

Ŝi estas studentino diligenta. = She is a diligent student.

La hundeto estas tre juna. = The puppy is very young.

#### 4.3.1. The Plural & Accusative of Adjectives

Adjectives take the plural and accusative endings (**-j** and **-n**) to agree with the nouns they modify:

Ili estas studentinoj diligentaj.

= They are diligent students.

La studentoj estas diligentaj.

= The students are diligent.

Min tedas liaj longaj rakontoj.

= His long stories bore me.

Oni diras, ke via patrino havas novajn armeajn botojn.

= They say your mother has new army boots.

Sometimes one adjective modifies two nouns. In this case, the Esperanto adjective always takes the plural ending (**j**), even though each noun may be singular:

Li amas siajn edzinon kaj infanon.  
= He loves his wife and child.

Li amas sian edzinon kaj infanon.  
= He loves his wife and a [someone else's] child.

Mi aĉetis belajn kravaton kaj ĉapelon.  
= I bought a beautiful tie and hat.

Mi aĉetis belan kravaton kaj ĉapelon.  
= I bought a beautiful tie and a hat.

Notice that in the last example, only the tie is beautiful. Nothing is said about the beauty of the hat.

If the noun or verb is left unexpressed, the adjective takes appropriate endings anyway:

La ruĝaj floroj estas pli grandaj ol la flavaj.  
= The red flowers are bigger than the yellow ones.

#### 4.3.1.1. Possessive Adjectives

Possessive adjectives are formed from the personal pronouns by adding the adjective ending **-a**: **mia** = “my, mine”; **via** = “your,” “yours”; etc.

Ĝi ne estas mia kato; mi kredis, ke ĝi estas via kato!  
= It's not my cat; I thought it was your cat!

When it is used without a noun, a possessive adjective normatively takes the article **la**.\*

Li pli amis ŝian patrinon ol la sian.  
= He loved her mother more than his own.

La via estas pli bela ol la nia.  
= Yours is prettier than ours.

\*-The **la** is in fact often omitted in conversation among speakers of languages which, like English, do not have a comparable usage. I have always thought of this omission as substandard, but several readers of earlier drafts of this book felt that including the **la** in speech was rather bookish.

It is very unusual—even jarring—to use **onia**, although the form is logical. Instead of the hypothetical **onia**, one uses a full phrase or, if the



meaning is clear, simply **la**.

Wrong: Dum neniŭ aĉetas onian aŭton, oni restas senmona.

= As long as no-one buys one's car, one stays broke.

Right: Dum neniŭ aĉetas la aŭton kiun oni vendas, oni restas senmona.

= Dum neniŭ aĉetas la aŭton, oni restas senmona.

= As long as no-one buys one's car, one stays broke.

Compare the following two examples:

Se vi ofendos la publikon, neniŭ aĉetos viajn pentraĵojn.

= If you offend the public, nobody will buy your paintings.

Se oni ofendos la publikon, neniŭ aĉetos la pentraĵojn.

= If one offends the public, nobody will buy one's paintings.

The reflexive adjective **sia** is used instead of **lia**, **ŝia**, **ilia**, or **ĝia** when these mean "his own," "her own," "their own," or "its own." (Compare the pronoun **si** discussed in the section on pronouns. [Section 4.2.3])

Li manĝis sian fromaĝon. = He ate his [own] cheese.

Ŝi manĝis sian fromaĝon. = She ate her [own] cheese.

Ĉiu manĝu sian fromaĝon. = Each one should eat his [own] cheese.

Oni manĝu sian fromaĝon. = People should eat their cheese.

In English we do not need to use the word "own" unless we wish to stress or clarify the idea. The sentence "He ate his cheese" can mean that he ate his own cheese, or that he ate the cheese of someone else. Greater precision is necessary only in event of probable confusion. In Esperanto there is no choice: If one can say "his/her/its/their own" (**sia**), then one *must* say it. **Li manĝis lian fromaĝon** can mean *only* "He ate his [someone else's] cheese." More examples:

Ili trinkis sian teon. = They drank their [own] tea.

La hundo respondas al sia dresisto.

= The dog answers to its [own] trainer.

Ŝi frapis lian amikon.

= She struck his friend. Li frapis lian amikon.

= He struck his [someone else's] friend.

Ŝi frapis ŝian amikon.

= She struck her [someone else's] friend.

Li frapis ŝian amikon.

= He struck her friend.

Ŝi frapis sian amikon.

= She struck her [own] friend.

Li frapis sian amikon.

= He struck his [own] friend.

Kiom da amikoj ili frapis?

= How many friends did they strike?

**Sia** always refers to the subject of its own verb:

Li permesis al siaj infanoj, ke ili karesu siajn kolubrojn.

= He let his kids pet their [own] snakes.

Li permesis al siaj infanoj karesi siajn kolubrojn.

= He let his kids pet their [own] snakes.

Li permesis al siaj infanoj karesi liajn kolubrojn.

= He let his kids pet his snakes.

Ŝi ordonis al li donaci sian salajron al la movado por vestigi katojn.

= She ordered him to donate his salary to the movement to clothe cats.

Ĉiu vestigu tuj siajn katojn.

= Let everyone immediately clothe his cats.

Sian katon ankoraŭ ne vestigis ŝi.

= She has not yet clothed her cat.

Li petis, ke ŝi vestigu tuj sian katon.

= He asked her to clothe her cat immediately.

Li petis, ke ŝi vestigu tuj lian katon.

= He asked her to clothe his cat immediately.

### 4.3.1.2. Predicate Adjectives as Stative Verbs

A predicate adjective is one which constitutes the statement made about the subject of the sentence. The verb is normally a form of **esti**:

Vi estis prava. = You were right.

Mono estas ĉiam necesa. = Money is always necessary.

La muro estos ruĝa. = The wall will be red.

It is possible (and increasingly common) to drop the esti form and apply the verb ending directly to the adjective stem to form a “stative” verb:

Vi pravis. = You were right.

La mono ĉiam necesas. = Money is always necessary.

La muro ruĝos. = The wall will be red.

There are a few people who are very depressed by this structure, and a great many who misunderstand it. The structure is typically found among the fluent but rambunctious young and the fluent but rambunctious young-at-heart. It is part of Esperanto, but not yet common to the whole community of speakers. Some stylists write letters to editors condemning this particular structure, which apparently does not exist in most European languages. Others insist that a form like **ruĝas** (literally “reds”) would have to correspond to **estas ruĝe** (whatever that might mean) rather than to **estas ruĝa(j)** = “is/are red.” Accordingly if you use stative verbs very much you can expect occasional whining and grumbling. However, such verbs are already quite common in actual fact; they correspond to usage in Chinese and some other languages; they are perfectly logical; they obviate the overuse of **esti**; and they will probably be a dominant form in Esperanto by the year 2050. (Well, perhaps by 2052.)

### 4.4. Adverbs

An adverb is, in general, a word that modifies a verb, an adjective, another adverb, or sometimes a whole clause or sentence. Adverbs generally convey information about where, when, how, how much, or why something happens. “Soon,” “tomorrow,” “usually,” and “merely” are adverbs. Some noun

\*-Not all adverbs end in -e. Some words ending in **-aŭ** are adverbs (such as **hodiaŭ** = “today” or **apenaŭ** = “scarcely”), some of the correlatives function as adverbs (such as **ĉiom** = “all of it”), and a few roots function directly as adverbs (such as **nun** = “now,” **tuj** = “immediately”). The

phrases (like “every morning”) function as adverbs. Prepositional phrases (like “in the tub” or “by phone”) function as adverbs. Not surprisingly, prepositional phrases in one language often turn up as adverbs in another.

-e ending is used to *create* adverbs from roots that are not inherently adverbial. (Note, by the way, that -aŭ is not an ending. It is always part of the root itself.)

The ending -e makes a stem into an adverb.\*

fidel- = faith(ful)(ness)

fidela = faithful

fidele = faithfully

If you are commenting on the general situation around you, use an adverb:

Bone! = Good!

Agrable! = It's pleasant here! = That's pleasant! = How pleasant!

Tre interese! = That's very interesting!

Estas bone ĉi tie. = Things are good here.

In Esperanto, the weather is often described with an adverb and the verb **esti** :

Estas varme! = It's hot!

An adverb is used (in connection with **esti**) as the complement of a verbal subject:

Legi stultajn romanojn estas bone.

= Reading stupid novels is good.

Vidi stultajn filmojn estas pli bone.

= Seeing stupid films is better.

Labori dek horojn sinsekve ĉe la komputilo estas blindige.

= Working ten hours together at the computer is blinding.

An adverb is used (in connection with **esti**) when the subject is a clause beginning with **ke** or with a correlative beginning with **k-**:

Estas memevidente, ke ŝi malamas lin.  
= It's self-evident that she hates him.

Estas feliĉe, ke li havas tiom da mono.  
= It's a good thing he has so much money.

Al mi estas nekompreneble kial ŝi ankoraŭ laboras en la muzeo.  
= It's incomprehensible to me why she still works in the museum.

A single adverb can often be used in Esperanto where several words would be usual in English.

hejme = at home  
konforme = in conformity  
mane = by hand  
vespere = in the evening  
tagmeze = at noon  
Novjare = at New Year's

Sometimes a tightly bound phrase can become a single adverb:

pezkore = with a heavy heart  
man'-en-mane = hand-in-hand  
meznokte = in the middle of the night  
longdistance = by long distance  
noktmeze = in the middle of the night

An adverb can have a prepositional phrase attached to it:

okaze de la datreveno = on occasion of the anniversary  
rilate al lia letero = with respect to his letter

A few adverbs, formed from transitive verbs, continue to take their direct objects:

koncerne vian hungarinon = as to your Hungarian lady  
rilate lian leteron = with respect to his letter

#### **4.4.1. Adverbs of Place & Movement (Accusative Adverbs)**

Some adverbs indicate the place where something happens:

hejme = at home

tie = there

universitate = at the university

By adding the accusative ending **-n** to these, they come to mean the place to which someone or something is going:

Kie vi sendas la leteron? En la poŝtoŝticejo.

= Where are you sending the letter? In the post office.

Kien vi sendas la leteron? Hejmen, al Taĝikio.

= Where are you sending the letter? Home to Tajikistan.

For more on this see the section on Accusatives of “Movement Toward” in the section on nouns and pronouns (Section 4.1.6.2.1).

#### 4.5. Comparisons of Adjectives & Adverbs

Comparative forms of adverbs and adjectives are formed with the words **pli** = “more” and **malpli** = “less.” The word **ol** corresponds to the English word “than”:

Mi estas juna, sed vi estas pli juna. = I am young, but you are younger.

Vi estas pli juna ol mi. = You are younger than I am.

Mi estas malpli juna ol vi. = I am older (less young) than you.

Vi estas juna, sed mi estas malpli juna. = You are young, but I am less young.

Superlative forms are made with **plej** = “most” and **malplej** = “least”:

Mi estas la plej juna membro de la klubo.

= I am the youngest member of the club.

Li estas la plej bela viro en la ĉambro.

= He is the handsomest man in the room.

Vi estas la malplej sincera persono en la mondo!

= You are the least sincere person in the world!

Vi estas la plej malsincera persono en la mondo!

= You are the most hypocritical person in the world!

In adjectives and adverbs involving both **plej** and the prefix **mal**, it is usually immaterial whether **mal-** is attached to the original adjective or adverb or to the **plej**:

Vi estas la plej malsincera persono en la mondo!  
= You are the most insincere person in the world!

Vi estas la malplej sincera persono en la mondo!  
= You are the least sincere person in the world!

In most Romance languages there is a single word corresponding with both **pli** and **plej**, and the distinction between “more” and “most” is made by adding an article before “most.” If you happen to be talking with speakers of these languages, be prepared to see signs of these instincts erroneously carried into Esperanto.

Tiu estas la pli (instead of plej) bona kantisto en Italio!  
= That is the best singer in Italy!

More importantly, you may be met with misunderstanding if you use **la** before **pli** or leave it out before **plej**:

Li estas unu el la pli gravaj personoj.  
= He is one of the more important people (misunderstood as most important people).

Diru nur la pli necesajn faktojn.  
= Give only the more important facts (misunderstood as most important facts).

Li estas plej amata en Hungario.  
= He is most loved in Hungary (misunderstood as more loved, triggering the question “Than where?”).

The elements **plej** and **pli** occasionally enter into other structures:

La proponon favoris malsufiĉa plejmulto.  
= An insufficient plurality favored the proposal.

La Jaŭ-oj estas nacia malplimulto de Ĉinio.  
= The Yao are a national minority in China.

Ĉu nihilismaj rokmuzikaj vidbendoj plejparte superas la kantojn de lokaj Esperantaj kluboj?

= Do nihilistic rock videos for the most part surpass the songs of local Esperanto clubs?

The expression used in Esperanto that corresponds to the English “as...as...” is **tiel...kiel...** or occasionally **tiom...kiom....**

Ŝi estas tiel alta kiel mi. = She is as tall as I.

Ŝi estas tiom alta kiom mi. = She is as tall as I..

Tio ne estas tiel bona kiel ĉi tio. = That is not so good as this is..

Mia robo estas tiel bela kiel la via. = My dress is as pretty as yours..

Mia robo estas bela tiel kiel la via. = My dress is as pretty as yours..

Li havas tiom kiom ŝi havas. = He has as much as she has..

Li havas tiel multe kiel ŝi havas. = He has as much as she has. .

The expression used in Esperanto that corresponds to the English “the more ... the more ...” is **ju pli ... des pli ...**:

Ju pli ni kunvenos, des pli feliĉaj ni estos.

= The more we get together the happier we'll be.

---

## Chapter 5: Prepositions.

A preposition links a noun or noun phrase to a verb, adjective, or another noun or noun phrase. In English, “on,” “at,” “underneath,” and “during” are prepositions. Zamenhof sought to define the meanings of Esperanto prepositions as precisely as possible. When no particular choice of preposition was obvious from the sense, the generalized preposition **je** was to serve. In actual practice, **je** is surprisingly rare.

On the other hand, sometimes the prepositions that are used seem a bit arbitrary and vary from one speaker to another. Does one knock on a door? At a door. Outside the door? Against the door? Does one live on a certain street? Beside the street? Along the street? In the street? Different languages traditionally select different prepositions, and there is considerable range of usage in Esperanto. Notice how Zamenhof changes prepositions he uses with the verb **frapi** = “to strike, knock”:



La patro frapis sur la pordo, kvazaŭ li estus fremdulo.<sup>z</sup>  
= The father rapped at the door, as though he were a stranger.

Oni frapetis je la pordo.<sup>z</sup>  
= Someone knocked at the door.

[Li frapis] la frunton je la planko.<sup>z</sup>  
= [He knocked] his forehead on the floor.

[Li frapis] sin kontraŭ la ŝtonajn murojn.<sup>z</sup>  
= [He knocked himself] against the stone walls.

La maro frapadis sur la rokon.<sup>z</sup>  
= The sea was knocking onto the rock.

Lia stranga konduto frapis ĉiujn.<sup>z</sup>  
= His strange behavior struck everyone.

In general, if a very literal meaning of a preposition is applicable, that is the best preposition. If not, you may usually assume there will be variation in usage. Not everybody's instinct is the same, so sometimes you may be a little surprised by a preposition someone uses, but the results are ordinarily perfectly intelligible:

Jen bildo de/pri mia patrino.  
= Here's a picture of my mother.

Li loĝas en/ĉe/laŭ/apud/sur la strato Rossetti.  
= He lives on Rossetti Street.

Mi fidas al/je vi, kara.  
= I have faith in you, dear.

Ni forestos por/dum unu monato.  
= We'll be gone for one month.

If nothing seems appropriate, **je** will usually work fine:

Ŝi venos je la oka horo.  
= She'll come at eight.

Mi estas je unu jaro pli juna ol vi.<sup>z</sup>  
= I'm younger than you by one year.

La reĝo vetis kun li je ses berberaj ĉevaloj.<sup>z</sup>  
= The king bet him six Berber horses.

[Li ekfrotis] alumeton je la muro.<sup>z</sup>  
= He scraped a match on the wall.

La ĉielo kovriĝis je nuboj.<sup>z</sup>  
= The sky covered over with clouds. Li sendis ĉekon je tri mil dolaroj.  
= He sent a check in the amount of three thousand dollars.

Vortaroj, vortaroj! Mi jam estas riĉa je vortaroj! Sed mi ne povas trovi la diablan vorton!  
= Dictionaries, dictionaries! I am rich in dictionaries! But I can't find the damned word!

When **je** is the appropriate preposition, it is allowable to omit it and put its object into an accusative case, but this is advisable only if no other use of the accusative is likely to be confused with it.

Mi fidas je vi, kara. = I have faith in you, dear.

Mi fidas vin, kara. = I have faith in your, dear.

Mi estas unu jaron pli juna ol vi. = I'm one year younger than you.

---

## Chapter 6: Capitalization.

Names of countries are capitalized, but the associated terms relating to them, their citizens, and their languages are not.

Usono = the United States

usonano = an American

la usona ekonomio = the American economy

**Esperanto**, **Esperanta**, and **Esperante** are usually capitalized in order to distinguish them from the literal words meaning “one who hopes” and “hoping.”\*

Ŝi estas konstanta esperanto. = She is an eternal optimist.

Ŝi parolas Esperanton. = She speaks Esperanto.

Li estas esperanta bonan novaĵon. = He is hoping for good news. Tio estas Esperanta libro. = That is an Esperanto book.

Rapide kreskas la afero per laboroj de la esperantoj.<sup>2</sup>  
= Rapidly the movement grows through the labors of the hopeful.

Ŝi parolaĉis Esperante, esperante tamen, ke la bela japano respondos angle.

= She stammered along in Esperanto, hoping however that the handsome Japanese would reply in English.

The word **esperantisto** does not entail possible confusion and is usually not capitalized.

Names of days and months are not capitalized in Esperanto.

Chief words in book titles may or may not be capitalized, depending upon the taste (and native language) of the author or editor and where the title appears. In most cases, excess capitalization is avoided. My own (Anglophone) taste is to capitalize them, as in English. The first word of a book title is capitalized by everybody. **La** and prepositions are always uncapitalized if they are not first in a title, and **la** is ignored in alphabetizing, exactly the way we treat similar words in English.

---

## Chapter 7: Questions.

Questions which anticipate an answer of “yes” or “no” are easily formed by simply adding **ĉu** to the front of the sentence:

Teresa estas hejme. = Teresa is home.

Ĉu Teresa estas hejme? = Is Theresa home?

Ili ofte trinkas japanan brandon. = They often drink Japanese brandy.

Ĉu ili ofte trinkas japanan brandon? = Do they often drink Japanese brandy?

Questions which ask for some specific kind of information, such as English questions with “who,” “what,” “where,” etc., are formed by adding one of the correlative question words (those beginning with **ki-**) to the beginning

of the sentence. (See the section on Correlatives [Chapter 10].)

Kiu vi estas? = Who are you?

Kion vi faras?! = What are you doing?!

English normally reverses the subject and verb for a question with forms of “to be.” (“He is a violinist.” “Is he a violinist?”) Esperanto does not make such a change. Quite aside from this, both languages can vary word order for emphasis. Accordingly, it does not work at all to depend on word order for information about whether something is a question or not!

Kiu vi estas? = Who are you?

Vi estas kiu?! = Who are you?!

Kion faras vi? = What are you doing?

Vi faras kion?! = You are doing what?!

Ĉu ŝi amas lin? = Does she love him?

Ĉu ŝi lin amas? = Does she love him?

Another type of question can be created by adding **ĉu** or **ĉu ne** to the end of a statement, comparable to English expressions like “isn’t it,” “doesn’t he,” and “wouldn’t they.”

Bela vetero, ĉu ne? = Nice weather, isn’t it?

Sed vi nun resaniĝis, ĉu? = But now you’ve got better, haven’t you?

Teresa estas hejme, ĉu ne? = Theresa is home, isn’t she?

The use of **ĉu** alone is especially common in negative sentences, which sometimes (rarely) even add **ĉu jes**:\*

Vi ne estas brua studento de la  
universitato Hartford, ĉu (jes)?  
= You’re not a noisy Hartford  
University student, are you?

As a practical matter, a question may also be indicated merely by raising the pitch of the voice at the end of a statement, but be cautious. Nothing in “official” Esperanto defines a question this way. This intonation is not universal in human languages, and some speakers may not recognize it as a question!

\*-Most speakers maintain that **ĉu** alone is appropriately added at the end of a sentence **only** if the verb is already negative, and that **ĉu ne** is added only to positive sentences. Logically, a **ĉu** with either a **ne** nor a **jes** simply creates a question, regardless whether the sentence is positive or negative. Accordingly for other speakers, **ĉu** and **ĉu ne** seem to be close to interchangeable, even though **ĉu ne** is much commoner.

Li donis al vi sian monon?  
= He give you his money?

Vi eraras. Mi ne havas lian monon.  
= You're in error. I don't have his money.

Mi volis diri, "Ĉu li donis al vi sian monon?"  
= I meant, "Did he give you his money?"

Mi jam diris, ke ne!  
= I already said he didn't!

**Ĉu** is also used to introduce an indirect question, corresponding with the English term "whether." (Some editors prefer a comma before the **ĉu**.)

Mi tute ne scias, ĉu ŝi venos.  
= I don't know at all whether she will come.

Mi dubas, ĉu ŝi kuraĝos veni.  
= I doubt whether she will dare to come.

Note that the tense of the verb in the **ĉu** clause reflects the perspective of the actor in the main clause:

Ni ne scias ĉu ŝi venos.  
= We don't know whether she'll come.

Neniu diris ĉu ŝi venos.  
= Nobody said whether she would come.

Nur lastmomente ni scios, ĉu ŝi venos.  
= We'll know only at the last minute whether she'll be coming.

Nur lastmomente ni scios, ĉu ŝi venis.  
= We'll know only at the last minute whether she's come.

Ne gravis al mi, ĉu ŝi venis.  
= It didn't matter to me whether she had come.

Ne gravas al mi, ĉu ŝi venis.  
= It doesn't matter to me whether she came.

Sometimes the rising intonation or careful attention to placement of pauses is necessary to clarify whether the question is direct or indirect:

Mi volis demandi, “Ĉu li donis al vi sian monon?”  
= I wanted to ask, “Did he give you his money?”

Mi volis demandi ĉu li donis al vi sian monon.  
= I wanted to ask whether he had given you his money.

---

## Chapter 8: The Article

English makes use of a definite article (“the”) and an indefinite article (“a/an”). Some grammarians include “some” with the other two articles. Esperanto has only one article: **la**. (**La** never changes for the plural or the accusative. It remains **la**.)

domo = house, a house  
la domo = the house  
domoj = houses, some houses  
la domoj = the houses

Some languages do and some do not have a definite article. Of those that do, usage varies from language to language. Within the same language, usage sometimes varies by dialect\* and from situation to situation.\*\*

\*-An American is “in *the* hospital” while an Englishman is “in hospital.”

There is less standardization in the use of **la** in Esperanto than in some other languages, and what there is tends to correspond with the least-common-denominator usage of Western European languages. You should be prepared for **la** to turn up where it would not appear in English or to be missing where we would use it.

\*\* -We say “in school” to mean someone is a student, but “in church” means attending a service right now; we go “to church” but “to *the* opera” and “to *a* baseball game.”

That said, the easiest rule is to use **la** like English “the” except for the following common differences:

1. Esperanto **la** often occurs before abstract nouns where “the” would never occur:  
 la libereco = liberty  
 la bona sano = good health
2. Esperanto uses **la** before a possessive adjective when there is no noun with it. (See the section on possessive adjectives.)  
 La granda libro estas la mia. = The big book is mine.  
 La via estas malgranda. = Yours is little.
3. Esperanto uses **la** before an adjective when the noun is not explicitly stated, but rather understood (where English would also use the dummy noun “one” or “ones”):  
 Vi ricevos la malgrandan. = You’ll get the little one.  
 Al mi plaĉas la grandega! = I like the huge one!  
 Jen la vere belaj! = Here are the really pretty ones!
4. Esperanto often uses **la** where English would use a possessive adjective, especially for kinship relations, for body parts, and for clothes and other objects intimately connected with the speaker:  
 Ŝi diris tion al la patro. = She said that to her father.  
 Li faligis farbon sur la pantolonon. = He dropped paint on his pants.  
 Li falis kaj vundis la brakon. = He fell and hurt his arm.  
 Ŝi deprenis kaj la ĉapelon kaj la harojn. = She took off both her hat and her hair.
5. Esperanto uses **la** with the adjective name of an ethnic group to produce names for languages:  
 la rusa (lingvo) = Russian/the Russian language  
 la persa (lingvo) = Persian/the Persian language  
 la navaha (lingvo) = Navajo/the Navajo language
6. Esperanto often uses **la** before a singular category name where in English we would use a plural without an article:  
 La aspidistro ne plu estas moda ĉambroplanto.  
 = Aspidistras are no longer

\*-Since the name Esperanto does not derive from the name of an ethnic group, Esperanto is just **Esperanto**, not usually **la Esperanta!** The same goes for other deliberately created languages: **Volapuko** = Volapük, **Interlingvo** = Interlingua, etc.

\*-Actually both languages use both forms. It is fine, but less common, to say in English “The aspidistra is no longer a fashionable house plant” or in Esperanto, **Aspidistroj ne plu estas modaj ĉambroplantoj**. It is a matter of comparative frequency.

fashionable house plants. \*

7. Esperanto uses **la** before a generic noun that is followed by a proper noun naming a unique item:

Ili loĝas en la ŝtato Florido.

= They live in [the state of] Florida.

Li instruas ĉe la gimnazio George Washington.

= He teaches at George Washington High School.

Refoje la prezidanto “oficiale” vizitos la urbojn Monte Carlo, Reno kaj Makao.

= The president will again make “state” visits to Monte Carlo, Reno, and Macao.

Ŝi kondukis nin per la stelŝipo Enterprise.

= She took us in the Starship Enterprise.

Ŝi kondukis nin per aŭtomobilo Volkswagen.

= She took us in a Volkswagen.

(No **la** because there are lots of Volkswagens in the world.)

---

## 9. Numbers & Measurement

The following Esperanto roots function as numbers:

1 = **unu**      7 = **sep**

2 = **du**      8 = **ok**

3 = **tri**      9 = **naŭ**

4 = **kvar**      ten = **dek**

5 = **kvin** hundred = **cent**

6 = **ses** thousand = **mil**

Each of these may be used directly before a noun as a number:

tri francaj kokinoj = three French hens

kvin oraj ringoj = five golden rings

mil dancistinoj = a thousand dancing girls

The elements may be combined to produce remaining numbers between 10



and 999,999 in a way comparable to the way in English we say “two thousand three hundred six.”

tridek = 30

trident dek = 310

kvardek kvin = 45

dumil trident ses = 2,306

trimil septcent kvindek ok = 3,758

mil septcent naŭdek ok = 1798\*

In writing, one links together two elements when one is the multiplier of the other. Thus the units that stand separately are usually added to each other to make the whole number:

mil naŭcent naŭdek ok = 1998

$1000 + (9 \times 100) + (9 \times 10) + 8 = 1998$

Since only two elements may be written together, it sometimes happens with large numbers that a long string of items in fact multiplies the next unit:

ducenttridek kvin mil = 235,000

$(200 + 30 + 5) \times 1000 = 235,000$

## 9.1. Numbers as Nouns

Numbers higher than 999,999 have a slightly different form because the words **miliono** = “million” and **miliardo** = “billion” are nouns. One says **mil homoj** = “a thousand people” but **miliono da homoj** = “a million people.” (See the article on **biliono** in Part II.)

Regular numbers, by the addition of -o, can also become nouns in order to say things like “tens of people” = **dekoj da homoj** or “hundreds of refrigerators” = **centoj da glaciŝrankoj**.<sup>\* 1</sup>

\*-To distinguish years from other numbers, many Esperanto speakers say **la jaro** before the year number: **Mi naskiĝis en la jaro 1967.** = “I was born in 1967.” Occasionally one finds the abbreviation **j.** written after a year, even though it does not correspond with a spoken form: **Mi naskiĝis en 1967 j.** = “I was born in 1967.”

\*-“Dozens of people” is literally **dekduoj da homoj**, but given the arrangement of Esperanto numbers to the base ten, such an expression comes across as weirdly English. It is better to say **dekoj da homoj** even if the English would be “dozens of people.” (Measuring in dozens, or for that matter tens or scores, is after all a cultural convention, not a mathematical necessity.)

## 9.2. Decimal Points

In Asia and North America we use a period for a decimal point and a comma to set off numbers in groups of three: 12,344.56. In Europe a comma is commonly used to represent a decimal point, and a small space (or occasionally a period) is left where we would put the comma: 12 344,56 or 12.344,56. In Britain a period is used to represent the decimal point, just as we do, but it is often raised slightly in printing and handwriting. Most Europeans are aware of American usage (which is increasingly being adopted internationally), but usage in Esperanto varies. Do as you please - I myself follow American usage in this- but be prepared for anything. In reading out numbers, a comma is **komo** and a period **punkto**, wherever they are placed.

## 9.3. Ordinal Numbers

The addition of the adjective suffix **-a** to numbers produces ordinal numbers:

unu = one

unua = first

du = two

dua = second

tri = three

tria = third

naŭ = nine

naŭa = ninth

kvardek du = 42    kvardek dua = 42nd

cent tridek = 130    cent trideka = 130th

The usual written abbreviation appends the letter **-a** (sometimes alone, sometimes with a hyphen, and sometimes raised slightly) to the Arabic numeral: **9a**, **9-a**, **9<sup>a</sup>**, **130a**, **130-a**, **130<sup>a</sup>**. The form with the hyphen is commonest.

## 9.4. Arithmetic

The following examples provide guidance on common operations in arithmetic:

tri plus kvin estas ok =  $3+5=8$

kvin minus tri estas du =  $5-3=2$

trioble kvin estas dek kvin =  $3 \times 5=15$

dek kvin dividite per kvin estas tri =  $15 \div 5=3$

kvinone dek kvin estas tri =  $15 \div 5 = 3$

## 9.5. Fractions

Fractions are made in Esperanto with the suffix **-on-**.

tri kvaronoj = three-quarters

duono = half, a half, one-half

kvar kvinonoj = four-fifths

sep sesonoj = seven-sixths

unu ducent sepdek kvinono =  $1/275^{\text{th}}$

duonkilogramo = half a kilo, one-half kilo, half of a kilo

kvaronlitro = quarter of a liter, quarter liter, one-quarter of a liter

duono da kilogramo half a kilo, one-half kilo, half of a kilo

Caution: Occasional fractions are ambiguous:

cent dek duonoj =  $100/12$  OR  $110/2$

In speaking it is necessary to resolve the ambiguity by intonation and pace of speech. In writing, one can simply hyphenate the elements that go together:

cent dek-duonoj =  $100/12$

cent-dek duonoj =  $110/2$

## 9.6. Time

The most common way of telling time in Esperanto is to express the number of minutes or the fraction of an hour that falls before or after an hour; the hours themselves are called the 7th, the 3rd, and so on, sometimes with the word **horo** = "hour," sometimes not:

la sepa (horo) = 7 o'clock

kvin minutoj post la sepa = five after seven

la sepa kaj dudek = seven twenty

dudek kvin antaŭ la kvina = twenty-five minutes to five

kvarono antaŭ la dekdua = quarter to/of twelve

Estas jam la kvina! = It's already five o'clock!

Kioma horo estas nun? = What time is it now?

**Caution:** Many languages have expressions such as our "a quarter of eight."

However, in some languages “a quarter of eight” means 7:45; in others it means 8:15! Esperanto has no such expression, but should you hear a faltering speaker try to make one, try to elicit the information again in standard format. Otherwise, you may miss the appointment!

Because the ordinal (e.g., **la sepa**) is used to refer to the hour of the day, asking the time requires using **kioma**, since that is the question-word that demands an ordinal number in response. (See the section on correlatives.)

Kiom da horoj ni atendis? Sep. = How many hours did we wait? Seven.  
Kioma horo estas? La sepa. = What time is it? Seven.  
Kioman tagon li venos? La sepan. = What day will he come? The seventh.  
Kiam li venos? Je la sepa. = When will he come? At seven.  
Kiun tagon li venos? Mardon. = Which day will he come? Tuesday.

At the heading of a letter the date may be written out in full as follows:  
**dimanĉon, la 17-an de marto 2013** = “Sunday, March 17, 2013.” The day name and date number are in the accusative to show that the letter is written *on* that date.

When abbreviations are used, international usage varies. The American custom of shortening dates by writing, for example, 3/15/13 to mean March 15, 2013, is universally regarded as illogical outside of North America, since it puts the smallest unit (days) in the middle (reflecting the way one speaks the date in American English). In the rest of the world one progresses from the largest to the smallest or (less commonly) the smallest to the largest:\*

USA: 3/17/13  
Western Europe: 17.3.13  
China: 130317  
Japan, Eastern Europe: 2013.3.17  
Eastern Europe: 2013.III.17

\*-A form that places the year first has the advantage that it makes date order correspond with numerical order, largest units first, smaller ones afterward. This facilitates sorting, especially by machine.

Things have become more confusing with the year 2000, since the year numerals look like day and month numbers. (What date is 11/6/9?)

**Recommendation:** The International Organization for Standardization recommends the form **2013-3-17**. This (or the similar

\*-Then again I suppose you could also write  
**Festo de Sankta Patriko** = “St. Patrick’s

**2013.3.17**) is becoming most common among Esperantists and is to be recommended, but you should be prepared for anything. You should *avoid* the parochially American format **3/17/13**. If there is any doubt about whether another person will understand, write out the full date: **la 17-an de marto 2013**. Remember that month names are not capitalized.\*

Day”!

## 9.7. Monarchs

Monarchs' names with numbers (John XXIII, Richard III) are usually read as ordinal numbers, as in English:

**Johano la dudek tria, Rikardo la tria.**

Less commonly, however, they may be read as cardinal numbers, as in French (**Johano dudek tri, Rikardo tri**).\*

\*-The French style is simpler, but present trends clearly favor the long-term triumph of the English style.

## 9.8. Quantities of Things

Esperanto uses the prepositions **el**, **de**, and **da** when speaking of quantities that are not directly counted. (**El** and **de** also have other uses.)

**El** is used when one wishes to differentiate some individuals out of a group:

ses studentoj = six students

ses el la dek studentoj = six out of the ten students

tri el tiuj tasoj = three of those cups

nur mil el la tuta grupo = only a thousand from the entire group

**Da** is used between two words when the first is a noun naming the unit of measurement for the second:

kilogramo da teo = kilo of tea

botelo da vino = bottle of wine

skatolo da bombonoj = box of candies

guto da mielo = drop of honey

maro da mizeroj = sea of troubles

taso da kafo = cup of coffee

kapo da zorgoj = headload of worries

brakpleno da libroj = armload of books

ĉambro da studentoj = roomful of students

or with an adverb indicating the quantity

multe da mono = a lot of money

iom da akvo = some water

*If one specifies which instance of the second thing the first is intended to measure, then the **da** becomes **de**. As a practical matter, this means **da** becomes **de** before **la**, before correlatives, and before adjectives:\**

\*-This custom seems (to me) to derive from the feeling that, as soon as the modifier is introduced, one is no longer exclusively concerned with the unit of measurement, and attention is shifted to (or shared by) the thing being measured.

kilogramo de tiu teo = kilo of that tea

sako de la faruno = sack of the flour

skatolo de liaj bombonoj = box of his candies

sumo de tri dolaroj = sum of three dollars

brako de bibliotekaj libroj = armload of library books

The effect of specificity can be created by the difference between **da** and **de** themselves, even without a word like **la** or **tiu**:

botelo da lakto = bottle of milk (quantity)

botelo de (la) lakto = bottle of (the) milk (object)

Remember that **de** can also indicate possession:

ĉambro da studentoj = roomful of students

ĉambro de studentoj

= room that belongs to students, room for the use of students

ĉambro de la studentoj = roomful of the students

OR room that belongs to the students (normally the latter)

### 9.8.1. More about Da

**Da** may be used with plural nouns, as some of the examples here show. Accordingly the distinction is NOT the one we know in English between count and mass nouns. However the association of da with things that cannot

easily be counted (like tea and flour) gives it a clear implication of things being taken as a unit, bunch, lump, or glob:

grupo de studentoj = group of students  
(the group is made up of students)

grupo da studentoj = gaggle of students  
(the number of students is one **grupo**)

As in English, this may be used to produce picturesque effects:

du instruistoj da studentoj = two teachers' worth of students

kafejo da laboristoj = a café-load of workmen

tuta universitato da pajacoj = a whole university of clowns

jubilo da alaŭdoj = an exaltation of larks

In *informal* spoken Esperanto, a forceful turn of phrase sometimes changes the word order:

Venis policianoj, granda grego da!  
= Policemen came, a whole bunch of them!

In ordinary conversation, however, the most common use of **da** is with the elements **kelk-** = "some," **mult-** = "many, much," with **tro** = "too (much)" and **pli** = "more," and with the correlatives ending with **-iom** = "amount":

kelkaj studentoj = some students, a few students s

iom da studentoj = a group of students, some students s

kelkaj studentoj = some students, a few students s

kelke da studentoj = a group of students, a few students s

kelkaj el la studentoj = a few of the students s

multaj studentoj = a lot of students, many students s

multe da studentoj = a whole lot of students, a bunch of students s

multaj el la studentoj = many of the students s

multa mono = a lot of money s

multe da mono = a lot of money s

kiom da mono = how much money s

iom da mono = some money

Daĉjeto ĉiam deziris pli da ludiloj.

= Little Davey always wanted more toys.

Daĉjeto ĉiam deziris pli multajn ludilojn.  
= Little Davey always wanted more toys.

Li kredis, ke ne eblas havi tro da ludiloj.  
= He believed, that it was impossible to have too many toys.

Li kredis, ke ne eblas havi tro multajn ludilojn.  
= He believed, that it was impossible to have too many toys.

In general, **kelke** and **multe** are used with **da** before a singular noun (**multe da mono** = “lots of money”). The forms **kelkaj** and **multaj** are used with plural nouns (**multaj studentoj** = “lots of students”). There is a good deal of variation both ways, however. Some of the variation is meaningful and really does use **da** to indicate groups, bunches, lumps, globs, and clots. But some of it arises from the mere habit of saying **multe da** so often that people forget about **multa** and **multaj** (or **kelka** and **kelkaj**).

---

## Chapter 10: Correlatives

Perhaps because these concepts are so chaotically handled in most languages, I have never met anyone who could tell me what a “correlative” was outside the context of Esperanto grammar. In Esperanto, however, a correlative is a word made from the following table. Correlatives do an enormous amount of the grammatical grunt work.

			<b>-U(J)(N)</b>	person, thing*
			<b>-O(N)</b>	situation, fact
that/this	<b>T-</b>		<b>-A(J)(N)</b>	type, kind
what/which	<b>K-</b>		<b>-E(N)</b>	place
all/every	<b>Ĉ-</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>-AL</b>	reason
some/any	<b>#-</b>		<b>-EL</b>	manner
no	<b>NEN-</b>		<b>-AM</b>	time
			<b>-OM</b>	quantity
			<b>-ES</b>	possession

\*- Particular persons or things, taken individually

#- indicates the absence of prefix here.

(J) and (N) indicate that these endings should be applied as



necessary.

Thus **tiom** means “that quantity”; **kiam** means “what time”; **nenie** means “no place”; **ĉiom** means “all of it”; and so on.

The following chart gives essentially the same information displayed in a slightly different format:

	<b>TI- that/this</b>	<b>KI- what/which</b>	<b>ĈI- all/every</b>	<b>I- some/any</b>	<b>NENI- no/none</b>
<b>-U</b> (J)(N)	tiu = this/that (one)	kiu = which (one), who(m)	ĉiu = each (one)	iu = some /any (one)	neniu = no (one)
<b>-O</b> (N)	tio = this/that	kio = which-/what	ĉio = every-thing	io = some-thing, any-thing	nenio = nothing
<b>-A</b> (J)(N)	tia = this/that kind of	kia = what kind of	ĉia = every kind of	ia = some /any kind of	nenia = no kind of
<b>-E</b> (N)	tie = there	kie = where	ĉie = every?where	ie = some?where, any?where	nenie = nowhere
<b>-AL</b>	tial = for this/ that reason; therefore	kial = for which /what reason; why	ĉial = for every reason	ial = for some/any reason	nenial = for no reason
<b>-EL</b>	tiel = in this/that way; thus	kiel = in what way; how	ĉiel = in every way	iel = in some/any way	neniel = in no way
<b>-AM</b>	tiam = then, at this/that time; then	kiam = at which/ what time; when	ĉiam = at all times; always	iam = some?time, any time	neniam = never
<b>-OM</b>	tiom = this /that amount	kiom = which/ what amount; how much	ĉiom = all, all of it	iom = some /any amount of it; somewhat	neniom = no amount, none, none of it
<b>-ES</b>	ties = that one's	kies = whose	ĉies = every?one's	ies = some?one's, any?one's	nenies = no one's

Examples:

Jen la virino kies filon vi savis.  
= Here's the woman whose son you saved.

Mi ne kapablas manĝi tiom da glaciaĵo!  
= I can't eat that much ice cream!

Tian politikon mi ĉiel kontraŭstaros!  
= I shall oppose such a policy in every way!

Li neniam parolos sufiĉe malrapide.  
= He will never speak slowly enough.

Ne tiel plendu pri ĉio.  
= Don't complain that way about everything.

Ne tiom plendu pri ĉio.  
= Don't complain so much about everything.

Tiu viro ne sciis tion.  
= That man didn't know that.

Kiam ŝi plej bone telefonu?  
= When should she (best) call?

Kiam plej bonos, ke ŝi telefonu?  
= When will it be best for her to call?

Ial mi vidas ŝin ĉie.  
= For some reason I see her everywhere.

Kiu purigu la lavopelvon?  
= Who's supposed to clean the sink?

### 10.1. Special Features of the Series in -O

Note that correlatives in **-o** do not distinguish singular and plural. The usual referent of such correlatives is (1) an unspecific "thing" or (2) the general situation already known to the listener. In context, English translations are usually "that," "all this," "the above," "such matters," and the like. Reference to a *specific* person, thing, or phenomenon is made with the **-u** forms.

Ĉu vi komprenas tion?  
= Do you understand that? (i.e., what was just said)

Ĉu vi konas tiun?  
= Do you know that one ? (i.e., that person, book, or whatever)

Kio estas tio?  
= What's that?

Mi bategos la personon kiu diris tion!  
= I'll clobber the person who said that!

## 10.2. Special Features of the Series in K-

The series in **K-\*** serves both (1) to form questions and (2) to create expressions to attach relative clauses to main clauses:

Kiu estas via patro?  
= Who is your father?

la homo kiu estas via patro  
= the man who is your father

Kie loĝas vi?  
= Where do you live?

la strato kie loĝas vi  
= the street where you live

Caution: In English (but not in Esperanto) some expressions can be relatives rather than interrogatives because of the word order or the use of “do.” “Where do you live?” and “... where you live” are quite different for us. But in Esperanto **kie loĝas vi** (or **kie vi loĝas**) does both jobs.

Kie li loĝas?  
= Where does he live?

Mi scias, kie li loĝas.  
= I know where he lives.

Kie li falis?  
= Where did he fall down?

Vi staras sur la trotuaro kie li falis.  
= You are standing on the sidewalk where he fell down.

For more about the way this works, see the section on “Forms in **T-K** and **Ĉ-K**” below.

\*-This corresponds etymologically to the QU- and CU- of Latin, French or Spanish words like *que*, *quel*, *cual*, *qui*, *quand*, *quando*, and the like, but note that the French and Spanish *que* has a huge range of usages corresponding to much more specific Esperanto words.

**Kiel** tends to get especially heavy use among the correlatives. It often means “in what manner” (“how”), but tends to be used in questions to mean “to what degree” (“how much”) (where it overlaps with **kiom** in actual practice)

Mi ne scias kiel ripari la komputilon.  
= I don't know how to fix the computer.

Ĉu vi scias kiel inteligenta ŝi estas?  
= Do you know how smart she is?

Kiel bela estas la mateno!  
= How beautiful the morning is!

Kiel is also used roughly like English “as” or “like” (where it overlaps with **kvazaŭ**):

Kiel vi fartas?  
= How are you?

Ŝi traktis lin kiel filon.  
= He treated him as a son.

Ŝi traktis lin kiel patrino.  
= She treated him as a mother would.

Li mortigis malamikojn kiel ratojn.  
= He killed enemies like rats.

Li mortigis malamikojn kiel Napoleono.  
= He killed enemies like Napoleon (i.e., the way Napoleon did).

### 10.3. The Particle Ĉi

The series in **T-** (corresponding to English “th” words like “this,” “that,” “there,” “then”) is a general demonstrative, meaning both “this” and “that.” How can one distinguish “this” from “that”? One way to distinguish them is the use of the little word **ĉi**, placed before or after the correlative. Using **ĉi** marks closeness to the speaker, and it does this very clearly and vividly. Its absence does not necessarily mark great distance, but simply fails to emphasize closeness. Sometimes forms without **ĉi** are also best translated “this”:

Ĉu tio estas kafo?  
= Is this/that coffee?

Ĉu tio ĉi estas kafo?  
= Is this coffee?

Ĉu ĉi tio estas kafo?  
= Is this coffee?

Ĉu mi rajtas sidiĝi tie ĉi?  
= May I sit down right here?

Ĉu mi rajtas sidiĝi tie?  
= May I sit down here/there?

Mankas al mi mono; vi tion komprenas, ĉu ne?  
= I don't have any money; you understand this/that, don't you?

Tion komprenante, kial vi deziras edzigi min?  
= Understanding that/this, why do you want to marry me?

Kio estas tio en mia poŝo? Ĉu melaso? Diable! Daĉjo!  
= What's this in my pocket? Molasses?! Damn! Davey!

Used with a **Ĉ**- correlative, **ĉi** approximates such English expressions as "all this," "all this time," and so on:

Ĉi ĉio estas kafo.  
= All this is coffee.

Ĉiuj ĉi estas miaj amikoj.  
= All these people are my friends.

Vi ĵus aĉetis ĉiom ĉi, amĉjo. Pripagu!  
= You just bought all this, buddy. Pay up.

The same **ĉi**, by the way, is occasionally used in connection with other words than **T**- or **Ĉ**- correlatives, usually as a prefix and usually hyphenated:

Mi sendas ĉi-kune...  
= I am sending herewith...

Li ne venos ĉi-jare.

= He won't be coming this year.

Most Esperantists regard use of **ĉi** directly with a noun as jarring:

Clumsy: Ĉi viro estas mia edzo.

= This man is my husband.

Colloquial: Tiu ĉi viro estas mia edzo.

= This man is my husband.

Colloquial: Ĉi tiu viro ĉi estas mia edzo.

= This man is my husband.

Colloquial: Tiu viro ĉi estas mia edzo.

= This man is my husband.

#### 10.4. The Particle **Ajn**

Even as **ĉi** modifies **T-** words to stress closeness, converting “that” to “this,” so, similarly, the word **ajn** modifies words in the **I-** series (**iu**, **iel**, **iam**, **iom**, and so on) to specify “any” as against “some.” **Ajn** is often translatable as “whatever” or “at all.” (Nothing, in theory, prevents its use with other forms, as some of the following examples show.)

Mi ĝojegos pri iom ajn da manĝaĵo.

= I'll rejoice at any amount of food whatever.

Vizitu nin iam ajn.

= Visit us any time at all.

Li deziras ian amikinon ajn!

= He wants any kind of girlfriend at all!

Iel ajn ni venĝos!

= We'll be avenged by fair means or foul.

Mi faros ion ajn, eĉ studi Esperanton!

= I'll do anything at all, even study Esperanto!

Daĉjeto helpis neniel ajn en la projekto.

= Little Davey helped in no way at all in the project.

Li akceptos ion ajn.  
= He'll accept anything at all.

Ŝi akceptos ĉion ajn.  
= She'll accept any and all.

Ni sukcesos iel ajn disvastigi pacon, eĉ se necesos mortigi ĉiujn ajn!  
= We'll succeed in some way or other in spreading peace, even if we have to kill absolutely everybody.

### 10.5. Special Features of Correlatives Ending in -OM

Correlatives ending in **-om** refer to quantity. Although an **-om** form often functions as the subject or object of a sentence, and is therefore noun-like, it does not require **-n** to show the accusative case.

Ŝi scias neniom pri la afero.  
= She knows nothing about the matter.

Neniom tentos min.  
= No amount will tempt me.

Li ŝtelis ĉiom de la ĉokolado.  
= He stole all of the chocolate.

Nevertheless many speakers regard the **-om** series words as also adverbs, which can modify adjectives and other adverbs:

Ĉu vi scias kiel inteligenta ŝi estas?  
= Do you know how smart she is?

Ĉu vi scias kiom inteligenta ŝi estas?  
= Do you know how smart she is?

The use of **-om** words to modify adjectives is not universally approved. Those who favor the usage (including me) argue that it serves to make the following kind of distinction clearly:

Ŝi estas tiel inteligenta kiel vi.  
= She is intelligent in the way that you are.

Ŝi estas tiom inteligenta kiom vi.

= She is just as intelligent as you are.

Those who oppose the use of **kiom** with adjectives correctly argue that very few speakers in fact make such a distinction, so that **kiel** has to be understood as assuming either meaning by context anyway, and that, because the use of **kiom** is so rare, it is jarring when it does occur. As time passes, it seems ever less jarring, however.

### 10.5.1. Kioma = “Whichth”

**Kioma**, made of the correlative **kiom** plus the adjective suffix **-a**, would correspond to the English “whichth,” except that there is no English “whichth.” In other words, **Kioma** asks the question to which the answer is first, second, third, and so on. Consider the following:

Kioma filo vi estas de li? La tria.  
= Which of his sons are you? The third.

Kiu filo vi estas de li? Karlo.  
= Which of his sons are you? Charles.

The English question is ambiguous as to which of the two kinds of answers is sought. There is no such ambiguity in Esperanto.

Kioma horo estas? La sepa.  
= What time is it? Seven o'clock.

Kioman klason vi ĉeestas/sekvas/vizitas?  
= What grade are you in?

Kioma tago estas hodiaŭ? La 12a.  
= What day [of the month] is today? The 12th.

Kiu tago estas hodiaŭ? Vendredo.  
= What day [by name] is it today? Friday.

The most common use of **kioma**, by far, is for telling time:

Kioma horo estas? La 15a.  
= What time is it? 3 pm.

---



## Chapter 11: Forms in T-K & Ĉ-K: Overview

The correlatives beginning with **T-** (or **Ĉ-**) can be paired with **ke**, with **ĉu**, or with correlatives beginning with **K-** to link clauses together.

Mi amas tion, ke ŝi estas bestodresisto.  
= I love it that she is an animal trainer.

Mi manĝos tiom kiom mi disponos.  
= I'll eat as much as I've got around.

Li agas ĉiel kiel agas ŝi.  
= He acts however she does.

Ni diskutis pri tio, ĉu ŝi venos.  
= We discussed whether she would come.

Ni diskutis ĉu ŝi venos.  
= We discussed whether she would come.

In the most common case, **tio** works as the dummy-noun. It may serve, for example, as a dummy direct object, complete with **-n** ending, after which a longer phrase is linked in:

Li parolis pri gramatiko.  
= He spoke about grammar.

Li priparolis tion, kio interesis ŝin.  
= He spoke about what interested her.

Li priparolis nur tion, kion ŝi jam sciis.  
= He discussed only what she already knew.

Li parolis pri tio, kiel oni studu korelativojn.  
= He spoke about how one ought to study correlatives.

Ni bezonas klargon pri tio, kiam finiĝos la bankedo.  
= We need a clarification about when the banquet will end.

Ni amas tion, kiam Daĉjeto endormiĝas.  
= I love it when Little Davey goes to sleep.

Note that word order is not the critical signal of the meaning of the **K**-expression.

When the sense remains clear, the **T/Ĉ** form can be omitted. In some pairs such an omission is the normal thing, just as in English.

Li agas (tiel) kiel agas ŝi.  
= He acts the way she does.

Mi ne komprenas (tion) kial ŝi lin amas sed ne min.  
= I don't understand why she loves him but not me.

Mi scias (tion,) kie li loĝas.  
= I know where he lives.

Mi ne komprenas (tion,) kio estas interesa pri muziko.  
= I don't understand what is interesting about music.

Without the **T**- element, of course, the phrase can look just like a question. **Kie loĝas vi** (or **kie vi loĝas**) by itself is nearly always heard as a question in Esperanto, although in some contexts it is easily interpreted otherwise.

Kie li loĝas?  
= Where does he live?  
Mi scias, kie li loĝas.  
= I know where he lives.

If we want to stress the relative rather than interrogative use, we must retain the **T**- correlative.

kie vi loĝas  
= where you live, where do you live?

tie, kie vi loĝas  
= (there) where you live, the place where you live

kiam vi venos  
= when you come, when will you come?

tiam, kiam vi venos  
= (then) when you come

kiel vi fartas  
= how you are, how are you?

tiel, kiel vi fartas  
= how you are

kiu venis hieraŭ  
= who came yesterday?, (the one) who came yesterday

tiu, kiu venis hieraŭ  
= (the one) who came yesterday

pri kio vi enketas  
= what are you asking about?, (the one) that you are asking about

tio, pri kiu vi enketas  
= what (the subject which) you are asking about

Kiu parolas tro laŭte?  
= Who is speaking too loud?, (the one) who is speaking too loud

(Tiu,) kiu parolas tro laŭte silentu!  
= Whoever is talking too loud should shut up!

The **T**- element is a matter of choice so long as the sentence remains clear. Indeed, the first **T**- element is rare even in some **T-K** structures.

To stress the “-ever” part of “whatever,” stronger expressions are available, either with a **Ĉ-K** structure or with **ajn**.

Kiam Dio vokis al ŝi?  
= When did God call her?

(Tiam,) kiam Dio vokis al ŝi, ŝi mortis.  
= When God called her, she died.

(Tiam,) kiam Dio vokos al ŝi, ŝi mortos.  
= When(ever) God calls her, she will die.

(Tiam,) kiam ajn Dio vokos al ŝi, ŝi mortos.  
= Whenever God calls her, she will die.

The rest of this section provides some details and more examples for the individual combinations.

### 11.1. Tio kio= what, whatever, that which

This structure, using **tio(n)**, is the most important mechanism for creating subordinate clauses.

(Tio,) kion mi deziras diri estas (tio), ke mi jam aĉetis ĝin.  
= What I wanted to say was that I have already bought it.

Ni ne parolu pri tio, kion vi jam faris.  
= Let's not talk about what you've already done.

(Tio,) kion mi jam faris ne plu defias min.  
= That which I have already done no longer challenges me.  
= What I have already done no longer challenges me.

Mi promesas fari (tion,) kion vi deziras.  
= I promise to do what(ever) you want.

### 11.2. Tiu kiu = (the) one who

Tiu kiu ŝtelas blekantan bebon sendube estas freneza.  
= One who steals a squalling baby is surely mad.

Mi ĵus vidis tiun kiu parolis al vi hieraŭ.  
= I just saw the one who spoke to you yesterday.

Ĉu ŝi estas tiu pri kiu li parolis?  
= Is she the one he was talking about?

Kiu tro alten rigardon direktas, tiu tre baldaŭ okulojn difektas.<sup>z</sup>  
= One will damage his eyes who casts them upon things too high.

Eternas juneco por tiu kiu june pensas.  
= Youth is eternal for one who thinks youthfully.

Kiun favoras la sorto, por tiu eĉ koko estas ovoporta.<sup>z</sup>  
= For one whom fortune favors even a cock lays eggs.

The **T**- element is often omitted in proverbs, when the meaning is often

closer to “whoever”:

Eĉ monstron admiras kiu ame deliras.<sup>2</sup> (Tiu omitted.)  
= One who is mad with love admires even a monster.

### **11.3. Tia kia the kind (of ...) that/who**

Li estas tia knabo kia pli ŝatas legi ol manĝi.  
= He's the kind of boy who would rather read than eat.

Li estis tia kia unu tagon eble fariĝus imperiestro.  
= He was the kind who might become emperor some day.

Ŝi estas tia kia prenos ĉiom de via mono.  
= She's the kind who'll take all your money.

Jen (tia) tago kia plej plaĉas al mi!  
= Here's the sort of day that I like best!

### **11.4. Tiel kiel = in whatever way, as ... as**

Faru ĝin tiel kiel vi povas.  
= Do it in whatever way you can.

Kantu tiel laŭte kiel vi kapablas.  
= Sing as loud as you can.

Ŝi neniam estis tiel honesta kiel ŝia frato.  
= She was never as honest as her brother.

### **11.5. Tiom kiom = as much as**

Prenu (tiom) kiom vi deziras.  
= Take as much as you want.

Li prenis duoble (tiom) kiom li bezonis  
= He took twice as much as he needed.

La pano kostas duoble (tiom) kiom (ĝi kostis) pasintjare.  
= Bread costs twice as much as it cost last year.

## 11.6. Tiam kiam = when(ever)

The T- element is usually optional here.

Venu (tiam) kiam vi estos libera.  
= Come when(ever) you're free.

Venu ĉiam kiam vi estos libera.  
= Venu kiam ajn vi estos libera.  
= Come whenever you're free.

(Tiam) kiam venos la pluvego ni jam havos ŝipon!  
=When the deluge comes, we will already have a ship!

Kiam ajn venos la pluvego, ni jam havos ŝipon!  
=Whenever the deluge comes we will already have a ship!

La pekemulo estis tre milda krom tiam kiam li estis murdanta.  
= The sinner was very gentle except when he was murdering.

## 11.7. Forms in Ĉ-K.

Forms with a **Ĉ**- correlative plus a **K**- correlative or **ke** are also common. As noted, this is parallel in form to the much commoner **T-K** constructions. There is a difference in meaning, however:

tie, kie vi loĝas  
= where you live

ĉie, kie vi loĝas  
= any place you live, every place you live, wherever you live

tiu, kiu amas min  
= he who likes me

ĉiu kiu amas min  
= everyone who likes me, whoever likes me

iu kiu amas min  
= anyone who likes me

Iru (tien,) kien vi deziras.

= Go where you like.

Iru ĉien kien vi deziras.

= Go everywhere you like, wherever you like.

ĉiel, kiel necesas

= in whatever way it has to be done, however it must be done

Mi promesas fari ĉion ajn vi deziras.

OR Mi promesas fari kion ajn vi deziras.

OR Mi promesas far ĉion kion vi deziras.

=I promise to do whatever you want.

### 11.8. Forms in T- + Ke/Ĉu

The series of correlatives beginning with **T-** also combines with **ke** to link subordinate clauses to main clauses.\* This apparatus is much more visible in Esperanto than in English, and English speakers tend to underutilize it, trying instead to build (unworkable) sentences based on English originals.

\*-Except in the phrase **por ke** = “in order that,” it is conventional to put a comma before **ke** or **ĉu**. I know of no reason for this, although it is done in some European languages. The comma contributes nothing to the sentence, and its use seems to be decreasing, but many editors still regard it as an error or an Anglicism if you leave it out.

#### 11.8.1. Tio, ke/ĉu

**Tio, ke** often roughly corresponds to English “the fact that.” Many of the uses of **tio, ke** in Esperanto also correspond to English forms that involve the ending “-ing.” This is especially true when **tio, ke** is used after a preposition:

La diferenco konsistas en tio, ke li estas pli alta.

= The difference lies in the fact that he is taller. OR The difference lies in his being taller.

Lia pigreco konsistas en tio, ke li ĉiam dormas.

= His laziness consists of his sleeping all the time.. OR His laziness consists of the fact that he sleeps all the time.

Li edzinigis ŝin malgraŭ tio, ke ŝi ne estis tiel riĉa kiel li estis.

= He married her despite the fact that she was not as rich as he was. . OR He married her in spite of her not being as rich as he was.

Li iris malgraŭ tio, ke ŝi ne deziris iri.

= He went in spite of her not wanting to go.

Li iris malgraŭ tio, ke ŝi ne deziris, ke li iru.

= He went in spite of her not wanting him to go.

Ŝi foriris sen tio, ke oni petis ŝin.

= She left without being asked to.

Mi nenion scias pri tio, ĉu ŝi plej bone iru aŭ ne.

= I know nothing about whether she ought to go or not.

Li demandis pri tio, ĉu ŝi studas entomologion.

= He asked about whether she was studying entomology.

The **tio** part is sometimes omitted when the sense is clear enough without it:

(Tio,) ke ŝi studas entomologion forte logis lin.

= Her studying entomology strongly attracted him.

(Tio) kio forte logis lin estis (tio,) ke ŝi studis entomologion.

= What strongly attracted him about her was her studying entomology.

= What strongly attracted him about her was (the fact) that she studied entomology.

Por li la plej grava demando estas (tio), ĉu ŝi studas entomologion.

= For him the most important question is whether she studies entomology.

### 11.8.2. Other Correlatives + Ke to Show Result

Several other **T-** correlatives can be used with **ke** to show the result of a quantity or quality.

#### **Tiom, ke = to such an extent that, so much that**

Ŝi manĝis tiom, ke ŝi krevigis la korseton.

= She ate so much that she burst her girdle.

Li perdis tiom da mono, ke li bankrotis.

= He lost so much money that he went bankrupt.



**Tia, ke = such a ... that**

Ŝi estis tia demono, ke ĉiu ŝin timis.

= She was such a demon that everybody was afraid of her.

Notice the contrast between **tia...ke** and **tia...kia**:

Li estis tia pajaco, ke ĉiu priridis lin.

= He was such a clown that everybody laughed at him.

Li estis tia pajaco, kian ĉiu pli kompatis ol priridis .

= He was the kind of clown that everybody pitied more than laughed at.

**Tiel, ke = such that, so ... that**

Li aranĝis la aferon tiel, ke ŝi heredis nenion.

= He arranged the matter such that she inherited nothing.

Ŝi kantis la kanton tiel malbone, ke ni ĝin ne rekonis.

= She sang the song so badly that we didn't recognize it.

Sendu ĝin tiel, ke ĝi alvenu plej laste la 15an de decembro.

= Send it so that it arrives by the 15th of December.

**Tial, ke = because (= ĉar)**

Li venis tial, ke li deziris danci.

= He came for the reason that he wanted to dance.

Li venis ĉar li deziris danci.

= He came because he wanted to dance.

---

## Chapter 12: Verbs

Esperanto verbs have four moods ( **modoj**):

1. indicative mood (with the endings **-as**, **-is**, and **-os**),
2. conditional mood (with the ending **-us**),
3. imperative (volitive) mood (with the ending **-u**),
4. infinitive mood (with the ending **-i**).

To avoid both the formality of “grammar terms” and misleading

understandings about these forms in other languages, many speakers prefer even in English to use their Esperanto names: the **as-modo**, **us-modo**, **u-modo**, and **i-modo**.

## 12.1. Four Moods of the Verb

### 12.1.1. The As-Mood (Indicative Mood)

The indicative mood (usually called the **as-modo** in Esperanto) is used to state a fact. Most verbs occur in the indicative mood. There are three tenses, each with a distinctive ending: present ( **-as**), past ( **-is**), and future ( **-os**).

Mi aĉetas ĝin. = I am buying it.

Mi aĉetis ĝin. = I bought it.

Mi aĉetos ĝin. = I'll buy it. = I'm going to buy it .

#### 12.1.1.1. The Present Tense

The present tense is marked by the ending **-as** and is used to refer to things going on at the time when the sentence is spoken or written:

Mi skribas ĉi tiun leteron en mia nova ruldomo.

= I am writing this letter in my new trailer.

It is also used when something is generally or constantly happening or true:

Mi malamas ajlon.

= I hate garlic.

La fatrasisto venas lunde.

= The garbage man comes on Mondays.

Ili ciam miskantas la himnon.

= They always sing the anthem wrong.

The Esperanto present tense corresponds with several English verb forms:

Mi aĉetas ajlon.

= I am buying garlic.

= I buy garlic  
= I do buy garlic.

Many languages have a “narrative present tense.” This means that in long accounts of past events, the present tense is used as the basic form, as though the events were taking place at the time of the telling, and future and past tense forms are used only relative to that artificially “present” time.\* Standard written English avoids this (although it occurs in some spoken English dialects), but you will occasionally encounter it in Esperanto, sometimes quite eloquently used. I recommend against it in most cases because it violates the basic definition of tense in Esperanto, which is linked to time.

\*-Foreign language teachers usually “explain” the custom by claiming that the narrative present tense is more “vivid” than a boring old past tense. Vivid or not, it is customary in some languages.

### 12.1.1.2. The Past Tense

The past verb ending is -is. It is used to mark anything that happened in the past and corresponds to several different shades of meaning in English:

Ĉu vi decidis?  
= Did you decide?  
= Were you deciding?  
= Have you decided?  
= Have you been deciding?  
= Had you decided?  
= Had you been deciding?

In general, Esperanto is less fussy about exact time in the past than is English. (But see the appendix on participles.) Also in general, it works just fine that way. Finer shades of meaning, if necessary, can be indicated by adding appropriate but optional adverbs or affixes, using participial constructions, and the like:

Ĉu vi jam decidis? = Had/have you already decided?  
Ĉu vi decidadis? = Were you deciding?  
Ĉu vi ankoraŭ decidis? = Were you still deciding?  
Ĉu vi estos decidinta? = Will you have decided?  
Ĉu vi eldecidis? = Did you finish making your decision?  
Ĉu vi findecidis? = Did you finish making your decision?  
Ĉu vi fine decidis? = Did you finally decide?

Ĉu vi ekdecidis? = Did you start making your decision?

### 12.1.1.3. The Future Tense

The future tense is formed by adding the verbal ending **-os**. Again, it covers several shades of meaning that are differentiated in English:

Morgaŭ mi aĉetos multajn meblojn.

= Tomorrow I'll buy a lot of furniture.

= Tomorrow I'll have bought a lot of furniture.

= Tomorrow I'll be buying a lot of furniture.

= Tomorrow I'm going to buy a lot of furniture.

Caution: In English we sometimes use a present tense form for a future meaning.\* This is much less common in Esperanto.

\*-So do the French. So do the Poles. Some Esperantists defend a similar usage in Esperanto, but most speakers in most countries regard it as substandard.

Mi foriros morgaŭ vespere.

= I leave tomorrow night.

### 12.1.1.4. Sequence of Tenses & Indirect Quotation

Some sentences have more than one verb, and one takes its time reference from the other. In a couple of cases, Esperanto usage does not correspond to what we say in English.

In English, when we discuss events in the future, we often use a present-tense verb in a subordinate clause:

When I am in Helsinki, I will need a coat.

She'll be comin' 'round the mountain when she comes.

In Esperanto similar sentences take a future tense for *both* verbs:

Kiam mi estos en Helsinki, mi bezonos mantelon.

= When I am in Helsinki, I will need a coat.

She'll be comin' 'round the mountain when she comes.

= Ĉirkaŭvenos ŝi la monton kiam ŝi venos.

La reĝo sentis, ke li baldaŭ mortos.

= The king sensed he was soon to die.

Daĉjeto detruos ĉiom kiom oni donos al li.

= Little Davey will destroy as much as they give him.

Indirect quotation occurs when we tell what someone else says, but do not necessarily use the exact words:

Direct quotation: He said, "I hate monkeys."

Indirect quotation: He said that he hated monkeys.

In English, the verb form in the indirectly quoted material changes depending upon the time of the main verb:

Indirect quotation: He said that he hated monkeys.

Indirect quotation: He'll say that he hates monkeys.

In Esperanto, the verb in the subordinate clause is that same as it would be if the quotation were direct:

Direct quotation: Li diris: "Mi malamas simiojn." = He said, "I hate monkeys."

Indirect quotation: Li diris, ke li malamas simiojn. = He said that he hated monkeys.

Indirect quotation: Li diros, ke li malamas simiojn. = He'll say that he hates monkeys.

Here are some additional examples:

Ŝi diris, ke li venos.

= She said he would come.

Mi ne sciis, ĉu li venis.

= I didn't know whether he had come or not.

Mi skribos, ĉu ŝi venis.

= I'll write whether she's come or not.

Ŝi diros, ke ŝi jam faris ĝin.

= She'll say she already did it.

Ŝi diris, ke ŝi tuj faros ĝin.

= She said she'd do it immediately.

Ni afektis, ke li estas nobelo.  
= We pretended he was a nobleman.

Mi insistis, ke mi iros morgaŭ.  
= I insisted I would go tomorrow.

Mi insistis, ke mi iros la sekvan tagon.  
= I insisted I would go the next day.

Ni ne sciis kiam vi venos.  
= We didn't know when you would come.

Ne gravas, ke ŝi eksciis.  
= It doesn't matter that she has found out.

Ne gravis, ke ŝi eksciis.  
= It didn't matter that she had found out.

Ne gravos, ke ŝi eksciis.  
= It won't matter that she'll have found out.

Ne gravas, ke ŝi ekscios.  
= It doesn't matter that she'll find out.

Ne gravis, ke ŝi ekscios.  
= It didn't matter that she would find out.

Ne gravos, ke ŝi ekscios.  
= It won't matter that she'll find out.

Ne gravas, ke ŝi ekscias.  
= It doesn't matter that she's finding out.

Ne gravis, ke ŝi ekscias.  
= It didn't matter that she was finding out.

Ne gravos, ke ŝi ekscias.  
= It won't matter that she'll be finding out.

### 12.1.2. The Us-Mood (Conditional Mood)

The ending **-us** marks the conditional mood. It is used (1) in "if...then"

sentences when what is indicated is a hypothetical condition rather than a fact, and (2) in polite queries and requests.

Se mi laborus ĉi tie, mi estus energia.  
= If I worked here, I would be energetic.

Se ili estus hungaroj, ili ne estus kanadanoj!  
= If they were Hungarians, they wouldn't be Canadians!

Ĉu vi volus korespondi kun mi?  
= Would you like to correspond with me?

Mi volus scii vian nomon.  
= I'd like to know your name.

Note that "if...then" sentences take **-us** only if the condition is hypothetical. When it is an established fact, the regular **-as**, **-is**, **-os** endings of the indicative mood ( **as-modo**) are used.

Se mi venos, ankaŭ ŝi venos.  
= If I come, she will come.

Se mi venus, ankaŭ ŝi venus.  
= If I were to come, she would come. = If I came, she would come.

Se li vivis en 1820, li jam mortis.  
= If he was alive in 1820, he has already died.

Se li vivus en 1820, li jam mortus.  
= If he had lived in 1820, he would already have died.

Se vi aĉetas ion, vi devas pagi.  
= If you buy anything, you must pay for it.

Se vi aĉetus ion, vi devus pagi.  
= If you had bought anything, you'd have to pay for it.

English differentiates between present and past time in the conditional, while Esperanto does not.

Se Zamenhof scius la ĉinan, Esperanto estus malsama.  
= If Zamenhof had known Chinese, Esperanto would be different.

Se mi scius la ĉinan, mi legus la verkaron de Meng Xiangke.  
= If I knew Chinese, I would read the works of Meng Xiangke.

Se aliplanedanoj vizitus Romon, la imperio ne falus.  
= If space aliens had visited Rome, the empire would not have fallen.

Se vi aĉetus ion, vi devus pagi.  
= If you bought anything, you'd have to pay for it. OR If you had bought anything, you'd have had to pay for it.

Kion vi farus, se vi scius ĝin?  
= What would you do if you knew about it? OR What would you have done if you had known about it?

If it is critical to make such a distinction, the additional time information can be inserted with an adverb:

Kion vi farus nun, se vi scius ĝin?  
= What would do now if you knew about it?

Kion vi farus pasintjare, se vi scius ĝin.  
= What would you have done last year if you had known about it?

It is possible (but quite inelegant and rarely necessary) to use **estus** plus a participle, since the **-i-**, **-a-**, or **-o-** of the participles can be pressed into service:

Kion vi estus faranta, se ve scius ĝin?  
OR Kion vi farus, se vi estus scianta ĝin?  
OR Kion vi estus faranta, se vi estus scianta ĝin?  
= What would you do if you knew about it?

Kion vi estus farinta, se vi scius ĝin?  
OR Kion vi farus, se vi estus sciinta ĝin?  
OR Kion vi estus farinta, se vi estus sciinta ĝin?  
= What would you have done if you had known about it?

### **12.1.3. The U-Mood (Imperative/Volitive Mood)**

Esperanto has a single form, with the ending **-u**, that does the work of the “imperative,” “volitive,” and “subjunctive” systems of the European



languages. Beginning textbooks often call it the “imperative,” but it is better called the “U-mood” ( **u-modo** in Esperanto) because it does so many other jobs as well. The underlying idea expressed is that of necessity or desire, a statement about how things ought to be. When I want something done I use the U-mood, whether I am issuing a direct order to someone (“Eat it!”) or an indirect order (“Let’s eat!” “Let them eat cake!”).

### **12.1.3.1. The U-Mood in Direct Commands**

Esperanto direct commands (imperatives) are expressed in the U-mood:

Iru! = Go!

Skribu! = Write!

Ne forgesu! = Don’t forget

Ne pafu! = Don’t shoot!

Aĉetu por mi cigaredojn. = Buy me cigarettes.

Ne aĉetu tiun stultan kravaton. = Don’t buy that stupid tie.

### **12.1.3.2. The U-Mood in Indirect Commands**

Also in the U-mood are indirect commands (those in which the subject is expressed and is not necessarily “you”). The usage is quite broad and has no limit on the English translations that are possible:

Georgo faru ĝin!

= Let George do it!

Ili aĉetu multajn librojn!

= May they buy many books!

Li skribu al sia edzino. Min tio ne ĝenas.

= Let him write to his wife. That doesn’t bother me.

Plej bonas, ke ŝi skribu al sia edzo.

= It’s best that she write to her husband.

Vi plej bone ne trinku kafon.

= The best thing for you to do is not to drink coffee.

= It’s best for you not to drink coffee.

Mi iru tien.

= I guess I ought to go there.

Vivu vi mil jarojn!  
= May you live a thousand years!

Ni iru al la kafejo.  
= Let's go to the café.

Vi ne iru sola vespere.  
= You oughtn't to go alone at night.

Reĝo estu pli militema.  
= A king ought to be more war-like.

Mi plej bone aĉetu la grizan.  
= I'd best buy the grey one.

Iru ili al Infero!  
= They can go to Hell!

Li do aĉetu ĝin, se li tiom ĝin deziras!  
= So let him buy it if he wants it that much!

Vi silentu pri ĉio ĉi!  
= You keep quiet about all this!

Nun manĝu ni!  
= Now let's eat!

Envenu la klaŭnojn!  
= Send in the clowns!

Envenigu la klaŭnojn!  
= Send in the clowns!

Ŝi belu, kaj mi ŝin forgesu!  
= Let her be beautiful and let me forget her!

In many of these cases the word “should” could well be used in the English equivalent. Another way of expressing “should-ness” is with **devus**. See **devi** in Part II.

### 12.1.3.3. The U-Mood After Verbs of Commanding and Desiring

After a verb which expresses a strong wish, request, or command, the U-mood is usual in the subordinate clause. (This usage corresponds approximately to *some* uses of the subjunctive in *some* other languages you may have studied.\* )

\*-Caution to students of Spanish: The Esperanto U-mood is less frequent than the Spanish subjunctive and is *not* used to express doubt or hope: **Mi esperas, ke ŝi venos.** = *Espero que ella venga.* **Mi dubas ĉu ŝi venos.** = *Dudo que ella venga.* **Ne estis certe, ke ili venos.** = *No era cierto, que vinieron.*

Ŝi petis, ke vi ne faru tion.  
= She asked you not to do that.

Li postulos, ke vi skribu konfeson.  
= He will require that you write a confession.

Mi volas, ke li venu morgaŭ.  
= I want him to come tomorrow.

### 12.1.3.4. The U-Mood After por ke = “in order that,” “in order to”

Ŝi aĉetis donacon por ke li ŝin pardonu.  
= She bought a present so he would forgive her.

Li verkis libron, por ke ili lernu Esperanton.  
= He wrote a book so that they might learn Esperanto.

When the actor is the same in both halves of the sentence, “so that” or “in order to” can be translated by **por** plus the infinitive:

Ni iru al la magazeno por ke ni aĉetu pistolon.  
= Let’s go to the store so that we can buy a pistol.

Ni iru al la magazeno por aĉeti pistolon.  
= Let’s go to the store and/to buy a pistol.

Ni iru al la magazeno por ke vi aĉetu pistolon.  
= Let’s go to the store so that you can buy a pistol.

Note that a few Esperantists routinely use an exclamation point after a sentence with a **-u** verb in the main clause.

#### 12.1.4. The I-Mood (Infinitive Mood)

An infinitive is usually formed in English with the word “to” plus the simplest form of the verb: “To eat,” “to expire,” and “to imagine” are infinitives. (After helping verbs, we omit the “to.”) The Esperanto infinitive ends in **-i**. Hence the name **i-modo**. As in English, the Esperanto infinitive is most commonly used to complete the action of another verb.

Mi ne deziras vidi ŝin.  
= I don't want to see her.

Bonvolu helpi nin.  
= Please help us.

Vi neniam lernos deklami!  
= You'll never learn to do recitations!

Li lernos kanti ... finfine!  
= He's going to learn how to sing ... at last!

Mi ne scias skii.  
= I don't know how to ski.

Mi ne povos vidi vin morgaŭ.  
= I won't be able to see you tomorrow.

The infinitive is used after a handful of prepositions, most notably **por** = “for,” **krom** = “besides,” and **anstataŭ** = “instead of”:

Ŝi ĉeestis la kunvenon nur por manĝi.  
= She attended the meeting only to eat.

Li instruis Esperanton por lukri monon.  
= He taught Esperanto in order to earn money.

Li emas paroli anstataŭ pensi. = He tends to talk rather than think.

Ŝi parolis anstataŭ pensi. = She talked instead of thinking.

In principle, there is no reason why an infinitive could not be used after *any* preposition. In practice, however, many combinations of preposition plus infinitive are experienced as confusing or jarring (depending upon the

experience and temperament of the listener) and rarely occur.

Jarring: Li parolis sen pensi. = He spoke without thinking.

Colloquial: Li parolis sen pensado. = He spoke without thinking.

Best: Li parolis senpense. = He spoke without thinking.

Jarring: Ŝi manĝis dum paroli. = She ate “while to talk.”

Colloquial: Ŝi manĝis dum parolado. = She ate during the talking.

Colloquial: Ŝi manĝis dum ŝi parolis. = She ate while she talked.

Best: Ŝi manĝis parolante. = She ate while talking.

Jarring: Ŝi manĝis post paroli. = She ate “after to talk.”

Colloquial: Ŝi manĝis post kiam ŝi parolis. = She ate after she talked.

Best: Ŝi manĝis parolinte. = She ate after talking.

Jarring: Ŝi manĝis antaŭ paroli. = She ate “before to talk.”

Marginal: Ŝi manĝis antaŭ ol paroli. = She ate before talking.

\* Colloquial: Ŝi manĝis antaŭ ol ŝi parolis. = She ate before she talked.

Best: Ŝi manĝis parolonte. = She ate before talking.

The infinitive is the form of the verb one normally finds in lists and dictionaries (the “citation form”).

\*-For reasons that have little to do with logic, **ol** is used with **antaŭ** = before (rarely with **post** = “after”) and changes the distribution of **antaŭ** somewhat. See the entry on **ol** in Part II.

Serĉu “erudi” en la vortaro. = Look up “erudi” in the dictionary.

## 12.2. Impersonal Verbs (“Weather Verbs”)

Some sentences have no logical subject. In “it’s raining,” English provides the dummy subject “it.” Esperanto simply leaves the subject out in such cases:

Pluvis. = It was raining.

Estas varme. = Varmas. = It’s hot.

Estas egale. = It’s all the same.

Estus bone vojaĝi. = It would be nice to travel.

(Note that after **esti** in such a sentence an adverb is used where English would require an adjective. The logic is that there is no subject for an adjective to modify.)

English sentences beginning with “there is” tend to correspond with Esperanto sentences that start simply with **estas**.

Estas tri viroj tie. = There are three men there.

To call specific attention to the subject, however, use **jen** (with or without **esti**):

Jen [estas] tri francaj kokinoj! Tie!  
= There are three French hens! Over there!

Some speakers also omit the subject when it is something already mentioned or is otherwise obvious. This strikes many as substandard (and is extremely rare in print), but it is not uncommon:

[Tio] estas tre bela. = That’s very pretty.  
[Tio] estas ĉio. = That’s all.

### 12.3. Participles

A participle is an adjective formed from a verb. In English there are two forms (usually ending in “-ed” or “-en” and in “-ing”):

to fall	fallen [tree]	falling [tree]
to color	colored [glass]	coloring [matter]
to exhaust	exhausted [funds]	exhausting [work]
to grow	grown [woman]	growing [child]
to eat	half-eaten [food]	[they’re] eating

In Esperanto the participle endings are:

- anta -ata** showing action in progress
- inta -ita** showing action completed
- onta -ota** showing action yet to come

The endings in the first column above belong to *active* Esperanto participles, showing action performed *by* the person or thing that the adjective modifies. Those in the second column belong to *passive* participles, showing action

performed *upon* the person or thing that the adjective modifies. Many of the participles must be rendered into English by a phrase, since English has only two participles, compared with six in Esperanto.

kanti	to sing	Al ŝi plaĉas kanti ariojn. = She likes to sing arias. = She likes singing arias.
kantanta	singing	La virino kantanta la arion estas mia filino. = The woman singing the aria is my daughter.
kantinta	who was singing before	La virino kantinta la arion estas mia filino. = The woman who sang the aria is my daughter.
kantonta	who will sing, who is to sing	La virino kantonta la arion estas mia filino. = The woman who's going to sing the aria is my daughter.
kantata	being sung	La plej kantata ario estas "Zamidiniĝo." = The most widely sung aria is "The Transformation of Zamidina".
kantita	sung, which has been sung	Ĉiu parolas pri la ario kantita hieraŭ. = Everyone's talking about the aria sung yesterday.
kantota	to be sung	La muziko kantota kuŝas sur la tablo. = The music to be sung is lying on the table.

The ability to form all these participles so easily out of verbs allows Esperanto compactness and precision, as well as elegant variation in expression, and contributes importantly to some of its most impressive stylistic triumphs.

\*-The **de** is used when the agent is a person or group of people. The means by which something is done is shown by **per**: **letero verkita de ŝi per skribmaŝino** = a letter composed by her with a typewriter.

Passive participles often require some indication of the agent who is responsible for the action. In English we use the word "by" with passive verb constructions for this. In Esperanto the job is usually done by **de**,\* or by **fare de** if there are already a lot of **de**'s in the sentence. Some modern writers and occasional speakers also use the pseudo-preposition **far**, but there are purist

\*\*-I have the impression that over the mid years of the XXth century **far** established itself as moderately respectable, or at least unremarkable, but that by century's turn its usage had begun falling off again.

arguments against it.\*\*

Jen la porkaĵo manĝota de ni.

= Here is the pork to be eaten by us. Here is the pork we are to eat.

Jen letero skribita (fare) de ŝi.

= Here is a letter that she wrote.

Leteron skribitan de la Prezidento ŝi vidis sur la muro de mia oficejo.

= On the wall of my office she saw a letter written by the President.

Donacoj senditaj en decembro ankoraŭ ne atingis Brition.

= Gifts sent in December still have not reached Britain.

Donacoj senditaj far Petro en decembro ankoraŭ ne atingis Britujon.

= Gifts that Peter sent in December still have not reached Britain.

Prezidento elektota en Kostariko eble estos virino.

= The president to be elected in Costa Rica will perhaps be a woman.

Prezidento elektota de la kostarikanoj eble estos virino.

= The president to be elected by the Costa Ricans may be a woman.

Mebloj produktataj de via entrepreno...

= Furniture being produced by your firm...

Meblo produktita de via entrepreno...

= A piece of furniture produced by your firm...

Meblo produktota de via entrepreno...

= A piece of furniture that your firm is going to be producing...

= A piece of furniture to be produced by your firm...

Especially in earlier Esperanto, the word order tended to put the **de** phrase between the adjective and its noun:

Mi ricevis la skribitan de via patrino leteron.

= I have received the letter written by your mother.

This still occurs, but it is less common today, when most people would write:

Mi ricevis la leteron skribitan de via patrino.



= I have received the letter written by your mother.

Like any other adjective, a participle can be used with the verb **esti** = “to be”:

La muro estas naŭze roza. = The wall is nauseatingly pink.

La muro estas roze farbita. = The wall is painted in pink.

Li estas farbanta la muron. = He is painting the wall.

La muro estas farbota hodiaŭ. = The wall is to be painted today.

La muro farbotas hodiaŭ. = The wall is to be painted today.

### **12.3.1. Participial Adverbs (Adverbial Participles)**

By changing the ending **-a** to **-e**, a participle becomes an adverb and can modify a verb. (The literal English equivalents are less common and more formal than the Esperanto usage here.)

Tro rapide englutinte la bieron, ŝi ruktis triviale.

= Having guzzled the beer too fast, she let forth with a vulgar belch.

Vidite man'-en-mane kun ŝi, li devis edzinigi ŝin.

= Having been seen hand-in-hand with her, he had to marry her.

Ni vivas ĉiam esperante la helpon de Dio.

= We live always hoping for God's help.

Enorme kreskinte, la tomato forvoris Sandiegon.

= Having grown enormously, the tomato devoured San Diego.

### **12.3.2. Participial Nouns**

By changing the ending **-a** to **-o**, a participle becomes a noun, referring to the person who is involved with the action:

La vundito resaniĝis.

= The wounded person recovered.

Li nomis sin “Doktoro Esperanto”.

= He called himself “Dr. One-Who-Hopes.”

La ekzekutotinoj ne kulpas!

= The women they're going to execute aren't guilty!

Ŝi kunvenigis la prezidanton, prezidonton, kaj prezidinton.  
= She convened the president, president-elect, and past president.

Jen Daĉjeto, Mortiginto de Monstroj!  
= Here's Little Davey, Slayer of Monsters!

Jen Daĉjeto, Mortigonto de Monstroj!  
= Here's Little Davey, Slayer-to-Be of Monsters!

### 12.3.3. The “Passive Voice”

The above examples with **estas** **farbita/ata/anta** show that the combination of **esti** with the participles can produce so-called compound verbs.\* Such compounds, when they use passive rather than active participles, are the principal way in which Esperanto produces the passive voice.

\*-Like other adjectives after **esti**, a participle can occasionally assimilate the tense ending of **esti** and drop the **esti**, as in the earlier example: **estas farbota = farbotas**. See the subsection on “Predicate Adjectives as Stative Verbs” in the section on adjectives (Section 4.3.1.2).

Given that there are forms with **-iĝ-** (discussed below) and expressions with **oni** as a subject (discussed with pronouns), passive verb forms made with participles are rarely necessary, and even more rarely elegant. Furthermore the fact that tense is shown *both* by the form of **esti** *and* by the ending of the participle leads to logical complexities that tend to distract attention from what you are trying to say.

That is all any ordinary mortal actually needs to know about passive verbs in order to speak perfectly fine Esperanto. However, since a good deal of ink has been spilt over them and passions have at times run high on the subject (!), a discussion of the details of that debate may be found in the appendix on participles. Here in summary is what it says:

### 12.3.4. Tense & Aspect (Summary of Appendix)

Most Esperanto grammarians now agree that what we think of as the “tense” shown in participles is not actually tense, but rather what is technically called “aspect.” That is, what is important in the participle itself is not

\*-This point was the focus of the famous “ata-ita” dispute of the mid XXth century. There are still a few diehard (sorehead?) “atists” around, but basically the “itists” won. The position presented here is the

so much the time of the action (which is shown by the form of **esti**) but rather whether the action is already completed ( **-it-**, **-int-**), in process ( **-at-**, **-ant-**), or planned ( **-ot-**, **-ont-** ).\*

“itist” one. If you actually want to know more about all this, see the appendix.

La domo estis konstruita en 1938.  
= The building was built in 1938.

La domo estis jam\*\* konstruita en 1938.  
= The building had already been built in 1938.

\*\* -Note for the grammatically precise:  
Esperanto verb forms do not distinguish a past tense (“was built”) from a past perfect tense (“had been built”). **Estis konstruita** can mean either “was built” or “had been built.” To make it unambiguously past perfect, one uses the adverb **jam**, as in the example here.

La domo estis konstruita ĝis 1938.  
= The building had been built by 1938.

La domo estis konstruata en 1938.  
= The building was under construction in 1938.

La domo estos konstruita en 2036.  
= The building will be built in 2036.

La domo estos konstruota en 2036.  
= The building will be yet to be built in 2036.

La domo estos konstruata en 2016.  
= The building will be under construction in 2036.

The use of “compound verbs” therefore always entails assumptions about the aspect as well as the time of an event.

## 12.4. Transitivity & Intransitivity: Verbs in -ig- and -iĝ-

A transitive verb is one which “transmits” action from a subject to an object:

She ate the geranium. (“Geranium” is the object.)  
He wrote the opera. (“Opera” is the object.)  
The sneeze blew him to bits. (“Him” is the object.)

An intransitive verb is one which does not have (or imply) an object:

He smiled shyly.  
The beanstalk grew and grew.

In English (and Chinese and some other languages) most verbs can be transitive in some sentences and intransitive in others:

The beanstalk grew and grew. (Intransitive.)  
She grew a huge beanstalk. (Transitive; “beanstalk” is the object.)  
The water still isn’t boiling. (Intransitive.)  
Go and boil some water. (Transitive; “water” is the object.)

In Esperanto the vast majority of verbs are either transitive or intransitive, but not both.\* Thus the Esperanto verb **boli** is cognate with the English “boil,” but **boli** is always intransitive. It means “boil” in the sense of “boil and bubble.” One cannot **boli** anything. In Esperanto we can say **La akvo bolas.** = “The water is boiling.” But we need a different verb to say “I am boiling the water.”

Sometimes such a verb already exists. But often it must be created. This can be done by use of the suffixes **-ig-** and **-iĝ-**.

The basic device for turning an intransitive Esperanto verb root into a transitive one is the suffix **-ig-**.

La akvo bolas.  
= The water is boiling (& bubbling).

Mi boligas la akvon.  
= I am boiling the water (making it boil & bubble).

La infanoj staris ĉe la fenestro.  
= The kids were standing at the window.

\*-A theoretical note: It will emerge by the end of this discussion that an Esperanto root which requires a grammatical ending to function as a word, and which takes its “part of speech” functions from the ending(s) applied, nevertheless does have a certain inherent “affinity” to one part of speech rather than another. For present purposes we may assume that roots requiring endings fall into the following “affinity” categories:

- (1) nouns (e.g., **kat-** = “cat”),
- (2) adjectives (**bel-** = “beautiful”),
- (3) intransitive verbs (**sid-** = “sit”),
- (4) transitive verbs (**bat-** = “strike”), and
- (5) a very small number of adverbs (**nepr-** = “necessarily”).

The issue is important because the effects of various suffixes and endings differ depending upon the category to which the root itself belongs. (We exclude, of course, roots that can function as words without modification — **mi**, **tamen**, **kial**, **nur**, **morgaŭ**, and so on.) Since our English instincts mislead us only rarely, the point is ignored by most textbooks, but it emerges as a problem in the case of the distinction between transitive and intransitive verb roots, which is why it is included here.

Starigu la infanaĉon en la angulo.  
= Stand the brat in the corner.

The basic device for turning a transitive verb root into an intransitive verb is the suffix -iĝ-.

Ŝi movis la meblojn post la murdo.  
= She moved the furniture after the murder.

Ŝi moviĝis post sia morto!  
= She moved after her death!

Li devos ŝvabri la plankon.  
= He'll have to mop the floor.

Tiu ĉi planko facile ŝvabriĝas.  
= This floor mops easily.

\*-Like other languages that form new words out of old ones, certain compounds come to have a life of their own and are not precisely the sum of their parts. For example, **starigi** continues to mean “make stand,” but is often used metaphorically to mean “found” or “establish,” much as we use “to set up” in English. **Ŝi starigis la infanon.** = “She stood the child up.” ;**Ŝi starigis fonduson.** = “She established a fund.”

### 12.4.1. Common Transitive Verbs

Both -ig- and -iĝ- do other jobs too. In this section we will examine these two suffixes in more detail, but first here are some of the verbs that give us English speakers most problems.

All of the words in this list are transitive. The translations in parentheses try to stress their transitivity as clearly as possible. Use -iĝ- to make them intransitive.\*

balanci = to swing, to rock (= to manipulate back and forth)

bani = to bathe (= to dump someone into water and scrub)

bukli = to curl (= to cause something to wind in circles)

dolori = to hurt (= for a body part to pain someone)

etendi = to extend (= to pull something out)

fendi = to split (= to smash something in two)

\*-Arguably it is not Esperanto grammar as such that declares verbs to be transitive or intransitive, but rather this quality is part of the underlying concept represented by each verb. There are technical arguments for and against this position, but it suggests that one way to keep straight what is transitive and what is intransitive is to try to visualize the action rather than associating the Esperanto verb with a potentially confusing English translation. Unfortunately in the case of cognates, this takes an almost superhuman act of mental dissociation!

fermi = to close (= to seal something up)  
fini = to finish (= to come to the end of something)  
fleksi = to bend (= to squish into shape)  
klini = to tilt (= to install something at an angle)  
kolekti = to collect (= to gather something up)  
komenci = to begin (= to set something in motion)  
komuniki = to communicate (= to inform somebody about)  
movi = to move (= to transport something)  
naŭzi = to nauseate (= to make sick)  
paŝti = to put out to pasture, to herd  
profiti = to take advantage of, profit from  
renkonti = to meet, encounter (= to run into somebody)  
renversi = to knock something down, to turn something over  
rompi = to break (= to knock something to bits)  
ruli = to roll (= to push something along on wheels)  
skui = to shake (= to yank something back and forth)  
streĉi = to stretch (= to pull something longer), to wind (a watch)  
sufoki = to suffocate (= to cut off air to somebody)  
svingi = to swing (= to hurl something at the end of a rope)  
ŝanĝi = to change (= to make something different)  
ŝiri = to tear (= to separate something by pulling)  
ŝuti = to pour (= to dump [a non-liquid] from a container)  
tedi = to bore (Nobody bores himself!)  
treni = to drag (= to tow something along behind)  
turni = to turn (= to reposition something)  
veki = to awaken (= to rouse somebody)  
vendi = to sell (= to give something in exchange for money)  
venĝi = to get even for something  
verŝi = to pour (= to dump [a liquid] from a container)  
vindi = to bandage

Transitive verbs, such as those in this list, require direct objects. If no direct object is mentioned, the listener either senses that the sentence is incomplete, or mentally supplies his own direct object.

Mi venĝos lin! Mi ĵuras, ke mi venĝegos!  
= I'll avenge him! I swear I'll avenge [him]!

Ŝi vere povas tedi!  
= She really can bore [people].

But by adding **-iĝ-** we can make intransitive verbs that do not require direct objects:

Ŝi facile tediĝas.

= She gets bored easily.

Vane li penis ŝin veki.

= Vainly he tried to awaken her.

Mi vekiga nur tre malfacile.

= I wake up only with great difficulty.

Ne rompu la ampolon!

= Don't break the light bulb.

Mi ne rompis la ampolon; ĝi mem rompiĝis.

= I didn't break the light bulb; it broke by itself.

### 12.4.2. Common Intransitive Verbs

All of the words in this list are intransitive. The looser translations in parentheses try to stress their intransitivity as clearly as possible. Use **-iĝ-** to make them transitive.

boli = to boil (= to boil & bubble)

bruli = to burn (= to produce flames, to snap & crackle in the flames)

ĉesi = to come to a stop

daŭri = to last, to endure \*

degeli = to thaw, to melt (= to become liquid)

droni = to drown (= to die by trying to breathe under water)

eksplodi = to explode (= fly into bits)

grimpi = to climb upward, scramble upward

halti = come to a stop

kreski = to grow (= get bigger)

krevi = to burst (= come apart)

odori = to smell (= produce an odor)

pendi = to hang (= to be dangling by one's toes, handle, or whatever)

\*-The verb **daŭri** should be avoided for almost all translations of the English "continue," regardless of what your dictionary says. A sentence like "The professor continued" is construed in Esperanto as requiring a transitive verb: "The professor continued [his lecture]," "The professor continued [speaking]," or something of the kind. Accordingly the colloquial sentence would be **La profesoro daŭrigis**. To say **La profesoro daŭris** means that he lasted to the end of his lecture, not that he continued his lecture.

sidi = to sit (= to be sitting)  
stari = to stand (= to be standing)  
ŝpruci = squirt out (= gush out)  
ŝrumpi = to shrink (= grow smaller)  
ŝveli = swell (= grow bigger)  
velki = to wilt (= grow weak and droop)

Intransitive verbs, such as those in this list, do not take direct objects.  
But by adding **-ig-** we can make transitive verbs that do take direct objects:

La donaco pendis de la kristnaska arbo.  
= The gift was hanging from the Christmas tree.

Ŝi pendigis la donacon sur la kristnaskan arbon.  
= She hung the gift on the Christmas tree.

Ni preskaŭ krevis pro ridado.  
= We almost burst laughing.

La katido preskaŭ krevigis nin pro ridado.  
= The kitten almost made us burst laughing.

### 12.4.3. Verbs That Are Both Transitive & Intransitive

A few verbs are used both transitively and intransitively. Here are all the ones I have ever heard of:

**afekti** = (1) to pretend to have; (2) to put on airs, strike poses

Mi nur afektis intereson.  
= I only pretended to have any interest.

Ni afektis antaŭ la spegulo.  
= We used to strut before the mirror.

**bati** = to beat

Li batis la hundon ĉar li ne kuraĝis bati la policiston.  
= He beat the dog because he didn't dare beat the policeman.

Ŝia koro batis pli rapide kiam ajn ŝi aŭdis lian voĉon.  
= Her heart beat faster whenever she heard his voice.



**blovi** = to blow>/dd>

Daĉjo, ne blovu vian supon! = Davey, don't blow on your soup!

La vento blovu la ŝipon rapide hejmen.  
= May the wind blow the ship rapidly home.

Blovu, ventaĉ'! Cin ne timas mi. = Blow, terrible wind. I fear thee not!

**cedi** = to give up>/dd>

Neniam mi cedos mian tronon al li! = Never shall I cede my throne to him!

Hakilo estas tranĉa, sed la branĉo ne cedas.<sup>z</sup>  
= The ax is sharp, but the branch does not give way.

**fumi** = to smoke

Ŝi fumis kiel fajro kiam ajn li fumis cigaredon.  
= She smoked like a fire whenever he smoked a cigarette.

**ludi** = to play

Ĉu vi ludas violonon?<sup>z</sup>  
= Do you play the violin?

Li ludis la reĝon en la teatraĵo ... aĉe.  
= He played the king in the play ... badly.

Sur la strato ludis amaso da infanoj.<sup>z</sup>  
= A bunch of children were playing in the street.

**pasi** = to pass

Pasis dek jaroj.  
= Ten years went by.

Ŝi pas(ig)is tutan jaron en Kuvajto.  
= She spent an entire year in Kuwait.

Ni ankoraŭ ne pasis la kastelon.  
= We haven't passed the castle yet.

Li ekamas ĉiun belulinon kiu pasas.

= He falls in love with every beautiful woman who passes.

#### 12.4.4. Using -ig- and -iĝ- to Transform Verbs

One way to think about **-ig-** and **-iĝ-** in connection with verbs is to think of **-ig-** as adding an object to the clause and **-iĝ-** as subtracting one (unless there is none to subtract).\*

\*-I am indebted to Claude Gacond of the Kultura Centro Esperantista in La Chaux-de-Fonds for pointing out this unusual but compelling analysis.

##### Transitive Verbs:

##### Transitive Verb (Requires Direct Object)

**manĝi** = eat

Lia fratineto manĝis la insekton. = His little sister ate the bug.

##### Transitive Verb + -ig- (Adds Another object)

**manĝigi** = feed

La bubo manĝigis la fratineton per la insekto.  
= The brat fed his little sister the bug.

##### Transitive Verb + -iĝ- (Subtracts an object)

**manĝiĝi** = be eaten

La insekto manĝiĝis. = The bug got eaten.

##### Intransitive Verbs:

##### Intransitive Verb (Requires No Direct Object)

**sidi** = sit

Mi sidos tie. = I'll be sitting over there.

##### Intransitive Verb + -ig- (Adds an object)

**sidigi** = seat

Mi sidigos la gaston tie. = I'll seat the guest over there.

##### Intransitive Verb + iĝ (Comparable to ek-)

**sidiĝi** = be seated, sit down

Mi sidiĝos tie. (Mi eksidos tie.) = I'll sit down over there.

### 12.4.5. -ig- with Two Objects

When **-ig-** is added to a verb that is already transitive, the result is to add the idea of causing someone to perform the action of the verb. (In English this is usually expressed with the verb “make” or “have.”)

Li aĉetis domon. = He bought a house.

Ŝi aĉetigis al li domon. = She made him buy a house.

Ŝi aĉetigis al li jogurton de verda teo por ŝi.  
= She had him buy her green tea yogurt.

In English we use two verbs in such sentences, and we have two objects:

She	made him	buy a house.
subject	verb-object	verb-object

“Him” is the object of the first verb (“made”) and “house” is the object of the second (“buy”). Since in Esperanto there is only one verb (**aĉetigis**), the two objects are usually handled by leaving one of them in the accusative (with **-n**) and attaching the other one by means of the preposition **al** (for people) or **per** (for objects):

Ŝi aĉetigis lin. = She made him buy [something].

Ŝi aĉetigis la domon. = She had the house bought [by someone].

Ŝi aĉetigis al li la domon. = She made him buy the house.

Ŝi aĉetigis lin per la domo. = She made him buy the house.

Lia fratineto manĝis la insekton. = His little sister ate the bug.

La bubo manĝigis la insekton al la fratineto.  
= The brat made his little sister eat the bug.  
OR The brat fed the bug to his little sister.

La bubo manĝigis la fratineton per la insekto.  
= The brat fed his little sister [with] the bug.

La bubo manĝigis la insekton. = The brat had the bug eaten.

La bubo manĝigis la fratineton. = The brat fed his little sister.

It is the speaker's choice which of the two objects will be attached by the preposition and which by the accusative case. When one object is a person and the other a thing, it is more usual for the *person* to be attached by **al** and the *thing* by the accusative.

\*-Similar causative structures in other languages pose similar problems, and different conventions govern them. In Hungarian, for example, the interpretations with asterisks in the following examples are impossible, although in Esperanto they are theoretically possible.

When both objects are people, **per** is usually impossible, since it refers to instruments, and the sentence with **-ig-** becomes ambiguous:\*

Ŝi amigis al li la infanon.  
= She made him love the child.  
OR She made the child love him.\*

Ŝi amigis lin al la infano.  
= She made the child love him.  
OR She made him love the child.\*

In such cases, it is perfectly ordinary (but not very elegant) to separate the **-ig-** and make it into a separate verb, just as we do in English:

Ŝi igis lin ami la infanon. = She made him love the child.  
Ŝi igis la infanon ami lin. = She made the child love him.

All of this may seem pedantic and trivial, but double objects are found after **-ig-** quite routinely, and it is easiest to remember that **al** and **per** are the best way to deal with them.

#### 12.4.5.1. Examples of **-ig-** and **-iĝ-** With Transitive Verbs

Ili fandis la orajn trezorojn.  
= They melted down the gold treasures.

En printempo la neĝo fandiĝas, t.e., akviĝas.  
= In spring the snow melts, i.e., turns into water.

Some occurrences of **-iĝ-** are best translated by a passive verb in English:\*

La libro vaste vendiĝas.

= The book is widely sold.

Li naskiĝis en 1984.

= He was born in 1984.

La argumento baziĝas sur faktoj.

= The argument is based on facts.

\*-It is arguable that **-iĝ-** when used with transitive verb roots constitutes an Esperanto equivalent of the ancient Greek “middle voice,” but I am not sure that that insight is very helpful except to ancient Greeks.

There is, of course, a “true” passive form in Esperanto made with a participle. It is used especially when we want to indicate an agent. (See the section on participles [Section 12.3].)

La libro estas vendata de maljunulo.

= The book is being sold by an old man.

#### 12.4.5.2. Examples of **-ig-** and **-iĝ-** With Intransitive Verbs

Ĉu la libroj ankoraŭ ne venis el Berlino?

= Haven't the books arrived yet from Berlin?

Li venigis librojn el Berlino.

= He had books sent from Berlin. (Literally: He caused books to come from Berlin.)

Staras vazo sur la piano.

= A vase is standing on the piano.

Starigu la vazon sur la pianon.

= Set the vase over on the piano.

#### 12.4.6. Verbs Made From Nouns and Adjectives With **-ig-** and **-iĝ-**

A root is not really a noun or adjective or verb until it ends in an **-o** or **-a** or one of the verbal endings. To make a noun or an adjective into a verb, it follows that one simply changes the **-o** or the **-a** to a verbal ending.

Is the result a transitive or an intransitive verb? Unfortunately there is no way to tell. It very much depends upon the particular case and the traditions that have grown up around it. **Ĵaluza**, for example, is essentially an adjective. Making it a verb, Zamenhof himself wrote:

Ĉu vi ĵaluzas pri mi?<sup>z</sup> = Are you jealous of me?

Li ĵaluzos sian edzinon.<sup>z</sup> = He will be jealous of his wife.

In the first example the verb is intransitive and the complement is attached with a preposition (**pri**), while in the second the verb seems to be transitive and takes a direct object. Or perhaps in the second case it is not a transitive verb, but rather **sian edzinon** is used to replace **je sia edzino**. How can we know whether a word like **ĵaluza** is going to become a transitive or an intransitive verb? This illustrates a problem that has attracted increasing interest among Esperanto-speaking grammarians in recent years.

The answer seems to lie in the inherent “affinity” that a root has for one or another part of speech, its “inherent grammaticality.” Usually, in the absence of traditional conventions about it, a noun root taking verbal endings means “to be an X” or “to use an X,” and an adjective root taking verbal endings means “to be X.” When in doubt one must usually look it up. Most of the time, though, making a noun or adjective root into a verb involves **-ig-** or **-iĝ-**, and that clarifies everything, as we shall now see.

#### 12.4.7. Nouns and Adjectives With -ig-

The suffix **-ig-**, when used with non-verbal roots usually means “to make [something] [adjective]”:

blua = blue    bluigi = to make [something] blue  
reĝo = king    reĝigi = to make [someone] king  
feliĉa = happy    feliĉigi = to make [someone] happy

Elena penis trankviligi lin.  
= Elena tried to calm him down.

Printempo akvigis la neĝon kaj rivelis la kadavron.  
= Spring turned the snow to water and revealed the corpse.

Mi ne precize “edziĝis”; ŝi edzigis min!  
= I didn’t exactly get married; she married me! (Literally: I didn’t exactly just become a husband; she made me a husband!)

#### 12.4.8. Nouns and Adjectives With -iĝ-

The suffix **-iĝ-**, when used with non-verbal roots usually means “to

become [adjective]”:

blua = blue    bluiĝi = to turn blue  
reĝo = king    reĝiĝi = to become king  
feliĉa = happy    feliĉiĝi = to become happy

Kiam ŝi ruĝiĝis li paliĝis.  
= When she blushed, he turned pale.

Li ekesperantistiĝis en 1989.  
= He first became an Esperantist in 1989.

La argumento baziĝas sur la faktoj.  
= The reasoning is based on the facts.

## 12.4.9. Summary of -ig- and -iĝ- With Different Kinds of Roots

### 12.4.9.1. Adjectival Roots (bela = beautiful)

**X-as usually means “is X”\***

Ŝi belas. = She is beautiful.

\*-See the subsection on “Adjectives as Stative Verbs” in the section on adjectives (Section 4.3.1.2).

**X-iĝas means “gets X, becomes X”**

Ŝi beliĝas. = She is becoming beautiful.

**X-igas means “makes \_\_\_\_ X”**

Kolero beligas ŝin. = Anger makes her beautiful.

### 12.4.9.2. Noun Roots (patro = father)

**X-as usually means “is an X”\* but may mean “uses an X [on]”**

Li patras. = He is a father. but:  
broso = a brush, hence:  
brosi = to brush [something]

\*-This usage is considered substandard by many Esperantists.

**X-iĝas means “gets X, becomes an X”**

Li patriĝas. = He is becoming a father.

**X-igas means “makes \_\_\_\_ an X”**

Ŝi patrigis lin. = She made him a father.

### 12.4.9.3. Transitive Verb Roots (ami = to love)

**X-as means “X-s something”**

Li amas ŝin. = He loves her.

**X-iĝas means “X-s oneself,” “becomes X-ed,” “is X-ed”**

Li amiĝas. = He is loved.

**X-igas means “makes \_\_\_\_ X \_\_\_\_”**

Li amigas ŝin al la hundo.

= He is making the dog love her/her love the dog.

### 12.4.9.4. Intransitive Verb Roots (sidi = to sit)

**X-as means “X-s”**

Ŝi sidas sur la trono.

= She sits upon the throne.

**X-iĝas means “begins to X,” “becomes X-ed”**

Ŝi sidiĝis sur la trono.

= She sat down on the throne.

**X-igas means “makes \_\_\_\_ X”**

Ŝi sidigis la gastojn ĉirkaŭ la tablegon.

= She seated the guests around the great table.

### 12.4.10. Igi and Iĝi As Independent Verbs

Although, as we noted, both **-ig-** and **-iĝ-** can be used as independent verbs (**igi** = “cause” and **iĝi** = “become”), **iĝi** is not used as much as the longer compound **fariĝi** = “to become.” Logic will be on your side if you use **iĝi**, but you will be speaking more colloquial Esperanto if you use **fariĝi**.

Ŝi fariĝis reĝino de la majo. = She became Queen of the May.

When **igi** means not just “to make” but “to force,” the more common verb is **devigi**.

Oni nomumis lin reĝo de la majo.

= They named him King of the May.

Oni igis lin reĝo de la majo.

<p>*-<b>Deviga laboro</b> = “compulsory work” stresses that one must (<b>devas</b>) do the work. In contrast, <b>farenda laboro</b> = “work which</p>
---



= They made him King of the May.

Oni faris lin reĝo de la majo.

= They made him King of the May.

Oni devigis lin esti reĝo de la majo.

= They made him be King of the May.

Ŝi devigis lin edzinigi ŝin.

She made him marry her.

Tio estas deviga laboro.

= That is compulsory work. (Literally: That is work which one is forced to do.\*)

must be done,” stresses that the work must get done ( <b>-end-</b> ), whoever does it.
--

---

## 13. Affixes (Prefixes & Suffixes)

Zamenhof sought to reduce the word-learning burden of Esperanto by allowing individual roots to be modified by a small set of affixes (prefixes and suffixes). This would create additional vocabulary out of familiar elements. This section includes a list of the “official” affixes, examples of their use, and a few comments about them.

### 13.1. Prefixes

#### **bo-**

The prefix **-bo-** is attached to a kinship term to indicate an in-law relationship:

patrino = mother    bopatrino = mother-in-law

frato = brother    bofrato = brother-in-law

#### **dis-**

The prefix **dis-** suggests dispersion in all directions.

Ŝi disrompis la vazon. = She smashed the vase to bits.

Li disdonos prospektojn. = He'll be giving out tracts.

Ŝi aŭskultas sekretajn radiodissendojn.  
= She listens to secret radio broadcasts.

Li dissendadas fileterojn.  
= He keeps sending dirty letters around.

Li vaste disbabilis pri la sekreto.  
= He yammered to everyone about the secret.

### **ek-**

The prefix **ek-** emphasizes the onset of the action of the verb, in contrast to its continuation or completion:

Ŝi nur hodiaŭ eksciis, ke ŝi estas graveda.  
= She found out only today that she is pregnant.

La terura monstro ekvidis la glavon de Daĉjeto kaj ekforkuris.  
= The terrible monster took one look at Little Davey's sword and fled.

When it is attached to intransitive verbs, **ek-** has an effect very similar to attaching the suffix **-iĝ-**.

Ŝi eksidis ĉe la tablo, tute ne invitite.  
= She sat down at the table completely uninvited.

Ŝi sidiĝis ĉe la tablo, tute ne invitite.  
= She sat down at the table completely uninvited.

For more on this, see the sections on **-ig-** and **-iĝ-** in this list and in Part I. Contrast the suffix **-ad-**.

The expression **ek al** has become colloquial to mean roughly "let's get started":

Ek al labor'!  
= Let's get to work!

Ek al Berlino!  
= On to Berlin!

### **eks-**

The prefix **eks-** (cognate with English *ex-*) means former:

eksinstruisto = former teacher    eksprezidanto = ex-president

## **fi-**

The prefix **fi-** is disparaging and indicates that the root refers to something of low moral quality.

virino = woman

fivirino = whore

libro = book

filibro = dirty book

penso = thought

fipenso = unclean thought

kanto = song

fikanto = smutty song, risqué ditty

**Caution:** Some (most) Esperantists distinguish between **-aĉ-**, as referring to something that is of poor quality or broken down, and **fi-**, designating something immoral. However a few speakers consider these two affixes to differentiate what is objectively bad (**-aĉ-**) from what is subjectively worthless (**fi-**). Speakers of the second kind sometimes use **fi-** as a polite way to speak of their own productions or efforts:

Mi ĝojas, ke miaj fikantoj plaĉas al vi.

= I am happy that my humble songs please you.

Such a usage is a jarring error and should be avoided, but do not be alarmed if you occasionally hear **fi-** used this way.

## **ge-**

The prefix **ge-** indicates that both females and males are explicitly included:

gesinjoroj = ladies and gentlemen

gepatroj = parents

geamikoj = friends of both sexes

geonkloj = aunt(s) & uncle(s)

geedzoj = husband(s) & wife/wives

gefratoj = siblings

This prefix is commonly omitted if there is no possibility of confusion and if there is no particular desire to stress that both sexes are explicitly included in the word. Talking about a field of sheep as **geŝafoj** rather than simply **ŝafoj** is just as silly as it seems (or it implies an unusual interest in the sex of

sheep). The **ge-** is NOT omitted for kinship terms or with the word **gesinjoroj**. See **-in-**.

Since **ge-** specifically includes both sexes, it is traditionally used only with plural nouns. However in recent years it has become common (although not universally well regarded!) to use it with a singular noun to stress that sex is irrelevant. This usually occurs with kinship terms, since these are words in which the unmarked form is unambiguously male:

Vi bezonos noton de via gepatro pri tio.  
= You'll need a note from your parent about that.

Vi rajtas inviti nur unu gefraton al la festeto.  
= You may invite only one sibling to the little party.

Some people jokingly extend the usage of **ge-** in various ways, but such extensions are not yet standard and should be regarded as experimental, humorous, and what have you. Here are a few examples of such non-standard extensions:

gedormi = to sleep together (= kundormi)  
gesole = alone with each other (of a couple) (= solaj)  
geumi = to make sex (= amori)  
geviro = a gay man (= gejo)

## **mal-**

The prefix **mal-** causes the root to reverse its meaning:\*

\*-Caution for students of Romance languages:

**Mal** *merely* reverses the meaning of the root. In and of itself it does not mean or imply "bad" in any way. **La malo** means "the opposite." It does *not* mean "badness"!

bona = good

malbona = bad

laŭta = loud

mallaŭta = soft

kosta = expensive

malkosta = cheap, inexpensive

avantaĝo = advantage

malavantaĝo = disadvantage

ami = love

malami = hate

amiko = friend

malamiko = enemy

bone = well

malbone = badly

Needless to say, this prefix can be used only with roots that are able to have a relatively unambiguous opposite. The word **ananaso** means “pineapple,” but **malananaso** would be meaningless!

In compounds, **mal-** reverses the meaning only of whatever is between it and the first suffix. Suffixes therefore refer to the reversed unit, including the **mal-**:

granda = large	malgrand-a = small
grandega = huge	malgrand-ega = tiny
	NOT malgrandeg-a = “anti-huge”
juna = young	maljun-a = old
junulo = a youth	maljun-ulino = old woman
	NOT maljunulin-o = “anti-maid”
bela = beautiful	malbel-a = ugly
beleta = pretty	malbel-eta = plain
	NOT malbelet-a = “anti-plain”
bona = good	malbon-a = bad
bonulo = virtuous person	malbon-ulo = bad person
	NOT malbonul-o = “anti-saint”

The **mal-** prefix was devised to reduce the number of roots and decrease the learning burden for Esperanto. Thus if one knew the word **bona**, one automatically could form the word **malbona**. From the beginning, however, some speakers have felt uncomfortable with some such compounds, and words came into general use to replace some **mal-** words. Many of these have entered the language (sometimes without driving out the easily recreated **mal-** words). Zamenhof himself used some of the early “replacements.” In other cases, the **mal-** words have continued to receive preference, and proposed replacements have remained less common or even unused. Here is a list of some of these doublets. The boldface shows the words common enough to bother about, in my opinion. An asterisk (\*) indicates that the “replacement” is much more narrow in sense than the **mal-** word it partially replaces. A cross (†) shows that the word never caught on.

absolvi = malkondamni† = absolve

absurda = malracia = irrational, absurd

aflikti = malĝojigi = sadden, afflict

amara = maldolĉa = bitter

aperti† = malfermi = open

aspra\* = malglata = rough-surfaced

aŭdaca = maltima = audacious

basa\* = malalta = bass, low (voice)

brevi = mallonga = brief

cis = maltrans = up to but not across

despero = malespero = despair

disipi† = malŝpari = waste

dista = malproksima = far = distant

dura = malmola = hard (not soft)

efemera = maldaŭra = temporary, fleeting

eta = malgranda = small

falsa = malvera = false

febla\* = malforta = feeble, weak

fiaski = malsukcesi = miscarry, fail

fiktiva = malreala = fictional

fini = malkomenci† = finish

forgesi = malmemori† = forget

frida = malvarma = cold

hati = malami = hate

humida = malseka = damp, wet

hungri† = malsati = to be hungry

infre = malsupre = below

kurta = mallonga = brief, short

kvereli = malpaci† = quarrel, feud

lanta = malrapida = slow

lasciva = malĉasta = lascivious

liva [Note] = maldekstra = left (side)

lontana = malproksima = distant

loza = malfirma = malstreĉa = loose-fitting; loose-packed

magra\* = malgrasa = thin (of people, meat)

manki = malesti = be missing

mava† = malbona = bad

ment† = malpli = less

milda = malsovaĝa = mild

minca† = maldika = slim

morgaŭ = malhieraŭ† = tomorrow

moroza\* = malafabla = morose

morto = malvivo† = death

neglekti = malzorgi = neglect

noci = malutili = damage, inhibit

\*--It is unclear whether **liva** = “left” is coming into general use, although we may hope so. Especially in international transportation it would avoid confusion between **dekstra** and **maldekstra**, which sound too similar when spoken in noisy environments (for example when road instructions are given in cars)."

obskura = malluma = dark

obskura = malfama = unknown,  
obscure

obstaklo = malhelpaĵo = barrier,  
obstacle

olda = maljuna = old [Note]

olda = malfreŝa = stale

orgojlo = malhumilo = pride, egocentrism

ovri = malfermi = to open

pasiva = malaktiva† = passive

perversa = malvirta = perverse, perverted

pigra = maldiligenta = lazy

pisi = maltrinki = urini = to urinate

pita† = malgranda = little

plumpa = malgracia = crude, clumsy

poka† = malmulta = little, few

poltrona = malkuraĝa = cowardly  
[Note]

povra = malriĉa = poor (without  
money)

povra = kompatinda = poor (pathetic)

rara = malofta = rare

skoldi\* = mallaŭdi = scold

sob = malsupren = suben = downward

\*-A few speakers seem to distinguish between being physically old (**maljuna**) and being old in one's manner or point of view (**olda**). This would fit with the emergence of the term **olduloj** as a faintly derogatory term for older people who resist change, as seen from the perspective of the **junuloj**. However, this distinction between **olda** and **maljuna** is only emergent and is not consistently observed.

\*-This provides an excuse for **poltroni** = "to chicken out"!



softa† [Note] = mallaŭta = soft (not loud)

sombra = malhela = dark

sordida = malpura = dirty

sort† = supren = upward

streta† = mallarĝa = narrow

striкта = malvasta = tight, narrow

stulta = malinteligenta = stupid

stulta = malsprita = stupid, dull

stupida† = malsaĝega = foolish

svaga = malpreciza = vague

svelta = maldika = slim, slender

ŝrumpi = malŝveli = shrink

tarda = malfrua = late

trista = malgaja = sad

turpa = malbela = ugly

vaka\* = malplena = empty

vanui† = malaperi = to vanish

vigili\*† = maldormi = remain awake; keep watch

\*-The element **soft-** seems to be getting a new (and different!) lease on life in the computer Anglicism **softvaro** = “software,” sometimes simply called **softo**.

The word **ne** = “no, not” is sometimes used as a prefix to negate the idea of the root without reversing it.

amiko = friend neamiko = non-friend malamiko = enem

This provides a way of negating roots that do not have clear opposites:

blua = blue neblua = “non-blue” malblua (meaningless)

Formations with **ne-** and **mal-** do not necessarily have exact equivalents in English, partly because English tends to allow only one kind of negating prefix with any root:

diskreta = discreet    nediskreta = not discreet    maldiskreta = indiscreet  
kuraĝa = brave    nekuraĝa = not very brave    malkuraĝa = timorous  
taŭga = appropriate    netaŭga = not appropriate    maltaŭga = inappropriate  
sincera = sincere    nesincera = insincere    malsincera = hypocritical  
amika = friendly    neamika = unfriendly    malamika = hostile

### **mis-**

The prefix **mis-** suggests the malfunction of whatever is indicated by the root:

miskompreni = to misunderstand  
misparoli = to say something wrong  
misami = to love inappropriately

### **pra-**

The prefix **pra-** refers to antiquity and primordiality:

prahistorio = prehistory  
prapatroj = ancestors  
prahomoj = protohuman hominids

### **re-**

The prefix **re-** shows (1) repetition or (2) restoration to a previous state.

Ni vizitis ŝin en la malliberejo kaj revizitis ŝin post ŝia liberiĝo.  
= We visited her in jail and visited her again after she got out.

Foje Daĉjeto sukcesis mem laĉi la ŝuojn. Refoje li penis malsukcese.  
= Once little Davey succeeded in tying his shoes himself. He tried again without success.

Ne laŭdu lian kanton ĉar li eble rekantos ĝin!  
= Don't praise his song or he may sing it again!

Ŝi kantis La Himnon kaj ĝin rekantis kaj rerekantis kaj ree rerekantis ĝis forfuĝis ĉiuj krokodiloj.

= She sang The Anthem and sang it again and again and yet again until all the non-Esperantists had fled.

Diego neniam redonis mian libron.

= Diego never gave back my book.

Ili penis resaniĝi per oleo de serpento.

= They tried to get well again using snake oil.

Esperanto min rejunigis kaj nun mi varbas senĉese.

= Esperanto rejuvenated me and now I recruit people non-stop.

### 13.2. Suffixes

#### -aĉ-

The suffix -aĉ- is disparaging and indicates that something is of poor quality:

kabano = shack, cabin    kabanaĉo = miserable shanty, hut

kuracisto = doctor                      kuracistaĉo = quack

vesto = clothing              vestaĉo = rags worn as clothing

viro = man                      viraĉo = no-good-nik

ĉarma = cute, charming              ĉarmaĉa = cutesy

See usage note under **fi-**.

#### -ad-

The suffix -ad- stresses the duration of an action. The prefix ek- stresses its beginning:

dormi = to sleep    ekdormi = to fall asleep    dormadi = to be sleeping

manĝi = to eat    ekmanĝi = to start eating    manĝadi = to keep eating

Li ekdormadis. = He fell into a long slumber.

Sometimes a root with the ending -o names an action. In that case, the addition of **-ad-** emphasizes that the action is continuous:

Ŝi parolis. = She talked

parolo = talking, speaking

Ŝi paroladis. = She talked on and on.

parolado = the act of talking on and on

Li kombis al si la harojn. = He combed his hair.

kombo = a stroke with a comb

Li kombadis al si la harojn. = He kept combing his hair.

kombado = the act of continuous combing

kombilo = a comb

At other times a root with the ending **-o** names a non-action, such as an instrument, or the result of an action. In that case, the addition of **-ad-** is necessary to show that the action itself, not the instrument or result, is intended.

Ŝi batis lin. = She hit him.

bato = a blow

Ŝi batadis lin. = She gave him a pummeling.

batado = the act of beating

Li kantis. = He sang.

kanto = a song

Li kantadis. = He sang on and on.

kantado = the act of singing

Mi martelis. = I hammered.

martelo = a hammer

Mi marteladis. = I hammered on and on.

martelado = the act of hammering

Li brosis al si la harojn. = He brushed his hair.

broso = a brush

Li brosadis al si la harojn. = He kept brushing his hair.

brozado = the act of brushing.

Excessive use of **-ad-** (like any other excess) is clumsy style, but if you are not sure whether the stem is basically verbal or not —does **desegno** mean “a drawing” or “the act of drawing”?— then the **-ad-** ensures that you have an action form.\*

\*-In the case of **desegn-**, the root is a verb, and the **-o** ending ought to name the action, but usage has evolved to include **desegno** for the design itself. Accordingly the **-ad-** is necessary if you want to be clear about “designing” and **-aĵ-** is necessary to be clear about “a design.” Most roots take one or the other, but don't need both.

(For more on komb- and bros-, see Part II.)

**-aĵ-**

The suffix **-aî-** normally signifies a concrete object or product associated with the root, an external manifestation of it, or a behavioral manifestation of it. It is also used to derive the term for a kind of meat from the name of the animal from which it comes.

komponi = to compose	komponaîo = a composition
konstrui = to construct	konstruaîo = building
manîgi = to eat	manîgaîo = food (manîgo = a meal)
trinki = to drink	trinkaîo = a drink
bela = beautiful	belaîo = trinket, ornament
îgentila = polite	îgentilaîo = a point of etiquette
nova = new	novaîo = news, item of news
amiko = friend	amikaîo = a friendly act; a symbol of friendship
infano = infant, child	infanaîo = a childish thing to do
glacio = ice	glaciaîo = ice cream
porko = hog	porkaîo = pork
bovo = cow, cattle	bovaîo = beef
fiîso = a fish	fiîsaîo = a piece of fish

### **-an-**

The suffix **-an-** refers to (1) a member of a group, (2) an inhabitant of a country or other place, or (3) a follower of a person, philosophy, or religion.\*

\*-In practice there is some overlap between **-an-** and **-ist-** in this third sense. A Christian is normally a **kristano**, but a Marxist is usually a **marksisto**, and a Buddhist is sometimes a **budhano** and sometimes a **budhisto**. The choice seems to be dictated in part by prior usage in European languages with similar suffixes (such as English). Similarly it is usual to speak of **kristanismo** = "Christianity" but of **marksismo** = "Marxism" and **budhismo** (*not budhanismo*) = "Buddhism." If you follow your English instincts your usage should be inconspicuous, but be prepared for different (perhaps more logical) usage from speakers with different instincts.

Kanado = Canada

kanadano = Canadian

Usono = United States	usonano = American
kurso = course	kursano = student in a course
Kristo = Christ	kristano = Christian
Budho = Buddha	budhano = Buddhist
klubo = club	klubano = club member
muzeo = museum	muzeano = museum member

Contrast **-an-** with **-ist-** and **-ul-**. Note that, in general (but not always) **-an-** is attached to noun roots, **-ist-** to verb roots, and **-ul-** to adjective or verb roots, but it is the sense that matters.

klubo = club	klubano = club member
bela = beautiful	belulo = handsome person
pentri = to paint	pentristo = painter

See also **-uj-**. For more on place names, see that part of the section on nouns.

#### **-ar-**

The suffix **-ar-** indicates a group of whatever is designated by the root:

haro = a hair	hararo = hair, a head of hair
ŝafo = sheep	ŝafaro = flock of sheep
estro = leader	estraro = the leadership, the board
profesoro = teacher	profesoraro = faculty
esperantisto = Esperantist	esperantistaro = the Esperantists

#### **-ĉj-** and **-nj-**

Nicknames are formed in Esperanto by means of **-ĉj-** for males and **-nj-** for females (plus the **-o** that signals a noun). These suffixes may be attached to any fragment of the whole name, so long as the result is reasonably pronounceable:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Nicknames</b>
-------------	------------------

Johano	Johaĉjo, Jonĉjo, Joĉjo
--------	------------------------

Barbara Barbanjo, Barnjo, Banjo

Miñaelo      Miñaçjo, Miçjo

Maria    Marinjo, Marnjo, Manjo

Manjo fine çesis sakri en Volapuko. = Maggie finally quit cursing in Volapük.

Daçjeto çiam faligas la saŭcon sur sian pantalonon. = Little Davey always dumps the gravy on his trousers.

Zamçjo, ni amas vin! = Zammy, we love you!

The forms **-çj-** and **-nj-** can also be used with other words, typically kinship terms:

patro = father

paçjo = daddy, papa

patrino = mother

panjo = mommy, mama

onklo = uncle

onçjo, oçjo = unk

onklino = aunt

onjo = auntie

bopatrino = mother-in-law    bopanjo = mommy-in-law

### **-ebl-**

The suffix **-ebl-** indicates that the root, normally a transitive verb, can be applied; that is, it shows the possibility of a thing happening:

legi = to read

legebla = legible, readable

manĝi = to eat

manĝebla = edible

ĝui = to enjoy

ĝuebla = enjoyable

renovigi = to renovate    renovigebla = renewable

See also **-iv-** in the section on pseudo-affixes.

### **-ec-**

The suffix **-ec-** refers to an abstract quality, trait, attribute, or essence associated with the root:

bona = good    boneco = goodness

bela = beautiful    beleco = beauty  
amiko = friend    amikeco = friendship  
infano = child    infaneco = childhood

In cases where an adjectival root is used as a noun by adding **-o**, the noun is already abstract, so the **-ec-** is largely redundant and is sometimes omitted:

grand(ec)o = bigness, size  
sincer(ec)o = sincerity  
sprit(ec)o = wit  
modern(ec)o = modernity

There was a time when omitting the redundant **-ec-** was considered elegant in a spare kind of way. My impression is that it is today more common to include it.\*

When the root shows the material of which something is made, **-eca** refers to a similar but different material:

\*-Some speakers attempt to contrast the use of **-ec-** in such cases to refer to the “quality” of the root as against the absence of **-ec-** referring to its “abstraction.” The distinction has never made much sense to me, and so far I have never heard a sentence actually spoken in ordinary conversation where it made any difference. Most speakers seem to include the **-ec-** most of the time.

Mi ofte fumas argilan pipon. = I often smoke a clay pipe.  
La pudingo estis refoje argileca. = The pudding was clay-like again.  
Li portis silkecan ĉemizon. = He was wearing a silky shirt.  
Oni verŝis farbon sur ŝian peltecan mantelon. = They poured paint on her imitation fur coat.

### **-eg-**

The suffix **-eg-** is the opposite of **-et-** and increases the size or strength of the root:

domo = house	domego = mansion
urbo = city	urbego = metropolis
bona = good	bonega = excellent
plori = cry	ploregi = wail & caterwaul
ega = huge	ege = vastly



egiĝi = to grow huge

### **-em-**

The suffix **-em-** indicates a tendency toward what the root expresses:

labori = to work

laborema = industrious

ami = to love

amema = amorous

paroli = to speak

parolema = talkative, loquacious

emo = inclination

emi al = to incline towards

grandiĝi = to grow large      grandiĝema = inclined to get big  
(the way kittens grow into cats)

Li forgesas la ŝuojn denove! = He's forgetting his shoes again!

Li forgesemas la ŝuojn. = He tends to forget his shoes.

### **-end-**

The suffix **-end-** means “necessary” or “must”:

aranĝi = to arrange      aranĝenda = which must be arranged

vidi = to see

videnda = which must be seen

paroli = to speak

priparolenda = which must be discussed

La afero estas aranĝenda aŭ ni pereos.

= The matter must be taken care of or we shall perish.

La libro estas studenda por ĉiu komencanto.

= The book is to be studied by every beginner.

Note the contrast between the suffixes **-ind-** = “worth doing” and **-end-** = “needing doing”:

fari = to do

farinda = worth doing

farenda = to be done

manĝi = to eat

manĝinda = delicious

manĝenda = to be eaten

Tiuj pomoj estas manĝendaj. = Those apples need eating.

Mi nun scias, ke mia edzo ne estas aminda.

= Now I know that my husband is not worth loving.

Sed ĉar li estas via edzo, li estas amenda.  
= But since he is your husband he must be loved.

Feliĉe li estas amebla. = Fortunately, he's lovable.

### **-er-**

The suffix **-er-** indicates a single element of what is designated by the root. (Often the root refers to a mass of something not normally countable.)

pluvo = rain	pluvero = raindrop
mono = money	monero = coin
sablo = sand	sablero = grain of sand
fajro = fire	fajrero = spark
akvo = water	akvero = drop

### **-estr-**

The suffix **-estr-** means "chief of."

estri = to be in charge of  
estraro = officers, board of directors  
estrarano = officer, member of the board  
lernejestro = school principal

These terms tend to be used for clubs and associations, including Esperanto clubs. A government, however, is **registaro** from **regi** = "to govern."

### **-et-**

The suffix **-et-** diminishes the size or strength of the root. It is commonly also used as a separate word meaning small:

domo = house	dometo = cottage
urbo = city	urbeto = town
bela = beautiful	beleta = cute, pretty
iom = some	iomete = a little bit
infano = child	infaneto = little child

ete = somewhat, a little    etulo = a small person, child

etigi = to reduce

etiĝi = to become small

### **-ej-**

The suffix **-ej-** refers to a place, usually a room or building. For example, a **lernejo** is a place where one learns, hence a school.

oficejo = office

laborejo = place of work

kinejo = movie theater

aŭtomobilejo = garage

manĝejo = dining room

kuirejo = kitchen

studejo = study, den

porkejo = pig pen

### **-foj-**

The suffix **-foj-** is attached to numbers and corresponds to English “times”:

tri = three    trifoje = thrice, three times

Ni trifoje avertis Daĉjeton, sed ankoraŭ li turmentadis la katidon.

= We warned little Davey three times, but he still kept pestering the kitten.

Although most often used as a suffix, **foj-** is technically a regular root, and occurs as a noun or adverb. See **fojo** in the list of “Potentially Troublesome Words.”

### **-i-**

See **-uj-**.

### **-id-**

The suffix **-id-** indicates offspring. As an independent word, **ido** means offspring.\*

hundo = dog

hundo = puppy

kato = cat

katido = kitten

reĝo = king

reĝidino = princess

**\*-Historical note:** With a capital letter, **Ido** is the name of an early XXth-century language project derived from Esperanto. It attracted considerable interest before the First World War because of its claims to be “more rational” than Esperanto, but constant reforms to make it conform to ever-shifting ideas of rationality doomed it. There are still a handful of **Idists** to be

(= princino)

Frankenŝtajn' = Frankenŝtajnido =  
Frankenstein    Son of Frankenstein

found, but most seem to be Esperantists who have learned Ido out of interest in the history of Esperanto.
---

### **-ig-**

The suffix **-ig-** is discussed at length in the section on transitive and intransitive verbs. Note also that it carries the sense of causation:

laca = tired	lacigi = to weary, to tire out [someone]
rufa = red [of hair]	rufigi = to dye [hair] red
riĉa = rich	riĉigi = to enrich
edzino = wife	edzinigi = to make [someone] a wife
edzo = husband	edzigi = to make [someone] a husband
en mano = in a hand	enmanigi = to take [something] in hand
sen vesto = without clothes	senvestigi = to undress [someone]
sen kulpo = without guilt	senkulpigi = to clear [someone] of guilt
el = from	eligi = to cast [something, someone] out
kun = with	kunigi = to unite [something]
for = distant	forigi = to put [something] at a distance
tro = too	troigi = to exaggerate

Verbs formed with **-ig-** are transitive, i.e., they require a direct object, whether stated or implied.

dormi = to sleep	dormigi = to put [someone] to sleep
devi = must	devigi = to compel
halti = to stop	haltigi = to make [someone] stop
pendi = to hang down	pendigi = to hang [something] up

Most Esperanto verb roots are either transitive or intransitive, not both. Accordingly a common use of **-ig-** is to make an intransitive verb transitive:

bruli = to burn with crackling and popping and giving forth of smoke  
bruligi = to set fire to something

Kiam ŝi bruligis la paperon, ĝi brulis.  
= When she lit the paper, it burned.

When -ig- is added to verbal roots that are already transitive, the effect is to create a need for two direct objects:

Li skribis la leteron. = He wrote the letter.

Li skribigis ŝin. = He made her write (something).

Li skribigis la leteron. = He had the letter written (i.e., he made somebody write the letter).

Li skribigis al ŝi [= ŝin] la leteron. = He had her write the letter.

Li igis ŝin skribi la leteron. = He had her write the letter.

See also the section on Transitive and Intransitive Verbs for more details.

### **-iĝ-**

The suffix -iĝ- carries a sense of becoming.

laca = tired	laciĝi = to weary, to grow weary
rufa = red [of hair]	rufiĝi = to turn red [of hair]
riĉa = rich	riĉiĝi = to get rich
el lito = from bed	ellitiĝi = to get out of bed
en lito = in bed	enlitiĝi = to go to bed, get into bed
edzo = husband	edziĝi = to become a husband, get married
edzino = wife	edziniĝi = to become a wife, get married

Verbs formed with -iĝ- are intransitive, i.e., they may not take a direct object.

dormi = to sleep	dormiĝi = to fall asleep
sidi = to sit	sidiĝi = to sit down, to be seated
ŝanĝi = to change [something]	ŝanĝiĝi = to be changed, to change

Most Esperanto verbs root are either transitive or intransitive, not both.

Accordingly a common use of **-iĝ-** is to make a transitive verb intransitive:

komenci = to set [something] going

komenciĝi = to get going

Kiam li komencis la feston, ĝi vere komenciĝis.

= When he started the party, it really got going.

When **-iĝ-** is added to a verb that is already intransitive, the resultant verb stresses the fact that the action is just beginning, and is roughly equivalent to **-ek-**:

sidi = sit, be sitting    sidiĝi = eksidi = sit down, be seated

See also the section on Transitive and Intransitive Verbs for more details.

### **-il-**

The suffix **-il-** names an instrument used to perform the function indicated by a verbal root:

kombi = to comb              kombilo = a comb

skribi = to write    skribilo = a writing instrument

manĝi = to eat    manĝilo = an eating utensil

In most cases a term made with **-il-** is a rather generic term, and more specific words also exist (sometimes **-il-** forms derived from different verbs) by which one can be more precise:

manĝilo = eating utensil	forko = fork	kulero = spoon	tranĉilo = knife
skribilo = writing instrument	plumo = pen	krajono = pencil	feltmarkilo = felt marker

Note that **-il-** is not applied if the root is already the name of an instrument:

broso = a brush              brosi = to brush

martelo = a hammer    marteli = to hammer

(For more on komb- and bros-, see the section on “Potentially Troublesome Words.”)

### **-in-**

The suffix **-in-** means “female.”

In Esperanto a noun is ambiguously neuter/neutral or male unless clearly marked female. Thus an **instruisto** may be a teacher of either sex and refers to a male teacher only if context makes it clear that sex is relevant; **instruistino**, on the other hand, can only be a female teacher. If it is desirable to specify male sex more emphatically, the adjective **vira** or the prefix **vir-** may be used, but is comparatively rare.

\*-Usually the term **junul(in)o** is also treated as inherently showing sex, and one does not speak of a young woman as a **junulo**, but only as a **junulino**. The derived term **junularo**= “youth,” however, always includes both sexes.

A number of nouns are always regarded as sex-marked, and no neutral form exists. This includes all kinship terms, the word **vir(in)o**, and words used as polite titles **sinjor(in)o**, **fraŭl(in)o**.\*

patro = father      patrino = mother

sinjoro = Mr.      sinjorino = Mrs.

viro = male person    virino = woman

Never does **viro** refer to “man” in the sense of “mankind.” The generic words for human beings are **homo** and **persono**, neither of which normally takes **-in-** because both stress the irrelevance of sex. “Humanity” (or “mankind”) is normally **homaro**.

### **Special Note on Titles**

In Esperanto the words **sinjoro**, **sinjorino**, and **fraŭlino** (“Mr.,” “Mrs.,” and “Miss”) may be used without attached names, as in European languages generally.

Bonan tagon, sinjorino. = Good day, madam.

Dankon, fraŭlino. = Thank you, miss.

Although it is possible to equate these words to “sir,” “madam,” and “miss,” they occur in this usage far more frequently in Esperanto than their equivalents do in English.

The titles are also used by some speakers with personal names, a custom that is far more limited in English usage. Thus Anna Jones can be:

sinjorino = sinjorino Jones = sinjorino Anna

This differentiation is particularly common among Japanese Esperantists, since it corresponds with usage in Japanese. In that case **sinjorino Anna** is less formal than **sinjorino Jones**, but does not risk the excessive intimacy of **Anna** alone:

sinjorino > sinjorino Jones > sinjorino Anna > Anna > Anjo

formal

informal

Note, however, that not all speakers make the distinction. Prepare to be addressed in a variety of ways. Among Esperantists today, you will rarely make a faux pas if you reciprocate whatever usage is used on you.\*

See also **fraŭl(in)o** in Part II.

\*-It is best to try to follow the usage of the group you are with when addressing one of its members. Often more formal terms are used when addressing or sometimes when talking about an older person than when talking to or about a younger one. And some titles, like **doktoro**, are of course reserved to people who have received various degrees or occupy certain official positions.

### **-ind-**

The suffix **-ind-** means worthy of:

vidinda = worth seeing

aŭskultinda = worth listening to

indulo = a worthy person

ne dankinde = not worth thanks (= you're welcome)

Note the contrast between the suffixes **-ind-** and **-end-**:

fari = to do    farinda = worth doing    farenda = to be done

manĝi = to eat    manĝinda = delicious    manĝenda = to be eaten

Further examples can be found in the article on **-end-** earlier in this list.

### **-ing-**

See **-uj-**.



## **-ism-**

The suffix **-ism-** refers to a philosophy, ideology, or movement, just as its English equivalent does:

marksismo = Marxism  
dadaismo = Dadaism  
modernismo = modernism  
3kristanismo = Christianity  
internaciismo = internationalism

It can also refer to characteristic behaviors or phenomena, also exactly the way the English “-ism” does:

alkoholismo = alcoholism  
magnetismo = magnetism  
hipnotismo = hypnotism  
gigantismo = gigantism

Finally, it can refer to a linguistic or other stylistic feature (especially turns of phrase borrowed from various languages):\*

\*-This usage is criticized by purists as too discrepant from the other meanings of **-ism-**. But it is very common, and even purists understand it just fine, I notice.

anglismo = Anglicism  
francismo = Gallicism  
ĉinismo = Sinicism  
latinismo = Latinism  
idiotismo\* = idiom

## **-ist-**

The suffix **-ist-** refers (1) to a person professionally, expertly, or continually occupied with something, or (2) to an adherent of a particular ideology:

laboristo = worker  
instruisto = teacher  
oficisto = office holder/worker  
ĝardenisto = gardener  
marksisto = Marxist

\*-**Idiotismo** = “idiom” is in fact a borrowing from the French. However, its *seemingly* regular derivation from **idioto** = “idiot” nicely reflects the view held by most Esperanto speakers about languages full of idioms!

budhisto = Buddhist  
biciklisto = cyclist  
esperantisto = Esperantist

When the person is merely doing something rather than being involved in it as an occupation or as a point of belief, it is more common to use a participle:

pentristo = a painter    pentranto = person who is painting

kantisto = a singer    kantanto = person who is singing

Bedaŭrinde la nehaltigebla kantanto ne estis kantisto kaj ni devis lin eligi.  
= Unfortunately the person who sang unstopably was no singer and we had to throw him out.

See the entry on **-an-** in this list.

**-nj-**

See **-ĉj-**.

**-obl-**

The suffix **-obl-** corresponds with the “-ble/-ple” in English words like “double,” “triple,” “quintuplet,” and so on; in other words, it refers to the multiplication of the quantity indicated by the root:

duobla porcio = double ration

trioble naŭ = three times nine

kvinoblo = five times the number

multobla = many-fold, many times the ...

multoblighi = to duplicate many time; to mimeograph

oblo = a multiple

Tio estas duoble (pli) grava. = That is doubly important.

Mi jam pagis vin trioble! = I've already paid you thrice over!

**-on-**

The suffix **-on-** is attached to numbers to make fractions. It is exactly equivalent to attaching “1/” before a number:

du = 2

duono = 1/2

tri = 3                      triono = 1/3

sesdek kvin = 65    sesdekkvinono = 1/65

Fractions are nouns and are inflected just like other nouns:

Donu al mi nur duonon de la mono.  
= Give me only half of the money.

Donu al ŝi du trionojn.  
= Give her two-thirds.

La infanoj tre zorge dividis la kukon en dekduonojn.  
= The children carefully divided the cake into twelfths.

La infanoj tre zorge dudekonigis la kukon.  
= The children carefully divided the cake into twelfths.

### **-op-**

The suffix **-op-** is attached to numbers to refer to things taken “at a time.”  
The essential idea is that of a collectivity containing several of the same thing:

sepo = seven at a blow

kvinope = (all) five together

triope = in threes

Ili ĉiam parolas duope.  
= They always both talk at once.

Kvaropiĝu, infanoj!  
= Form groups of four, children!

Ili atakis min. Kiomope? Kvinope.  
= They attacked me. How many at a time? Five at a time.

Nearly always, **-op-** is used in an adverb or adjective. It is unnecessary in a noun, since merely adding **-o** to the noun has the same result:

trio = triopo = trio, triad, group of three

duo = duopo = duet, duo

The extra “groupiness” of **-opo** sometimes leads to its being used in titles of

small groups, despite its redundancy, especially if the name is intended to sound a little silly:

funebra duopo = gruesome twosome

infera triopo = ungodly trio

Note the contrast with the preposition po, despite sometimes similar translations:

Ili aĉetis po tri bokalojn.

= They bought three jars apiece.

Ili aĉetis bokalojn triope.

= Shopping in a group of three they bought jars. \*

\*-Caution: Since forms in **-ope** usually modify the verb, they usually refer to the subject. This sentence therefore would normally not mean that the jars were in groups of three.

Kvinope ili trinkis po dek ses glasetojn da sakeo.

= The five together drank sixteen little glasses of sake apiece.

### **-uj-/-ing-/-i-**

The suffixes **-uj-** and **-ing-** both are used to indicate containers. The difference is that **-uj-** is a container for several of whatever the root indicates, while **-ing-** is a container for but one, which is normally partially inserted into it:\*

\*-Usage varies when the thing held is not actually inserted into the holder. Most often such a holder is called a **tenilo** = "holder": Li aĉetis ŝildotenilon por sia aŭto. = "He bought a license-plate holder for his car."

cigaredingo = cigarette holder

cigaredujo = cigarette box

ovingo = egg cup

ovujo = egg carton, egg compartment

ombrelingo = umbrella case

ombrelujo = umbrella stand

fingringo = thimble

salujo = salt shaker

monujo = wallet, purse

In addition, the suffix **-uj-** may be used to form the name of a tree from the name of its fruit. (This usage has become less common over the years, with the word **-arbo** being suffixed to the name of the fruit instead.)

pomo = apple pomujo (pomarbo) = apple tree

piro = pear      pirujo (pirarbo) = pear tree

figo = fig      figujo (figarbo) = fig tree

Finally, **-uj-** is added to the name of an ethnic group to indicate the territory it occupies.

ruso = a Russian      Rusujo = Russia

sviso = a Swiss      Svisujo = Switzerland

ĉino = a Chinese      Ĉinujo = China

berbero = a Berber    Berberujo = land of the Berbers

Note in this last example that **Berberujo** in this case does not indicate anything visible on a political map. Similarly **Esperantujo** is used to refer to “wherever Esperantists are to be found,” the “Esperanto milieu,” “Esperantist circles,” and the like.

Especially as an ending for showing a political state, the **-uj-** tends to become **-i-** in the usage of ever more Esperantists. It is now a bit old-fashioned to say **Ĉinujo** or Francujo, and one more often hears **Ĉinio** or **Francio**. (**Esperantujo** has held out against this trend somewhat longer, but even **Esperantio** is emerging as a colloquial form.)

For more on place names, see the subsection on place names in the section on nouns.

### **-ul-**

The suffix **-ul-** indicates a person characterized by the root.

belulo = a handsome man

belulino = a beautiful woman

junulo = a youth

junularo moderna = youth today

karul(in)o = (my) dear

altulo = a tall person

laŭtulo = a loud person

grizharulo = a grey-haired person

barbulino = a bearded lady

maljunuleto = a little old man

drinkulo = a sot  
timulo = a coward

See also the entry on **-an-** in this list.

### **-um-**

The suffix **-um-** is used to produce idiosyncratic derivatives from roots (most often nouns) when other suffixes are inappropriate to the purpose. Here are the most common ones:

butiko = a shop	butikumi = to shop
cerbo = brain	cerbumi = rack one's brains
kruco = cross	krucumi = to crucify
kubuto = elbow	kubutumi = to elbow people (in a crowd)
malvarma = cold	malvarmumo = a cold
mastro = master (of house, etc.)	mastrumi = attain mastery over
nazo = nose	nazumi = to nose around, nose through
nomo = name	nomumi = to name [to an office]
orbito = an orbit	orbitumi = to orbit
plena = full	plenumi = to fulfill
polekso = thumb	poleksumi = (1) to thumb through , (2) to thumb a ride
proksima = close	proksimuma = approximate
vento = wind	ventumi = to fan
vintro = winter	vintrumi = to spend the winter

One of the most significant uses of **-um-** is to derive the name of an article of clothing from that of a body part:

brako = arm    brakumo = arm of a garment  
kolo = neck    kolumo = collar  
mano = hand    manumo = cuff (of sleeve)  
nazo = nose    nazumo = nosebag, nose-cover

### 13.3. Affixes as Roots

Suffixes and prefixes in Esperanto are able to act as roots to make independent words, so long as they take the necessary grammatical endings:\*

malo = opposite  
ejo = place ina = female  
eco = essence ree = again  
emo = tendency aĵo = thing  
male = on the contrary; the other way  
around ano = member  
aro = group, array

\*-This characteristic has been used to argue that there is therefore no real difference between affixes and any other root. The counter-argument is that the affixes differ because of their specialized use as affixes and comparatively broad applicability in that function, quite aside from their standing as roots. In fact a handful of short roots tend to get used as though they were affixes. See the section on Prepositions and Other Roots as Affixes.

### 13.4. Pseudo-affixes

So-called “pseudo-affixes” in Esperanto are largely suffixes which are used in the international vocabulary of science. The scientific suffix **-ol-**, for example, is added to the name of a hydrocarbide to produce the name of the corresponding alcohol, as in English: **meta** = “methanol.” Similarly **-oz-**, which comes into scientific English as “-ous,” -ose,” or “osis,” occurs in illness terms: **tuberkulozo** = “tuberculosis.” In inorganic chemistry **-oz-** shows oxides and salts of low valence: **feroza klorido** = “ferrous chloride” (FeCl<sub>2</sub>). In organic chemistry it indicates a sugar-type molecule: **fruktozo** = “fructose.”

In addition to their use in scientific and technical contexts, a few of these international suffixes have begun to show up in everyday, colloquial Esperanto acting as though they were part of the regular suffixing system of the language. So we find **-oz-** used to mean “full of” whatever the root designates, and encounter expressions like **birdo kantoza** = “a bird filled with song.” It is beyond the scope of this book to deal with the technical vocabulary of science, but some of the more colloquial pseudo-affixes are listed here.\*

\*-The pseudo-affixes call attention to themselves when used. Using these freely will puzzle some people and alarm others. Although a few speakers will think you are admirably avant-garde, nearly all listeners will tend to be distracted by how you are speaking rather than concentrating on what you are saying.

**-esk-**

The pseudo-suffix **-esk-**, corresponds to the “-esque” in Franco-English words like “grotesque” or “Japanesque,” but it may be more widely applied, especially in very slangy speech.

La fromaĝo de Viskonsono ne estas svisa, sed almenaŭ sviseska.  
= The cheese in Wisconsin is not Swiss, but it is at least Swiss style.

Ŝia muziko estas tre “hard-rock”-eska!  
= Her music resembles hard rock.

### **-ik-**

The pseudo-suffix **-ik-** appears in the names of some sciences, of which the most common are **ekonomiko** = “economics,” **lingvistiko** = “linguistics,” **informatiko** = “information science,” and **komputiko** = “computer science.” It appears to be used ever more often in new compounds, such as **edukiko** = “pedagogy, the study of education.” Probably few speakers are able to distinguish consistently between **-ik-** and the pseudo-suffix **-ologio-**, and it will be interesting to see if either actually evolves into general colloquial usage at the expense of the other. (The logical **lingviko** = “linguistics” is still rare and has by no means displaced **lingvistiko**, the term that probably is responsible for the start of **-ik-** as an increasingly colloquial suffix.)

Li studas komputikon ĉe la Universitato de Zagrebo.  
= He studies computer science at the University of Zagreb.

### **-iv-**

The pseudo-suffix **-iv-** is the active equivalent of the passive suffix **-ebl-**. When attached to a transitive verb root, **-ebl-** means “able to be Verb-ed,” but **-iv-** means “able to Verb”:

legi = to read    legebla = legible, readable    legiva = literate, able to read  
manĝi = to eat    manĝebla = edible    manĝiva = able to eat

Rusaj vortoj estas neparoleblaj.  
= Russian words are unpronounceable.

Tiu papago estas tre paroliva.  
= That parrot is very capable of speech.

Tiu papago estas tre parolema.



= That parrot is very talkative.

Du parolivuloj ne estas tuta Esperanta klubo.

= Two people who can speak are not a whole Esperanto club.

The pseudo-suffix **-iv-** is in competition for colloquial status with the already colloquial root **pov-**, used as a suffix with the same meaning:

legi = to read    legpova = literate, able to read

manĝi = to eat    manĝpova = able to eat

Even as there is something sleek, modern, and slightly daring about the use of **-iv-** (especially with roots which do not correspond with roots that would use the cognate suffix in other languages), so there is a homey, familiar, down-on-the-farm feel about **-pov-** in this usage, at least to me.

### **-olog-, -ologi-**

Many names of academic disciplines end in **-ologio**. The names of corresponding specialists end in **-ologo**.

Li blinde enamoriĝis al biologo.

= He fell blindly in love with a biologist.

Mi forlasis etnomuzikologion por farigi ĵurnalvendisto.

= I abandoned ethnomusicology to become a newspaper salesman.

Esperantologio kapablas interesi nur esperantologojn.

= Esperantology can be interesting only to Esperantologists.

La etnologon sorĉis la krokodil-adorantoj.

= The crocodile worshippers bewitched the ethnologist.

### **-oz-**

The pseudo-suffix **-oz-** means “full of” the root:

La ĉambro estas aeroza kaj lumoza.

= The room is full of air and light.

Via argumento estas truoza.

= Your argument is full of holes.

Ŝia konto monozas, do mi ŝin amas.  
= Her account is full of money, so I love her.

Konto monoza, estonteco roza.  
= Account full of money, future full of roses.

### 13.5. Prepositions & Other Roots as Affixes

There is a tendency for Esperanto prepositions to become prefixes to the verbs they are commonly used with, making the original object of the preposition into a direct object. Occasionally the preposition is prefixed, but the original prepositional phrase nevertheless remains intact:

Li parolis pri vi.  
OR Li priparolis vin. .  
(OR Li priparolis pri vi.) = He spoke about you.

Ŝi lasas al mi fari tion.  
OR Ŝi lasas min fari tion.  
OR Ŝi allasas min fari tion.  
(OR Ŝi allasas al mi fari tion.) = She lets me do that.

A preposition can also be added (redundantly) to an already transitive verb.

Ili traktis la aferon kun siaj amikoj.  
OR Ili pritraktis la aferon kun siaj amikoj.  
= They discussed the matter with their friends.

Mi ne povas juĝi romanojn.  
OR Mi ne povas juĝi pri romanoj.  
OR Mi ne povas prijuĝi romanojn.  
= I can't judge novels.

This tendency produces a large series of colloquial derivatives of some verbs:

ellasi = "from-leave" = let out, release  
enlasi = "in-leave" = let in  
delasi = "of leave" = deposit, put down; leave out  
elparoli = "out-speak" = pronounce

priparoli = “about-speak” = discuss  
subparoli = “under-speak” = discuss in secret  
antaŭparoli = “before discuss” = discuss ahead of time  
antaŭparolo = “before discussion” = prologue, preface

Although prepositions have the strongest tendency to become prefixes, this tendency also extends to a few other elements, notably the particle **for** = “away.” This has various effects. In most cases the result is easily visible in the translation.

lasi = to allow; leave	forlasi = abandon, depart from
meti = to put	formeti = put aside
iri = to go	foriri = to go away
manĝi = to eat	formanĝi = to eat up
veturi = to travel	forveturi = to drive off, run off
preni = to take	forpreni = to carry off, take away
profesia = professional	eksterprofesia = outside of one's profession
iri = to go	eniri = to enter
skribi = to write	enskribi = to inscribe
labori = to work	kunlabori = to cooperate
paroli = to speak	pluparoli = to talk on
bona = good	plibonigi = to improve
lerni = to learn	ellerni = to learn completely
manĝi = to eat	elmanĝi = to eat up
nun = now	ĝisnune = hitherto
hieraŭ = yesterday	la ĝishieraŭa plano = the plan till yesterday

Sometimes there is no comparable English distinction.

ligi = to tie together    kunligi = to tie together  
amiĝi = to fall in love    enamiĝi = to fall in love

**El** = “from” and **pri** = “about” are among the most common of the prepositions that do service as prefixes. Both can be used with their literal

meanings:

Li eliris. = He went out.

Ŝi priparolis sian fratinon. = She spoke about her sister.

Li priploris la morton de sia edzino. = He bewailed his wife's death.

In addition to their literal meanings, **El** = "from" and **pri** = "about" can each mean "thoroughly" or "completely," adding a sense of completion or finality:

Ŝi elpensis la planon. = She thought out the plan.

Ili ne povis plu elteni. = They couldn't hold out any longer.

Li prilaboris plenan portreton. = He worked out a whole portrait.

La sukero estas eluzita. = The sugar is all used up.

Zamenhof sometimes also used **pri-** to create derivative verbs with a different object, usually an object that "surrounds" or is a context for the verb without **pri-**:

Ŝi ŝtelis balailon. = She stole a broom.

Ŝi priŝtelis balailan vendejon. = She robbed a broom store.

La polico ŝin serĉis. = The police sought her.

La polico ŝin priserĉis. = The police searched her.

La polico ŝian ĉelon priserĉis. = The police searched her cell.

Ili plantis hordeon en la kampo. = They planted barley in the field.

Ili priplantis la tutan ĝardenon. = They planted the whole garden.

La lampo prilumis la ĉambron. = The lamp lit up the whole room.

Ili semis rizon. = They sowed rice.

Ili prisemis rizokampon. = They sowed a ricefield.

Li tondis ŝiajn harojn. = He cut her hair.

Li pritondis ŝian kapon. = He cut her hair.

Li ĵetis ŝtonon. = He threw a stone.

Li priĵetis viron. = He threw (something) at a man.

Li rabis tridek dolarojn. = He stole thirty dollars.

Li prirabis tridek homojn. = He robbed thirty people.

Ili konstruis kastelon. = They built a castle.

Ili prikonstruis la tutan bienon. = They built on the whole estate.

Ŝi verŝis la saŭcon en la poton. = She poured the gravy into the pot.

Ŝi sperte priverŝis la porkaĵon per la saŭco. = She skillfully basted the pork with the gravy.

Daĉjeto priverŝis la tablon per la supo. = Little Davey poured the soup all over the table.

Although most of the **pri-** compounds listed here are now colloquial, some others have become mere curiosities, and the device is rarely used to create new compounds today.

The preposition **sub** = “under” produces several rather specialized terms:

aĉeti = to buy	subaĉeti = to bribe
kompreni = to understand	subkompreni = to infer
aŭskulti = to hear	subaŭskulti = to eavesdrop on
ridi = to laugh	subridi = to snicker
voĉo = voice	subvoĉo = undertone
teni = to hold	subteni = to support

Some words are used so freely in compounding, that they are difficult to distinguish from affixes:

arb-o = tree	figarbo = fig tree	monarbo = money tree
art-o = art	kuirarto = art of cooking	deklamarto = art of reading aloud
fin-i = to finish	finaranĝi = to complete the arrangements	finskribi = to finish writing
fuŝ-i = to mess (something) up	fuŝlerni = to dabble in studying	fuŝkanti = to sing poorly

plen-a = full	homplena = full of people	vermoplena = full of worms	plenkreskulo = grown-up
sat-i = be full, satisfied	satmanĝi = to eat to fullness	satlegi = to read as much as one wants	

---

## Chapter 14: Reduplication

In order to add emphasis an Esperanto root may sometimes be doubled before the addition of the ending:

fine = at last	finfine = at long last
bela = beautiful	belbela = gorgeous
laŭta = loud	laŭtlaŭta = damnably loud
dika = fat	dikdika = obese
vere = truly	ververe = really and truly
foje = once, sometimes	fojfoje = once in a great while
plena = full	plenplena = very full
sola = alone	solsola = all alone

Although commonly used reduplications are not conspicuous, new ones created on the fly tend to sound vaguely jocular, so for a beginner they should perhaps be used only after they have been heard.

---

## Chapter 15: Writing Letters

The salutation of a letter usually ends with an exclamation point (less often, with a comma). The closing line, where we would write “yours sincerely,” is technically a sentence, with the signature as the subject (and often therefore a period after it). The simplest normal form is to write **Salutas** or **Elkore salutas** in the place where an English letter would put the “yours sincerely,” and then sign your name, adding a legible, printed version underneath. This is by far the most Esperanto form, although more English-like expressions are sometimes used.

la 22-an de aprilo, 2019

Kara Toĉjo! [informal]  
or: Estimataj samideanoj! [formal]  
or: Estimataj! [formal]

... [letter text] ...

Elkore salutas [informal]  
or: Samideane salutas [informal]  
or: Salutas [formal]

[signature]

Joĉjo. [informal]  
or: John C. JONES. [formal]

Longer closings are a bit old fashioned, but fairly common, and you may feel free to add all the hearts and flowers you like:

... [letter goes here] ...

Antaŭdankante vian valoran helpon, kaj esperante la baldaŭan  
resaniĝon de via ĉarma edzo, afable kaj samideane salutas via novjorka  
amikino

[signature]

Eva.

... [letter goes here] ...

Thanking you in advance for your valuable help and hoping for the rapid recovery of your charming husband, I remain, affectionately and one in purpose, Your New York friend,

[signature]

Eva

It is a curious, largely European tradition that one's signature can or even should be illegible. The result is that one gets occasional letters from unidentifiable correspondents. Whatever other people do, courtesy requires that *your* signature always be accompanied by a clearly legible transcription if there is any question at all about its legibility.

---

## Chapter 16: Speed of Speech

Conversation takes place at conversational speed, even if this varies for different languages, different speakers, and different circumstances. Fluent speakers of Esperanto, naturally enough, speak Esperanto at about the same speed at which they speak other languages they know well. This has several implications in Esperanto:

1. Most fluent speakers speak somewhat more quickly than many beginners are easily able to assimilate. They are usually not showing off. That is simply the rate of information flow that is comfortable for them. (It may correspond to their approximate speaking speed in their native language.) Different individuals speak at different speeds, but conventions about speed of speech also vary from one language community to another. What seems fast to you may actually seem slow and deliberate to many others.
2. This means it may actually seem *unnatural* for another Esperantist to speak as slowly as you would like. Indeed, only by a deliberate act of will and great concentration can the average person actually control his speed. If you don't understand something, it usually works better to ask for repetition than to ask people to slow down, since it is normal for a person to forget your request, sometimes even before the end of the first sentence!
3. It also follows that beginners should hang around with fluent speakers when possible to get practice listening to speech at “conversational” speed.
4. Teachers should make a point of speaking Esperanto at conversational speed (or faster!) so that students become used to it; it is better to repeat than to slow down, especially after the first couple of lessons.
5. Although you need to understand speech at whatever speed it comes at you, slow speech is just as respectable in Esperanto as in other



languages, so don't be bullied into trying to hurry your own speech just to sound "fluent." It is better to try to speak clearly than to worry too much about speed.

## Chapter 17: Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are common in Esperanto writing and publishing (sometimes without the periods\* ). Some of them are found principally in want-ads seeking correspondents "on all topics" or "in all countries."

\*-The period is used, if at all, only when the abbreviation does not include the last letter of the abbreviated word. (Some common abbreviations, such as k or ptm, normally omit it.) When there is a hyphen to represent the missing letters in the middle of a word, a period is never used:  
**s-ro = sinjoro** = "Mr."

a.K.	antaŭ Kristo	BC/BCE
atm	antaŭtagmeze	a.m.
bv.	bonvolu	please
C.O.	Centra Oficejo	Central Office (usually of the U.E.A.)
ĉ.	ĉirkaŭ	around
ĉ.	ĉiuj, ĉio	all
dez. kor.	deziras korespondi	wants to correspond
div. t.	diversaj temoj	various topics
d-ro	doktoro	Dr.
E.	Esperanto	Esperanto
ekz.	ekzemple	for example, e.g.
esp- ist(in)o	esperantisto	Esperanto speaker
ev.	eventuale, eventuala	in the end, possible
f-ino	fraŭlino	Miss
ges- anoj	gesamideanoj	fellow Esperantists
ges-roj	gesinjoroj	Mr. & Mrs.; ladies & gentlemen
gld.	guldeno(j)	Dutch guilder*
inĝ.	inĝeniero	engineer (used as a title in many

		countries, like Mr.)
j.	jaro	year
k	kaj	and
k.a.	kaj aliaj	and others, et. al.
k.e.p.	kiel eble plej	as ... as possible
k.e.p.b.	kiel eble plej baldaŭ	as soon as possible
k.s.	kaj simile, kaj similaj	and similarly, and similar (ones)
k.t.p.	kaj tiel plu	and so forth, etc.
L.K.K.	Loka Kongresa Komitato	local convention committee
p.K.	post Kristo	AD/CE
pm.	poŝtmarko	postage stamp
prof.	profesoro	professor
proks.	proksimume	approximately, ca.
ptm	posttagmeze	p.m.
r.p.k.	respondkupono	International Reply Coupon*
red.	redaktoro, redakcio	editor, editorial office
s-ano	samideano	fellow Esperantist
s-ino	sinjorino	Mrs.
s-ro	sinjoro	Mr.
t.e.	tio estas	that is, i.e.
tm.	tutmonde	all over the world
TTT	Tut-Tera Teksaĵo	World Wide Web (WWW)
U.E.A.	Universala Esperanto-Asocio	Universal Esperanto Association
U.K.	Universala Kongreso	Worldwide Convention (of Esperanto)

### Notes on the above list:

\*-Because the Universal Esperanto Association is headquartered in the Netherlands, prices of books, subscriptions, etc. were formerly usually cited in guilder in Esperanto publications. Dutch guilder (singular: gulden) were also called florins in English, and the abbreviation "Hfl" interchanged with "NLG" in international banking circles. With the advent of the Euro (€) in 1999, UEA shifted its bookkeeping to that currency, and today prices are cited in Euros and/or dollars more or less standardly throughout

the Esperanto-speaking world.

**\*\***-International Reply Coupons are sold in post offices around the world. Each coupon is good anywhere in the world for the price of a stamp back to the country in which the coupon was issued. These coupons make it possible to write to someone in another country and prepay the return postage, but during the Cold War they were used by Esperantists to settle small debts, so sometimes prices were occasionally quoted in them. Their use is quite expensive, and they have gradually fallen out of favor with the paying public. the more so with the growth of electronic mail, faxes, and other telecommunications services as faster and cheaper means of international communication, and with credit cards (and in some countries small inter-bank or post-office cash transfers) as a way of making international purchases.

---

## Chapter 18. Interjections & Verbal Play

### Interjections

An interjection is a free-standing word expressing an emotion, such as awe, horror, or surprise. Words like “yikes!” and “wow!” are English interjections. Not surprisingly, (1) there are few precise equivalences between languages, and (2) interjections are often imported from a speaker's native language into Esperanto, especially if the speaker is caught by surprise. Here are a few relatively common Esperanto interjections:

**Ba! = Nonsense! Rubbish! (Used to dismiss and express disgust at something said by another.)**

Dio estas granda muŝo!? Ba! Kion vi scias pri Dio?

= God is a great fly!? Nonsense! What do you know about God?!

**Ĉu?! = What in the world?! Really?! (Expresses sudden surprise. Sometimes used by a listener to acknowledge surprised interest in facts being laid out by a speaker.)**

Ili decidis vendi la hundon! Ĉu?! Jes, sed ili ne sukcesis.

= They decided to sell the dog! Really? Yes, but they didn't succeed!)

Li diris al mi, ke la oranĝo kostus kvin egiptiajn pundojn; imagu! Ĉu vere?!

= He told me the orange would cost five Egyptian pounds; imagine! Is that so?!

Sed tio vere estis tro alta prezo, ĉu ne?

= But that really was too high a price, wasn't it?

**Ha! = Ah! (Range of generally positive meanings depending upon intonation.)**

Ha! Mi havas la pikan ason!

= Ha! I have the ace of spades!

Ha! Finfine mi scias, kial ŝi ne venis!

= Ha! At last I know why she didn't come!

Ha! Post la bankedo restis ankoraŭ iom da mono en la kaso!

= Great! After the banquet there was still some money left in the cash-box!

**He! = Hey! (Used to attract attention.)**

He! Vi faligis vian monujon!

= Hey! You dropped your wallet!

**Ho! = Oh! O! (Range of meanings depending upon intonation. Sometimes followed directly by a noun or noun phrase.)**

Ho kia fuŝo!

= Oh, what a disaster!

Ho mia kor'! Ne batu maltrankvile!<sup>2</sup>

= O my heart! Beat not in agitation.

**Nu ... = Well ... (Sound made while hesitating about saying what follows.)**

Kien malaperis ŝia edzo? Nu, jen la situacio: ...

= Where did her husband disappear to? Well, um, here's the situation: ...

Vi ne kunportis monon? Nu, ni akceptas kreditkartojn.

= You didn't bring money along? Well, we accept credit cards.

**Ve! = Alas! Rats! (Not as stilted as English "alas"; may be used where American English uses various mild profanity. Often preceded by ho.)**

Ho ve! Mi perdis la vortaron!

= Oh rats! I lost the dictionary.

In some cases, a noun or adverb (or pretty much anything else) can be pulled into use. Adverbs are most common. Here are some examples:

**Interese! = Interesting!**

**Diable! = Damn! = Tarnation! (Expressing mild annoyance. Quite common.)**

Diable! Mi esperis, ke ŝi ne venos!  
= Dang! I was hoping she wouldn't come!

**Damne! = Damn it! (Expressing slightly stronger annoyance. Less common.)**

Damne! Kiam mi penas najli mi ĉiam batas al mi la dikfingron.  
= Damn! When I try to pound nails I always hit my thumb.

**Fundamenta Krestomatio! = Damnation! (Expressing justifiable annoyance. Rare.)**

Fundamenta Krestomatio! Ili proponas pagi al mi neniom por mia brila manuskripto.

= Ye gods and little fishes! They propose to pay me nothing at all for my brilliant manuscript.

(The *Fundamenta Krestomatio* was an early collection of essays demonstrating the suitability of Esperanto for a wide variety of purposes. Using the title as an interjection is experienced as slightly comical, hence the threadbare but comical “translation” here.)

In English “my” often begins an expression of annoyed disbelief, such as “My foot!” “My ass!” or “My fiduciary!” This doesn’t routinely work in Esperanto, but can be sometimes be approximated using the preposition **je**, implying that one is swearing by it: **Je mia piedo!**, literally “By my foot.”

## **Vulgar Interjections**

Coarser expressions occur when people are truly annoyed (or are coarser people). Languages vary a great deal in the elaboration of verbal indecency, but most people should have little occasion to hear obscenity and none to produce it in Esperanto. To answer a frequent question, however, the common American “shit!” and “fuck!” are usually **fek'!** and **fik'!** in American Esperanto. Their valence among Esperantists of other language traditions varies, and their use is not recommended.

## Verbal Play

Because language is a particularly salient issue for most Esperanto speakers, and therefore often surfaces as a topic of common interest, there is a good deal of self-consciousness in Esperanto speech, leading, of course, to verbal gaming.\*

\*-For more on Esperanto humor, see my 1988 article, "Esperanto: the international language of humor; or, What's funny about Esperanto?" *Humor: International Journal of Humor Research* 1(2): 143-157. Available on this web site ([link](#)).

Some jokes involve extending the paradigms of Esperanto to create implausible but (often) theoretically possible forms. Hyphens have been inserted here to show the element divisions.

Vi kiom-as? Ni tri-as.

= How many are you? We're three.

Vi kie-is dum tiom da tempo? Subetaĝ-is mi.

= Where were you all this time? I was downstairs.

Kies estas la libro? Johan-es.

= Whose is the book? John's.

Kio jen-as en mia poŝo? Ĉu melaso? Diable! Daĉjo!

= What's this in my pocket? Molasses?! Damn! Davey!

Some of these forms even attain a kind of concise elegance:

Eĉ pafote silentadus li.

= He would remain silent even if he were about to be shot.

Others are silly because of their deliberately unmanageable length:

Li estas bibliotek-ist-in-id-et-aĉ-o.

= He is the brattish little son of a lady librarian.

A particularly common (if childish) game is the ridiculous over-extension of the prefix **mal-**. The creation of frivolous "opposites" has been invented over and over in the course of Esperanto history.

Vi volas sendi dek elefantojn al Usono? Mal-jen problemo!

= You want to send ten elephants to the United States? No problem!

Mal-iru mal-nek mal-feku! Mal-prenu la mal-dian mal-elefanton mal-el la mal-hundo

= Come and eat! Leave the damned mouse to the cat.

Other jokes satirize individuals or organizations prominent in the Esperanto movement. They are funny or not depending upon how stuck-in-the-mud you are, but they fall beyond the scope of this book. The point is that jokes abound, and if something seems jarring, offensive, or even unintelligible, one possibility is that it is a well-intentioned joke. When nothing makes any sense at all, a vague smile is probably your best defense. (But then, you already knew that.)

---

## Part II: Potentially Troublesome Words

This list includes various words and expressions that can be a potential source of confusion or embarrassment. In some cases they are falsaj amikoj = “false friends,” that is, words with different meanings from their English cognates. For example, **demandi** means “to ask, inquire,” *not* “to demand.” In other cases they are so-called **paronimoj**, i.e., words that are quite similar to each other in form but differ in meaning or shade of meaning. For example **pesi** means “to weigh” in the sense of weighing an object, but **pezi** means “to weigh” in the sense of weighing such and such a number of kilograms. Finally, some of the items included are simply words that have given me trouble at one time or another or that seem interesting.

In English translations I have sought to make meaning contrasts very clear and to be colloquial, not necessarily to follow the Esperanto literally. A raised letter Z after an example indicates that it comes from the writings of Zamenhof, although the quotation has often been abbreviated here. In many cases such examples are cited in the *Plena Ilustrita Vortaro*.<sup>\*</sup> The symbol ~ means “alternates with.”

<sup>\*</sup>-The most accessible source of Zamenhof's usage of particular words is Nomura Rihej 1987 *Zamenhofa ekzemplaro: esprimoj cititaj el la ĉefaj verkoj de d-ro L.L. Zamenhof*. Provizora eldono. Nagoya: Nagoya Esperanto-Centro.

A B C Ĉ D E F G Ĝ H Ĥ I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z

**abstrakto** = abstraction. See [resumo](#)

**adepto** = initiate.

**Not to be confused with:**

**lerta** = quick to learn.

**lertulo** = a quick learner, clever person.

Ŝi estas adepto de la Sekreta Mistera Antikva Societo "Zameg".

= She was an initiate of the Secret Mysterious Ancient Society "Zameg".

Li estas tre lerta lernanto de Esperanto.

= He is a very adept student of Esperanto.

**adiaŭ** = goodbye.

The implication is that one is leaving forever or at least for a very long time. See [Ĝis la revido](#).

**adulto** = adultery.

**Not to be confused with:**

**plenkreskulo** = adult, grown-up.

**plenaĝulo\*** = adult.

Li adultis kun la edzino de sia amiko.

= He committed adultery with his friend's wife.

\*-The rare and awful word **adulto** = "adult" also exists if you insist on a cognate.

Vi estas plenaĝulo; vi ne rajtas prizorgi idealismon, nur monon.

= You're an adult; you can't concern yourself with idealism, only money.

Panjo, mi ankoraŭ ne estas plenkreskulo; mi rajtas ludi!

= Mommy, I'm still not an adult; I'm entitled to play!

**afekcii** = to have an emotional impact on. See [afekti](#).

**afekti** = to be affected\*, put on airs; pretend.

**Not to be confused with:**

**afekcii** = to have an emotional impact on; (of disease) to affect the health of. Hence: **afekcio** = a sudden change of emotion.

**influi** = to affect, influence.

\*-English usage is potentially confusing here:

afféct (verb) = have an effect on or to pretend to something;

áflect (noun) = an emotion (technical term in psychology) (hence, "affected," i.e., showing exaggerated emotion);

efféct (verb) = to bring about, to



**koncerni** = to concern, relate to, affect.

cause; efféct (noun) = a result.
-------------------------------------

**rilati** = to be connected to, related to, entailed by (+ al).

**(kor)tuŝi** = to have an emotional impact on.

**emocio** = an emotion, (an) affect.

**efektivigi** = to bring about, to effect.

**rezulto** = a result, an effect.

Ŝi celas afekti klerecon sed ne parolas Esperanton!  
= She tries to pretend she's educated, but she doesn't speak Esperanto!

Li afektis ĉiutage antaŭ la spegulo ĝis la prezento estis efika.  
= He put on airs before the mirror each day till the presentation was effective.

La malsano nun afekcias ankaŭ lian hepaton.  
= The disease is now affecting his liver too.

Pro fortaj afekcioj li ne plu povis instrui Esperantan verkadon.  
= Because of his mood shifts he could no longer teach Esperanto composition.

See also [efektiva](#).

**afero** = matter, affair, thing.

**Esperanto uses afero much as English uses “thing” when the referent is unspecified. Despite the similarity to English “affair,” the Esperanto word can also refer to physical objects.**

Mi devas riparigi certan aferon.  
= I have to get a certain thing repaired.

Lia eksedziĝo estas delikata afero.  
= His divorce is a delicate matter.

Lasu viajn aferojn en la blua ĉambro, ĉar tie mankas fantomoj.  
= Leave your things in the blue room, since there're no ghosts there.

Pri ŝiaj personaj fiaferoj mi nenion scias.  
= I know nothing of her sordid personal affairs.

Sometimes the Esperanto movement is referred to as **la Afero**. This apparently derives from the more ambiguous referent of the phrase in a portion of a poem by Zamenhof that was eventually adopted as the anthem of the Esperanto movement:

Sub la sankta signo de	Under the sacred sign of Hope
l'Espero	the peaceful warriors assemble,
kolektiĝas pacaj batalantoj,	and the <b>afero</b> grows rapidly
kaj rapide kreskas <b>la afero</b>	through the work of those who
per laboro de la Esperantoj.	Hope.

**afiŝo** = poster. See [plato](#).

**agnoski** = to recognize (by official declaration). See also [rekoni](#).

*Not to be confused with:*

**agnostika** = agnostic.

**agnostika** = agnostic. See [agnoski](#).

**agonio** = death-throes. Contrast **angoro**.

*Not to be confused with:*

Ĉiu pentraĵo montris la agonion de Kristo.  
= Each painting showed the passion of Christ.

Ĉu agonio estas ĉiam dolorega?  
= Is dying always painful?

See also [angoro](#).

**akcento** = stress on a syllable; musical accent.

*Not to be confused with:*

**akĉento** = accent (of a certain dialect region).

En Esperanto la akcento estas ĉiam sur la antaŭlasta silabo.<sup>z</sup>  
= In Esperanto the accent is always on the second-to-the-last syllable.

Ŝia stranga usona akĉento en Esperanto baldaŭ lacigis la aŭskultantojn.  
= Her strange American accent in Esperanto soon exhausted the listeners.

**akcepto** = reception. See [festi](#).

**akĉento** = accent. See [akcento](#).

**akrido** = locust. See [lokusto](#).

**aktuala** = topical, present-day. See [efektiva](#).

**akurata** = punctual, prompt.

**Not to be confused with:**

**ĝusta** = accurate, correct, right.

**preciza** = precise, accurate.

**senerara** = accurate, without errors.

Ĉu vi do postulas monon? Ĝuste.

= So are you then demanding money? Exactly.

Li ĉiam estas akurata, sed li faras multegajn erarojn.

= He is always on time, but he makes loads of errors.

See also [ĝusta](#).

**al** = to, toward. See also [fare de](#).

**alero** = awning, eave, or other roof overhang. See [halo](#).

**alineo** = paragraph (in ordinary text). See [paragrafo](#).

**alo** = the side or wing of something. See [halo](#).

**aludi** = speak (of), allude (to). See [referi](#).

**amaso** = mass, pile, crowd. See [maso](#).

**ambaŭ** = both.

**As in English, this may be used as an adverb or pronoun or as though modifying a noun:**

La ursoj ambaŭ bone dormis.

= The bears both slept well.

Ambaŭ ursoj bone dormis.

= Both bears slept well.

Ambaŭ bone dormis

= Both slept well.

Anĝeloj ilin ŝirmis ambaŭflanke.

= Angels sheltered them on either side.

**ampleksa** = bulky, large. See [bulko](#).

**amuzi** = to amuse (someone). Hence: **amuziĝi** = to be entertained,

**amuza** = entertaining.

Contrast **enua**, **tedi**.

The contrasts among these words are caused in part by underlying characteristics of the roots.

**Amuza** means “funny” in the sense of “amusing.” “Funny” in the sense of “ridiculous” or “worthy of mockery” is **ridinda** (from **ridi** = “to laugh”). Most of us would like to think we are **amuzaj**; we would prefer to think we are *not* **ridindaj**. “Funny” in the sense of “strange” (as in “it’s a funny thing that she didn’t come”) is **stranga** or **kurioza**. See [kurioza](#).

**angoro** = anxiety (clinical or general),  
**anguish**, **agony**.\*

*Not to be confused with:*

**kolero** = anger.

**doloro** = pain (physical or psychological).

Kiam li ekŝoforis mian aŭton mi sentis angoron.

= When he set out driving my car, I felt anxiety.

Kiam li difektis mian aŭtomobilon mi sentis koleron.

= When he wrecked my car, I felt rage.

La milito kaŭzis al ili teruran angoron.

= The war caused them terrible anguish.

Mi sentis dentodoloron tiun tagon kaj ne kapablis labori.

= I had a toothache that day and couldn’t work.

See also [agonio](#).

\*-Caution: Although it refers to worry, **angor-** does not work very gracefully as a verb. The English expression “Don’t worry!” gets rendered variously as **ne zorgu**, **ne ĝeniĝu**, **ne ĉagreniĝu**, **ne estu maltrankvila**, etc., all of which seem a bit too English. **Restu trankvila** is more colloquially Esperanto. The ominously optimistic expression of International Broken English “No problem!” finds an appropriate equivalent in the equally ominous **Senprobleme!**

**ankoraŭ** = still. Hence: **Ankoraŭ ne** = “not yet.”

Contrast **jam** = “already.” (Hence: **Ne jam** = “not yet,” although this is a rare usage.) In most cases, the usage of **jam** and **ankoraŭ** is identical with that of their English translations, but speakers from different language backgrounds sometimes cut the terrain a little differently, especially with negative words, so you should be prepared for variation

even in published works. (Zamenhof himself was inconsistent.) 4

See also [ekde](#).

Ĉiu ankoraŭ memoras ŝian prelegon.  
= Everyone still remembers her speech.

Li ankoraŭ restas en Senegalio  
= He is still staying in Senegal.

Li ankoraŭ ne venis.  
= He has not come yet. = He still has not come.

Li ankoraŭ ne komprenas nian sistemon de impostoj. Ankaŭ mi ne!  
= He still doesn't understand our tax system. Nor do I!

Ŝi ankoraŭ ne loĝas en Japanio.  
= She does not yet live in Japan.

Li jam venis.  
= He already came.

Ŝi jam studis la japanan kiam ŝi renkontis sian estontan japanan edzon.  
= She had already studied Japanese when she met her future Japanese husband.

Ŝi jam ne loĝas en Japanio.  
= She no longer lives in Japan.

Ŝi ne jam loĝas en Japanio.  
= She does not yet live in Japan.

**anstataŭ = instead of. Hence: anstataŭi and anstataŭigi:**

**anstataŭi** = to act in place of, take the place of, replace

Ŝi anstataŭos min en la kunveno.  
= She'll take my place in the meeting.

Nenio povas anstataŭi la sanon.  
= Nothing can replace health!

**anstataŭigi** = to replace (something) with (something)

Ni anstataŭigos la sikomorojn per cedroj.  
= We'll replace the sycamores with cedars.

Caution: As in other cases where a transitive verb has **-ig-** added to it, either the displaced or the stand-in can be the direct object of **anstataŭigi!**

La ĵonglisto anstataŭis la nudan dancistinon.  
= The juggler replaced the nude dancer.

La direktoro anstataŭigis la nudan dancistinon (per la ĵonglisto).  
= The director replaced the nude dancer (with the juggler).

La direktoro anstataŭigis la ĵongliston (al/anstataŭ la nuda dancistino).  
= The director substituted the juggler (for the nude dancer).

As a preposition, **anstataŭ** of course takes an object with no accusative endings. However in some cases what follows is actually an infinitive and its object (naturally with an accusative ending). The infinitive may be left out, leaving the accusative:

Ŝi trinkos lakton anstataŭ kafo.  
= She'll drink milk instead of coffee.

Ŝi trinkos lakton anstataŭ trinki kafon.  
= She'll drink milk instead of drinking coffee.

Ŝi trinkos lakton anstataŭ kafon.  
= She'll drink milk instead of [drinking] coffee.

It usually makes little difference whether the accusative is left in place or not, but occasionally it can remove ambiguity:

La lupo manĝos vin anstataŭ mi.  
= The wolf will eat you instead of me. (Instead of eating me or instead of my eating you?)

La lupo manĝos vin anstataŭ min.  
= The wolf will eat you instead of [eating] me.

**antaŭ** = before, in front of; ago.

**Antaŭ tri tagoj** = “three days ago.”

When **antaŭ** refers to space and means “in front of”; the opposite is **malantaŭ** = “behind”; when **antaŭ** refers to time and means “before,” the specialized word **post** = “after” is its opposite.

La preĝejo estas malantaŭ la remizo.  
= The church is behind the garage.

Vi iru antaŭ mi.  
= You go ahead of me.

Mi iris malantaŭ li. = I went behind him.

Mi iris post li.  
= I went after he did.

Post fierinda historio, subite malaperis la kolegio Radcliffe.  
= After a proud history, suddenly Radcliffe College disappeared.

Post kiam ŝi foriris, ĉiu ekridegis.  
= After she left, everyone burst out laughing.

Nun estas tri minutoj post la kvara. = It's now 4:03.

When **antaŭ** is used before a verb or clause, it becomes **antaŭ ol**. The **ol** is *not* ordinarily used after **post** in the same circumstances. Before verbs or clauses (that is, when used as conjunctions) **post** becomes **post kiam**.\*

antaŭ ol eniri la domon  
= before going into the house

antaŭ ol li eniris la domon  
= before he went into the house.

Infero frostiĝos antaŭ ol mi loĝos kun vi, sentaŭgulo!  
= Hell will freeze over before I live with you, you creep!

\*-It would be logical to say **post ol**, but Slavic languages do not do it that way, and Zamenhof's instincts apparently led him to follow the Slavic languages without thinking much about it. **Post ol** keeps getting reinvented on the model of **antaŭ ol**, but speakers of Slavic languages, in my experience, tend to find **post ol** surprisingly confusing. Because it is logical for most other Esperantists, it may someday become standard. Meanwhile, one is better advised to stick with **post kiam**.

post kiam eniri la domon  
= after going into the house

post kiam li eniris la domon  
= after he went into the house

Li murdis ŝin post kiam ŝi mordis lin.  
= He murdered her after she bit him.

**aparato** = device, apparatus. See [devizo](#).

**apenaŭ** = barely, just. See [ĝusta](#).

**apologio** = formal justification.

*Not to be confused with:*

**pardonpeto** = apology.

Ŝi prezentis nenian apologion por sia rimarkebla agado.  
= She presented no justification for her remarkable activity.

Li estis apologisto por la monarkio.  
= He was an apologist for the monarchy.

Kio diable?! Ho, mi pardonpetas, sinjorino.  
= What the devil? Whoops, I beg your pardon, madam!

Ŝi petis la pardonon de sia edzo.  
= She asked her husband's pardon.

**aranĝi** = arrange, dispose. See [disponi](#).

**argano** = drilling hoist, crane (machine). See [krano](#).

**argumento** = point put forward.

*Not to be confused with:*

**disputo** = argument, disagreement\*

La malesperantisto bone argumentis,  
ke la mondo estas plata, kaj li  
konvinkis ĉiun.

= The anti-Esperantist argued well  
that the world was flat, and he convinced everyone.

Neniu disputis kun li.  
= Nobody disagreed with him.

\*-Perhaps under the influence of French,  
sometimes **diskuto** can also mean  
“argument” in addition to meaning  
“discussion.”



**aserti = assert, claim. See [pretendi](#).**

**asfalto = pitch, asphalt, tar. See [piĉo](#).**

**aspekti = look, appear (in the sense of how one looks to others).**

**Aspekti normally takes an adverb as complement.**

Ŝi aspektis malgaje.

= She looked sad.

Zamenhof sometimes used an adjective rather than an adverb after **aspekti** if the complement was itself modified by an adverb:

Vi aspektas tiel vire maltima!<sup>2</sup>

= You appear so manfully unafraid!

It is especially usual to use **aspekti** with **kiel** = “like” and **kvazaŭ** = “as though”:

Vi aspektas kiel bela rozo, mia kara.

= You look like a beautiful rose, my dear.

Vi aspektas kvazaŭ vi vidis fantomon.

= You look as though you had seen a ghost.

**atendi = to await, to wait for; to expect.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ĉeesti = attend.**

Dum du horoj ŝi atendis la aŭtobuson por ĉeesti la kunvenon.

= She waited for the bus for two hours to attend the meeting.

**atentigi = remark, call someone’s attention to (pri) something. See [rimarki](#).**

**aŭreolo = halo (over a head). See [halo](#).**

**aŭ...aŭ... = either...or...**

Aŭ vi aŭ mi devos kapti Daĉjeton kaj enlitigi lin.

= Either you or I must catch Little Davey and put him to bed.

Ŝi venos aŭ morgaŭ aŭ sabaton.

= She’s coming either tomorrow or Saturday.

Li aŭ kantos aŭ ludos la gurdon, eble ambaŭ!

= He’ll either sing or play the hurdy-gurdy, maybe both! .

**averti = to warn.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**forturni**= to avert, direct away.

**eviti** = to avoid.

Ni avertu ĉiun, ke venos la pluvego!

= Let's warn everyone that the deluge will come!

Ni ne kapablos fortturni la pluvegon!

= We won't be able to avert the deluge!

Ili penos eviti la pluvegon per vojaĝo al la dezerto!

= They'll try to escape the deluge by a trip to the desert!

**azilo = asylum. (As in English, the word is used both for places for refugees or the associated state, and for institutions providing care for people who are crazy, ailing, and/or elderly. It usefully translates the American euphemism "retirement community.")**

Ili petis azilon ĉe moskeo.

= They sought asylum in a mosque.

Dum multaj jaroj la fama aŭtoro loĝis en azilo por maljunuloj.

= For many years the famous author lived in an old people's home.

Oni devis sendi la novan entuziasman esperantiston al azilo por danĝere mojosaj junuloj.

= They had to send the enthusiastic new Esperantist to a home for dangerously cool youth.

**A B C Ĉ D E E G Ĝ H Ĥ I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z**

**bagatela = trivial. See [vulgara](#).**

**balai = to sweep, mop. See [kombi](#).**

**balanci = to swing, rock (something).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**bilanci** = to balance (an account) (from **bilanco** = a balance sheet)

**stabiligi** = to stabilize, to balance

**ekvilibri** = to balance, be in equilibrium

**ekvilibrigi** = to bring into balance (forces, expenses, scales, etc.)

Vi devos lerni ekvilibrigi vian budĝeton, mia elspezemuleto.  
= You must learn to balance your budget, my little spendthrift.

Ŝi balancis la katidon kiel infanon en malgranda lulilo.  
= She rocked the kitten like a child in a little cradle.

Niaj fortoj kun tiuj de la malamikoj tute ne ekvilibras.  
= Our forces are completely out of balance with those of the enemies.

Li ne sukcesis stabiligi la kafotasiojn, kiuj laŭte falis.  
= He didn't succeed in balancing the coffee cups, which fell loudly.

**baloti** = to vote. See [selekti](#).

**bankedo** = banquet. See [festi](#).

**benzeno** = benzene. See [gaso](#).

**benzino** = gasoline (for automobiles). See [gaso](#).

**bilanci** = to balance (an account). See [balanci](#).

**biliono** = trillion.

**Not to be confused with:**

**miliardo** = billion (= thousand million)

1,000,000,000,000 estas biliono

1,000,000,000 estas miliardo

1,000,000 estas miliono

1,000 estas milo

1 estas kiom mi havas en la monujo.  
= One is how much I have in my wallet.

Caution: There is a fundamental logical difference between the way Americans (and the French and Italians and others) calculate large numbers and the way the English and Germans and some others do it. (Asia is yet different, but Asians do not use cognate vocabulary, so they do not affect this discussion.) Esperanto *tends* to follow the Anglo-German conventions. Here is a table of Franco-American as against Anglo-German usage:

Amount	Franco-American	Anglo-German
$10^6$	<b>1 million</b>	<b>1 million (miliono)</b>
$10^7$	10 million	10 million
$10^8$	100 million	100 million

$10^9$	<b>1 billion</b>	1,000 million; = <b>1 milliard (miliardo)</b>
$10^{10}$	10 billion	10,000 million; = 10 milliard
$10^{11}$	100 billion	100,000 million; = 100 milliard
$10^{12}$	<b>1 trillion</b>	<b>1 billion (biliono)</b>
$10^{13}$	10 trillion	10 billion
$10^{14}$	100 trillion	100 billion
$10^{15}$	<b>1 quadrillion</b>	1,000 billion
$10^{16}$	10 quadrillion	10,000 billion
$10^{17}$	100 quadrillion	100,000 billion
$10^{18}$	<b>1 quintillion</b>	<b>1 trillion (triliono)</b>
$10^{19}$	10 quintillion	10 trillion
$10^{20}$	100 quintillion	100 trillion
$10^{21}$	<b>1 sestillion</b>	1,000 trillion
$10^{22}$	10 sestillion	10,000 trillion
$10^{23}$	100 sestillion	100,000 trillion
$10^{24}$	<b>1 septillion</b>	<b>1 quadrillion (kvariliono)</b>
$10^{27}$	<b>1 octillion</b>	1,000 quadrillion
$10^{30}$	<b>1 novillion</b>	<b>1 quintillion (kviniliono)</b>

**blago** = joke, joking fib. Hence: **blagi** = to put somebody on.

**Not to be confused with:**

**mensogi** = lie, be mendacious.

**blog** = Internet blog.

Vi blagas!

= You're putting me on!

Mi ne blagas!

= I kid you not!

Mi ne mensogas.

= I am not lying.

Ne atentu tiun blagulon.  
= Pay that joker no attention!

Lia blogo estas tute blaga!  
= His blog is all blather!

Li eĉ gajnis premion por la blagado!  
= He even won a prize for tall tales!

Donu al mi vian monon kaj vi eniros paradizon! Sen blago!  
= Give me your money and you'll get into heaven! No kidding!

**blasfemi = to cuss and swear; to blaspheme.**

**Compare: sakri = to cuss and swear. See [juro](#).**

Ĉiu kiu blasfemos sian dion, portos sian pekon.  
= Whoever blasphemes his God shall bear his sin.

Vi blasfemas, Isaak, kontraŭ la sola Dio.  
= You blaspheme, Isaac, against the one God.

Li parolas elegante en la litova sed en la rusa li povas nur sakri  
= He speaks elegantly in Lithuanian, but in Russian he can only cuss.

Ĉiu vizaĝo ruĝiĝis kiam li blasfemegis per la blasfemegaĉo "Zamenfek!"  
= Every face reddened when he swore with the terrible oath "Z...t!"

**blogo = Internet blog. See [blago](#).**

**bokalo = wide-mouthed jar; fishbowl.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**pokalo** = trophy cup; goblet, grail, stemmed glass (especially for church or royal use).

La fiŝeto pasigis sian tutan vivon en bokalo kaj tute ne bezonis Esperanton.  
= The little fish passed its whole life in a bowl and had no need of Esperanto.

Ŝi ricevis pokalon por teniso  
= She got a trophy in tennis.

Li dediĉis sian vivon al serĉado al la Sankta Pokalo.  
= He dedicated his life to the search for the Holy Grail.

**boko** = buck. See [buklo](#).

**Bonan apetiton!**

This expression has no American equivalent. Europeans say it to anyone who is sitting down to eat, or when they walk in on someone already eating, or when leaving a table where people are still eating. The response is to repeat it if the other person is about to eat or otherwise to say Dankon.

**bonvoli**. See [voli](#).

**breto** = shelf. Hence: **bretaro** = “set of shelves.” See [ŝranko](#).

**broso** = a brush. See [kombi](#).

**broŝuro** = (1) unbound pages; (2) paperback book.

*Not to be confused with:*

**faldfolio** = brochure, pamphlet.

**broŝureto** = pamphlet, booklet

**pamfleto** (= **paskvilo**) = libelous, often humorous, often political pamphlet.

Faldfoliojn ni donacos al vi; broŝurojn ni devas vendi.

= We'll give you brochures; we have to sell the booklets.

La libro estas broŝurita; ĝi ne estas tole bindita.

= The book is paper bound; it is not cloth bound.

La pamfletistoj libere kalumniis lin, kaj poste li procesis.

= The pamphleteers freely insulted him, and later he sued.

Mi legis broŝuron dum la flugo.

= I read a paperback during the flight.

**brovo** = brow, eyebrow.

*Not to be confused with:*

**frunto** = brow, forehead.

La ŝvito de la frunto faletis de liaj brovharoj.

= The sweat of his brow dripped from his eyebrows.

Li kuntiras la brovojn kiam ajn mi parolas pri la kunveno en Havano.

= He knits his brows whenever I talk about the meeting in Havana.

**bruego** = noise. See [raketo](#).

**buklo** = curl, ringlet.

*Not to be confused with:*

**buko** = buckle.

**libro** = book.

**dolaro** = buck, dollar.

**boko** = buck

(The word **boko** tends to be used especially of deer and goats, but any male, grass-eating beast may be called a **boko**. More specific terms are words like **vir cervo** = “male deer,” **vir kapro** = “billygoat”; **vir kuniklo** = “male rabbit” etc.).\*

Siajn harojn ŝi kombis en buklojn.  
= She combed her hair into curls.

Bukon grandan la zono havis.  
= The belt had a big buckle.

La bubo libron grandan havas.  
= The boy has a big book.

\*-The “buck” referred to in the expression “pass the buck” (and hence “the buck stops here”) refers to a marker that used to be placed in front of a poker player to indicate that he would be the next dealer. It is short for “buckhorn knife,” which presumably once served as such a marker. I have never learned what such an object is called in any language other than English. The most literal Esperanto translation of the American idiom “pass the buck” would presumably be **pasigi la bokon**, which, unfortunately, is nonsense. **Fordoni la respondecon** = “give away the responsibility” conveys the sense, but obviously lacks color. And phrases like **pludoni la torĉon** = “pass on the torch” seem too positive in tone.

Jen la cervino kaj ŝia boko! = There’s the doe and her buck!

Se buko kosta tridek dolarojn, vi probable estas en Norda Ameriko.  
= If a buckle costs 30 bucks, you are probably in North America.

Se buko kosta tridek buklojn, vi ne estas en Norda Ameriko.  
= If a buckle costs 30 billygoats, you are not in North America.

See also [bokalo](#).

**buko** = buckle. See [buklo](#).

**bulko** = roll.

*Not to be confused with:*

**bulo** = loaf, lump, ball.

**ampleksa** = bulky, large.

**dika** = bulky, plump.

Ni manĝis bulkojn anstataŭ pano.  
= We ate rolls instead of bread.

Li preparis viandbulon el hundaĵo por ŝi, sed ŝi tamen ne edzigis lin.  
= He prepared dog meatloaf for her, but she still didn't marry him.

La reĝa kuristo preparis reĝan panbulon.  
= The royal cook prepared a royal loaf of bread.

Per neĝbulo Daĉjeto senĉapeligis la lernejestron.  
= Little Davey knocked off the principal's hat with a snowball.

**bulo** = loaf. See [bulko](#).

**butikejo** = market (as a set of shops). See [debito](#).

A B C Ĉ D E F G Ĥ H Ĵ I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z

**celo** = goal. The verb therefore means to aim, have as a goal.

Ŝi celis internacian vojaĝon.  
= She was aiming for an international trip.

Li celis lerni la korean.  
= He sought to learn Korean.

La celo estas gajni premion.  
= The goal is to win a prize.

**cifero** = number, written sign for a number. See [nombro](#).

**cinika** = (1) relating to the ancient Greek philosophical school of Cynics (Cinikoj); (2) libertine, indecent, obscene (especially of people).

*Not to be confused with:*

**skeptik(em)a** = cynical, skeptical.

**nekredema** = skeptical, not credulous.

**seniluzia** = without illusions, skeptical, cynical.

\*-The Cynics defied social convention, which accounts for the Esperanto meaning of **cinika** as "indecent." It is the English word which has drifted away from its Greek sense. Note that in Esperanto a **ciniko** is an ancient Greek Cynic. But a libertine (**cinika persono**) is a **cinikulo**.

**Cinikoj** = ancient Greek philosophical school of Cynics.\*



Kial vi ĉiam estas skeptika pri la motivoj de aliaj?  
= Why are you always cynical about others' motives?

Vi estas konstanta skeptikulo.  
= You are ever the skeptic.

Ŝi estas cinikulino! Mi neniam permesos al vi edzinigi ŝin!  
= She is indecent. I will never permit you to marry her!

Antisteno fondis cinikismon.  
= Antisthenes founded Cynicism.

**A B C Ĉ D E F G Ĝ H Ĥ I Ĵ Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z**

**ĉantaĝo = racket, especially blackmail. See [raketo](#).**

**ĉaro = carriage, cart, chariot. See [pramo](#).**

**ĉe = at, in the sense of location.**

**Some speakers use this with street names (where others use sur or en).  
It is also often used to mean “at the home of.”**

Li staris ĉe la fenestro.  
= He was standing at the window.

Ŝi loĝas ĉe la strato Midan Tarir.  
= She lives on Midan Tahrir Street.

Mi estos ĉe mia frato.  
= I'll be at my brother's.

**ĉeesti = attend. See [atendi](#).**

**ĉesi = to cease (doing something). See [halti](#).**

**ĉi = this, here.**

The particle **ĉi** is normally used to make “that” or “all” correlatives into “this” and “all this” correlatives. **Ĉi** may be placed before or after the correlative it refers to, or even slightly separated from it:

tiam = then	ĉi tiam = now
tial = therefore	tial ĉi = for this reason
tiu seĝo = that chair	tiu seĝo ĉi = this chair
ĉiel = in every way	ĉi ĉiel = in all these ways

In general, **ĉi** is omitted except as a matter of emphasis, regardless whether in English we would say “this” or “that.”

Kiu estas tiu Roberto kiu deziras vin edzinigi?  
= Who is this Robert who wants to marry you?

**Ĉi** can also be used with other words, sometimes (preferably) taking the form of a prefix with a hyphen, sometimes simply standing beside the word to which it refers:

ĉi-semajne = this week

ĉi-kune =  
herewith

ĉi matene = this morning

ĉi letero = this  
letter\*

ĉi-koncerne = with respect to this  
matter

Note that languages differ in the meaning of “this” and “that” and hence actual Esperanto usage may differ according to the experiences of the speaker. In many European languages, for example, “this” is used to refer to what has been most recently mentioned rather than what is physically closest to the speaker, a usage also common in Esperanto, but not in English:

\*-The use of **ĉi** directly with a noun occurs but is thought substandard by some.

Ŝi donis kafon, sukeron, kaj lakton; ĉi tiun donacis la bovino.  
= She offered coffee, sugar, and milk, this last contributed by the cow.

\*-In English you would probably get the dollars. In Esperanto you would as likely get the *eruos*. Actually, because the example is a bit contrived to be brief, you might get both amounts. The point is that you can't count on it.

Du dolaroj kuŝas apud mi kaj kvin eŭroj apud vi; tiom ĉi mi donacos al vi.

= Two dollars are here by me and five euros by you; I'll give you this much.\*

**Ĉi** is not a preposition. Its use has no effect on whether what follows takes an accusative (**-n**) marker or not.

Ĉi tiu estas mia amiko.  
= This one [here] is my friend.

Ne manĝu ĉi tiun.

= Don't eat this one [here].

A B C Ĉ D E E G Ĝ H Ĥ I Ĵ J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z

**damaĝo** = damage. See **domaĝo**.

**Dankon!** = Thank you!

Note that thanking, like tipping, handshaking, bill-splitting, and calling people by first or last name, varies from place to place. Should one thank someone for performing his duty? Or for an act motivated simply by family membership? It can be insulting to do so. Chinese do not thank close family members who help each other because to do so would imply that they were outsiders. In general you should expect to be thanked (or not) unexpectedly by foreign Esperantists, while yourself thanking pretty much anything that moves.

The most usual response when someone says **dankon** to you is **ne dankinde** = "it was nothing." Other possible responses include:

Estas nenio.

= It's nothing.

Estas mia plezuro.

= My pleasure.

Plezure.

= With pleasure.

Danko ne necesas; vi ricevos mian fakturon.

= No need for thanks; you'll get my bill.

**daŭri** = to last, endure.

**Hence: daŭrigi** = to continue (something, doing something).

La profesoro daŭrigis sian prelegon.

= The professor continued his lecture.

La profesoro daŭrigis.

= The professor continued.

La profesoro daŭris ĝis la fino de la prelego.

= The professor lasted out the lecture.

Vi daŭre misprononcas mian nomon: ne "Pirozo" sed Piroso!

= You keep mispronouncing my name, not "Pirozo" (heart-burn), Piroso!

**de = by, of, from.**

**In general this preposition is used to show a relationship between two nouns whereby the first depends on or “belongs to” the second.**

la patro de Roberto  
= Robert's father

la letero de la hungarino  
= the Hungarian woman's letter

la leciono de Esperanto  
= the Esperanto lesson

Notice the contrast between **de** and **el**:

Mi venas de Francio.  
= I come from France (i.e., I'm French).

Mi venas el Francio.  
= I am coming from France (i.e., I've been in France).

De kiu planedo vi venas?  
= What planet do you come from?

With passive participles, **de** is used to show agency:

la libro de Mizakawa verkita  
= the book written by Mizakawa

telero purigita de mia filo  
= plate washed by my son

li estis naskita de Sana  
= he was born to Sana

la proponita de li leĝo  
= the law he proposed

See also [fare de](#).

With another preposition, indicating a place, **de** (or **el**) shows motion away from the place:

Li prenis ĝin de sub la lito.

= He took it out from under the bed.

La kato saltis de sur la ŝranko.

= The cat jumped down off the shelf.

Ŝi envenis de ekster la scenejo.

= She entered from off-set.

Note that in the case of sentiments, Esperanto distinguishes **de** from **al** or **kontraŭ** to show the direction of the action or sentiment:

amo de Dio = God's  
love

amo al Dio = love for God

serĉo de Maria =  
Maria's quest

serĉo al Maria = search  
for Maria

Caution: English "of" is not necessarily translated by Esperanto **de**:

Pri kio, diable, vi pensis?

= What on earth were you thinking of?

Mi estas laca pro vojaĝado.

= I am tired of travelling.

**debeto** = debit (~ ŝuldo = debt). See [debeto](#).

**debiti** = to sell retail. See [debeto](#).

**debeto** = market (for something, either at wholesale or at retail).

*Not to be confused with:*

**merkato** = market (as a system of trading).

**butikejo** = market (as a set of shops), shopping mall.

**bazaro** = outdoor market, flea market.

**vendejo** = market, shop.

**ŝuldo** = debt. Hence: **ŝuldanto** = "debtor, one who owes money."

**debeto** = debit. Hence: **debetanto** = "creditor, person who debits the account."

**debiti** = to sell retail.

**grosieri** = to sell wholesale (from **grosiero** = *a wholesaler*).

**debitoro** = debtor (unrelated to **debito**!)\* .

Mi debitis Volapukajn librojn.  
= I retailed Volapük books.

Mi ilin aĉetis pogrande de grosiero en Manilo.  
= I bought them in large lots from a wholesaler in Manila.

Mi celis fariĝi granda debitisto.  
= I sought to become a great retailer.

Ankoraŭ ne ekzistis bona debito por Volapukaj libroj.  
= There still was not a good market for Volapük books.

Mi havis terurajn debetojn sed vivotenis per kreditkartoj.  
= I had terrible debts but lived by credit cards.

Ĉiu kreditkarta kompanio maksimume debetis mian konton.  
= Each credit card company debited my account to the maximum.

Mi estas nun granda debitoro.  
= Now I am a great debtor.

Mi esperas vendi malnovajn ŝuojn en la bazaro.  
= I hope to sell old shoes in the flea market.

**debitoro** = debtor (unrelated to debito!). See [debito](#).

**debuti** = to debut, appear for the first time. See also [debito](#).

La sumoisto de 75 kilogramoj debutis malsukcese.  
= The 165-lb sumo wrestler debuted extremely badly.

Nia debuto, kiel klubo, venis el ekspozicio.  
= Our beginning as a club came from an exhibit.

Mia filo estas debutanto en Esperanto.  
= My son is just getting launched in Esperanto.

\*-If there is a confusing word in this, it is **debitoro**, which is a borrowing into Esperanto that somewhat interferes with the logic of two already very similar roots: **debit-** = “retail” and **debet-** = “debit.” Since almost nobody uses **debitoro**, I recommend ignoring it. After all, a debtor can also be called a **ŝuldanto**.

**deca** = decent. See [vulgara](#).

**defii** = to challenge.

**Not to be confused with:**

**spiti** = to spite, openly defy.

Mia nuna defio estas profunde kompreni komputilojn.

= My current challenge is to understand computers thoroughly.

Li defiis ĉampionon de bokso; nun li kuŝas en paca tombo.

= He challenged the champ in boxing; now he lies in a peaceful tomb.

La de li kuirita manĝo estis por ŝi vera defio!

= The meal he made was a real challenge for her!

Ĉu civilizacio kapablas respondi la defion de homa batalemo?

= Can civilization respond to the challenge of human belligerence?

Adoleskantoj ege tro ofte spitas la gepatrojn, laŭ nia opinio!

= Teenagers much too often defy their parents in our opinion!

Ŝi spitis Panjon per tio, ke ŝi aperis “ĉefeste senveste”.

= She spited Mama by appearing at the party without clothes.

Ŝia konsterna konduto defias la imagon.

= Her shocking conduct defies the imagination.

**deliri** = to rave, be delirious. See [ravi](#).

**demandi** = to ask (someone about something).

**Not to be confused with:**

**peti** = to ask (someone for) something.

**postuli** = to demand, require something (from someone)

Li demandis ĉu necesas labori por havi monon.

= He asked whether it was necessary to work to have money.

Li demandis ĉu mi iros.

= He asked if I would go.

Li petis, ke mi iru.

= He asked me to go.

Ŝi petis, ke li dancu kun ŝi.

= She asked him to dance with her.

Li petis monon de/al sia edzino.

= He asked his wife for money.

Petu lin al mi.<sup>z</sup>

= Ask him [to come] to me.

Por gasto ne petita mankas kulero.<sup>z</sup>

= For an uninvited guest there is no spoon.

Li postulis, ke mi iru.

= He required me to go.

Poste li postulis cent dolarojn.

= Later he demanded a hundred dollars.

Ŝi postulis, ke li dancu kaj kantu antaŭ ol manĝi.

= She required him to dance and sing before eating.

**demisii = to resign. See [rezigni](#).**

**devi = must, to have to.**

**Note that with the -us ending, this is often closer to English “should” or “ought to.”**

Mi devus trinki pli da lakto.

= I should drink more milk.

**Because there is little precise indication of time in the US-mood, some English expressions do not have close Esperanto equivalents.**

Ŝi devis iri hejmen.

= She had to go home.

Ŝi devas esti jam hejme.

= She must already be at home.

Ŝi devus iri hejmen.

= She ought to go home.

= She ought to have gone home.

= She would have to go home.

= She would have to have gone home.



When necessary (rarely!) it is possible to provide greater precision with expressions like **devus esti irinta** = “would have to have gone,” and the like.

Because **devus** means “ought” and other forms of **devi** mean “must,” it is possible to create sentences with both. Although the English translations work fine, the use of **devi** twice in the same Esperanto sentence is likely to be confusing:

Mi devus ne devi esti sklavo.  
= I shouldn’t have to be a slave.

Vi devus ne devi esti devigata.  
= You shouldn’t have to be compelled.

**devi ne = must not & ne devi = (1) need not and (2) must not**

In Esperanto the element **ne**, exactly as in English, is sensitive to word order:

Mi devis ne trinki tiom da viskio.  
= I shouldn’t have drunk so much whiskey.

Mi ne devis trinki tiom da viskio.  
= I didn’t need to drink so much whiskey.

Mi ne devas frue iri hejmen.  
= I don’t need to go home early.

*However*, in some languages a negative form of a word like **devi** means “must not” and never “need not” regardless of word order. This last example —about going home early— risks being misunderstood by some speakers as meaning “I should not” rather than “I need not.” Even Zamenhof himself used **ne dev-** this way:

Blindulo kartojn ne devas ludi.<sup>2</sup>  
= A blind man should not play cards.  
(**Not:** A blind man need not play cards.)

Such speakers (including Zamenhof) are being illogical, perhaps, but the point is that they may also misunderstand you. You can avoid this by rephrasing the sentence to avoid **ne devas** entirely:

Ne necesis, ke mi trinku tiom da viskio.

= It wasn't necessary for me to drink so much whiskey.

Ne necesas, ke mi frue iri hejmen.

= It wasn't necessary for me to drink so much whiskey.

Blindulo kartojn ne ludu.

= A blind man should not play cards.

Potentially even more confusing are sentences in which both verbs are negated even though technically this is perfectly logical:

Mi ne devas ne trinki lakton. = I don't need not to drink milk.

Better: Ne necesas, ke mi evitu lakton.

= I don't need to avoid milk.

**devizo = (1) watchword, motto; (2) currency, foreign exchange.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**rimedo** = device, means, solution, resource.

**aparato** = device, apparatus.

Ili vendas aparatojn por komuniki kun aliplanedanoj.

= They sell devices to communicate with extraterrestrials.

Ilia devizo estas "Trompeblulo naskiĝas ĉiuminute!"

= Their motto is, "There's a sucker born every minute!"

Lia devizo estas "Evitu defiojn!" sed mankas al li la rimedo ĉar por li ĉio estas defio.

= His motto is, "Avoid challenges!" but he lacks the means to do so, since for him everything is a challenge.

See also [sentenco](#).

**diboĉi = to be degenerate and licentious. See [festi](#).**

**difekti = to damage, break..**

***Not to be confused with:***

**malperfektaĵo** = defect, imperfection.

**manko** = defect, lack, missing part.

(See also [manki](#).)

**nenormalaĵo** = defect, abnormality.

**ribeli** = to defect, rebel.

**transfuĝi** = to defect, hide out.

See also [domaĝo](#).

Kiu tro alten rigardon direktas, tiu tre baldaŭ okulojn difektas.<sup>z</sup>  
= He who directs his gaze too high will soon spoil his eye.

Ŝi difektis al si la brakon ludante basbalon.  
= She broke her arm playing baseball.

En ĉiu objekto troviĝas difekto.<sup>z</sup>  
= There is a flaw in every object.

En lia pulmo ni trovis nenormalaĵon.  
= We found an abnormality in his lung.

Ni fine ribelis kontraŭ la klubestro kiam li forlasis precize cent akuzativojn.  
= We at last rebelled against the club president when he left out an even hundred accusatives.

**dik(et)a** = bulky, plump, fat. See [plumpa](#).

**dika** = bulky, plump, fat. See [bulko](#).

**direkti** = guide, govern, direct, manage. See [guverni](#), [kontroli](#).

**diservo** = religious service. See [servo](#).

**disponi** = to have available, have access to.

**Not to be confused with:**

**aranĝi** = arrange, dispose.

**dispozicii** = to arrange, place, set out.

**forigi** = to cast off, put aside.

**forĵeti** = to cast off, throw out.

Vi disponas plenan bibliotekon da Esperantaĵoj.  
= You have a whole library of Esperanto materials available.  
= You have access to a whole library of Esperanto materials.

Mi estos disponebla je la 22a.  
= I'll be available at 10 pm.

Li tute redispoziciis la meblaron de la salono.  
= He completely rearranged the living room furniture.

Ŝi forigis la nelegitan infanon.  
= She disposed of the illegitimate child.

Ne forĵetu mian malnovan perukon; ĝi estas pli komforta ol la nova.  
= Don't throw out my old wig; it's more comfortable than the new one.

**dispozicii** = to arrange, place. See [disponi](#).

**disputo** = argument, disagreement. See [argumento](#).

**dolaro** = dollar.

**Not to be confused with:**

**doloro** = pain. See also [angoro](#).

**dolĉa** = sweet, gentle. See [ĝentila](#).

**dolorego** = horrible pain, agony. See [agonio](#).

**dolori** = to hurt (said of body parts).

**Dolori** is a transitive verb. A thing hurts a person. See also [angoro](#).

**Not to be confused with:**

**vundi** = to hurt, wound.

La sago vundis ŝin.  
= The arrow wounded her.

Mia internaĵo min doloras.<sup>z</sup>  
= My innards hurt.

Min doloras la nepovado helpi vin.<sup>z</sup>  
= The continuing inability to help you hurts me.

Sometimes the object (or even subject) is only implied.

Min doloras ĉi tie, Panjo.<sup>z</sup>  
= I hurt here, Mommy. (subject omitted)

Tia operacio tre doloras.<sup>z</sup>  
= Such an operation hurts a lot. (object omitted)

La vundo estis tre dolora.  
= The wound was very painful.

Since **dolori** is what a body part does to one, to hurt someone else one uses **dolorigi**:

koloroj kiuj dolorigas la okulojn <sup>z</sup>  
= colors that hurt the eyes

Mi dolorigis al mi la piedfingron.  
= I hurt my toe.

La kluba kantado dolorigas la orelojn.  
= The club's singing hurts the ears.

If you want to hurt somebody without specifying a body part, it is more usual to use **vundi**:

Li dolorigis al mi la ŝultron.  
= He hurt my shoulder.

Ŝi vundis min.  
= She hurt me.

**doloro** = pain (physical or psychological). See [dolori](#), [angoro](#).

**domaĝo** = a regrettable loss, actual or potential.

Hence: **domaĝi** = "to fear such a loss," i.e., "to overvalue."

**Not to be confused with:**

**domaĝo** = damage.

(NB: **Domaĝi** usually means to inflict metaphorical or immaterial damage, as against **difekti**, which refers to physically harming something.) See also [difekti](#).

Estas domaĝo, ke mi devas labori  
anstataŭ ricevi heredaĵon.  
= It's a shame that I have to work  
instead of receiving an inheritance.

Post domaĝo venas saĝo.<sup>z</sup>  
= After a loss comes wisdom.

Kia domaĝo!

\*-**Domaĝo** in this expression superficially corresponds with the English "shame" in "What a shame!" or "That's a shame!" This is perhaps its most common use, but it is important *not* to equate it with any other English sense of "shame," such as "She is without shame" = **Mankas al ŝi hontemo**.

= What a loss! What a shame!\*

Ŝi domaĝas la hundidon; li domaĝas ĝian eventualan prezon.

= She worries about losing the puppy; he worries about paying its possible price.

Li nenion aĉetas, ĉar li tro domaĝas monon.

= He buys nothing, for he too much begrudges spending the money.

Ŝi domaĝis nenion por tiu fripono.

= She spared nothing for that jerk.

La herezo multe damaĝis la eklezion.

= The heresy much damaged the church.

Lia kabeado damaĝis la Esperantan klubon.

= His apostasy damaged the Esperanto club.

**dorno** = thorn. See [piki](#).

**dresi** = to train, to tame (wild animals).

**Not to be confused with:**

**vesti** = to dress (a child, a model, oneself).

**vestiĝi** = to get dressed.

**pansi** = to dress (a wound).

**robo** = a dress.

**mantelo** = robe, mantle, coat.

**kamenŝranko** = mantel, mantelpiece.

Kvankam malriĉa, ŝi ĉiam vestis sian infanon pli bone ol aliaj.

= Although poor, she always dressed her child better than others did.

Ŝi portis gajan ruĝan robon en lia funebra solenaĵo.

= She wore a cheerful red dress to his funeral.

Li pansis ŝian kruron tiel kiel eblis en ĝangalo tia.

= He dressed her leg as well as possible in such a jungle.

Leonojn kaj tigrojn mi dresis, sed mia infano daŭre sovaĝemas.

= I've tamed lions and tigers, but my kid is still pretty wild.

La reĝino portu bluan mantelon super blanka robo.

= The queen should wear a blue robe over a white dress.

Kolapsis la kamentranko dum tertremo.

= The mantelpiece collapsed in an earthquake.

See [eduki](#), [kultivi](#).

**drinki** = to drink (something alcoholic) to excess, guzzle, booze it up on (something).

*Not to be confused with:*

**trinki** = to drink (including alcohol in moderation)

The fact that something is alcoholic does not necessarily mean one has to **drinki** it rather than **trinki** it. It is the combination of alcohol and excess that dictates the word **drinki**.

Mi amegas trinki ĉampanon.

= I love drinking champagne.

Veraĵ viroj emas drinki, ĉu ne? Nu, ĉu ne?!

= Real men are inclined to booze it up, aren't they? Well, aren't they?!

Li drinkis bieron ĝis li ekdormis.

= He guzzled beer till he fell asleep.

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**ebena** = flat (not bumpy). See [plata](#), [plato](#).

**eduki** = to bring up, rear, train.

*Not to be confused with:*

**klera** = wise, well informed, cultivated, educated.

Tiu infano Daĉjeto ŝajnas misedukita.

= That Little Davey child seems poorly brought up.

La instruisto strebegis klerigi la sovaĝan infanon.

= The instructor strove mightily to educate the savage child.

See also [varti](#).

**edz(in)o = husband/wife.**

**Hence: geedzoj = one or more married couples. From this are derived three distinct terms for getting married:**

**edziĝi** = to get married (become a husband).

**ediniĝi** = to get married (become a wife).

**geedziĝi** = to get married (become a married couple\*).

Similarly what the cleric or justice of the peace (or the other partner to the marriage!) does is:

\*-Because Esperanto specifies the sex(es) of the person or people being married, it is more precise than English, and **geedziĝo** is necessarily marriage involving people of the opposite sex. In the case of gay marriage, **kunedziĝo** or **kunedziniĝo**, as appropriate, is to be recommended. A life partner is sometimes referred to as a **kunulo**, a more appropriate term if legal marriage is not involved. The term **partnero** is just as ambiguous as its English cognate.

**edzigi** = to marry (make somebody into a husband).

**edzinigi** = to marry (make somebody into a wife).

**geedzigi** = to marry (make people into a married couple\*).

Mi edziĝis en 1996 kaj eksedziĝis la sekvan jaron.  
= I got married in 1996 and divorced the following year.

Miaj gepatroj geedziĝis en 1960.  
= My parents got married in 1960.

La pastro geedzigis ilin.  
= The pastor married them.

Li deziris edzinigi ŝin kaj poste heredi ŝian monon.  
= He wanted to wed her and then inherit her money.

Mi deziras geedziĝi kun vi.  
= I want to marry you.

En tiu eklezio, geja duo rajtas kunedziĝi.  
= In that church a gay couple can get married.



**efektiva = actual, actually existing.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**efika** = effective, efficacious.

**aktuala** = current, up to date, topical, present-day.

Ĉi tiu gazeto estas de hieraŭ; ĝi ne plu estas aktuala.

= This is yesterday's paper; it's not up-to-date any more.

Aktualeco ne influos min; mi studos la latinan!

= That it be current does not bother me; I shall study Latin!

Efektiveco ne influos min; mi studos Volapukon!

= Its existence or not doesn't bother me; I shall study Volapük !

Ŝi estas malefika prelegisto ĉar ŝi parolas nur pri sekso inter ursoj.

= She is an ineffective speaker, for she talks only about sex among bears.

**efektive = really.**

**Much overused in Esperanto. (The more you use this, the more fluent you will seem.) It is used when listening to someone else to show you are in agreement. It can be used to answer a question that contains its own answer. It can be muttered under one's breath in the privacy of empty elevators or shower stalls. Think of it as Esperantists' revenge against our "Mmmm hmmm."**

Li efektive konas neniom de la bengala.

= He actually knows no Bengali at all.

Efektive, li kaj mi ne plu estas bonaj amikoj.

= Actually he and I are no longer good friends.

La prezo estas tre alta. Efektive.

= The price is very high. Mmmm hmmm.

**efektivigi = to bring about, to effect. See [afekti](#).**

**efika = effective. See [efektiva](#).**

**ekde = (1) from the very moment that; (2) from the very beginning of. (The logical but rare opposite of ekde is depost = "after.")**

Ekde kiam mi gravedis mi komencis ŝanĝi mian sintenon pri li.

= From the moment I became pregnant I began to change my mind about him.

Ekde mia infanaĝo mi deziris esti aktoro.  
= From my childhood I wanted to be an actor.

Note that what follows **ekde** is an indicator of a point in time. To indicate a length of time one uses **de** or **jam de**:

Jam de longa tempo mi estas esperantisto.  
= I have been an Esperantist for a long time now.

**eklezio** = church (an organization). See [preĝejo](#).

**ekshibicio** = exhibitionism.

*Not to be confused with:*

**ekspozicio** = exhibit.

Mia patrino ege ĝuis mian ekspozicion.  
= My mother much enjoyed my exhibit.

Mia patrino ege ŝokiĝis je mia ekshibicio.  
= My mother was greatly shocked at my exhibitionism.

Ekshibicio estas psikiatria malsano.  
= Exhibitionism is a psychiatric illness.

**eksiĝi** = resign. See [rezigni](#).

**ekspozicio** = exhibit. See [ekshibicio](#).

**ekvilibri** = to balance, be in equilibrium. See [balanci](#).

**ekvilibrigi** = to bring into balance. See [balanci](#).

**ekzameno** = examination. See [testo](#).

**ekzemplero** = copy (e.g., of a book). See [kopio](#).

**ekzemplo** = example, instance. See [kopio](#), [instanco](#).

**ekzerci** = to exercise (someone). Hence: **ekzerciĝi** ~ **sin ekzerci** = to practice (as the piano). See [praktiko](#).

**el** = from, made from. See also [de](#).

Li revenis el la domo.  
= He came back out of the house again.

Mi venos el Peruo.  
= I'll be coming from Peru.

La kaliko estas el rusa vitro.  
= The goblet is made of Russian glass.

Ni manĝis kompoton el prunoj.  
= We ate a plum compote.

Oni elektis lin el inter 500 viroj kiel la plej belan.  
= They picked him out of 500 men as the best looking.

Fine, timeme, ŝi venis el sub la sofo.  
= Finally, timidly, she came out from under the sofa.

**elekti = choose, pick out.**

**For most speakers there is no significant difference between selekti and elekti. Elekti is the far commoner word. A few speakers reserve selekti to mean “selectively breed.”**

**emerito = emeritus/emerita.**

**The basic word is a noun, obviously generating the adjective emerita, as in emerita profesoro = professor emeritus. A common error (possibly in the process of evolving into standard usage) is the hyperform emeritulo. See [pensio](#).**

**emo = tendency. See [tendenco](#).**

**emocio = an emotion, (an) affect. See [afekti](#).**

**entrepreni = to undertake. See [klopodi](#).**

**enua = bored.**

**Hence: enui = to be bored, enuigi = to bore (someone), enuiga = boring. Contrast [amuzi](#), [tedi](#).**

**envii = to envy. See [ĵaluza](#).**

**esperantisto = a person who both knows and uses Esperanto.**

**Knowing Esperanto without using it, using Esperanto social networks without using Esperanto to do so, or eagerly supporting Esperanto without learning it are all ways of not being an Esperantist. Never having heard of Esperanto is another way.**

**Esperanto = name of a language.**

**The noun Esperanto, its associated adjective Esperanta, and adverb Esperante are all conventionally (but not inevitably) capitalized to differentiate them from the literal words referring not to the language but to hoping:**

Ĉu vi skribis Esperante?  
= Did you write in Esperanto?

Mi parolis Esperanton, esperante ke iu min komprenos.  
= I spoke Esperanto hoping someone would understand me.

Ŝi estas denaska esperanto.  
= She's been a hopeful person from birth.

**esperi = to hope; to hope for.**

En feliĉo ne fieru, en malfeliĉo esperu.<sup>z</sup>  
= Be not proud in happy times but be hopeful in times of despair.

Mi neniel esperis sukceson.<sup>z</sup>  
= I didn't in any way hope for success.

Mi esperas vidi vin sekrete, kara.  
= I hope to see you secretly, my dear.

Mi esperas, ke li alportos\* kukon!  
= I hope he'll bring a cake!

<p>*-Note the use of <b>alportos</b>, not <b>alportu</b>. Esperanto does not routinely use the U-mode after the verb <b>esperi</b>.</p>
---

**esprimi = phrase. See [frazo](#).**

**esti = to be.**

**Used as the first word of a sentence, esti usually corresponds with English "there is/are."**

Estas muso en la kuko!  
= There's a mouse in the cake!

Some speakers begin a sentence with **esti** because they consider the subject to be understood:

Kia vi taksas ĝin? Estas bela!  
= How do you like it? It's beautiful!

Being in a particular place is often expressed by **troviĝi** = "to be found," **trovebli** = "to be findable," or **situi** = "to be situated":

La kunvenejo situas norde de la urbo.  
= The hall is located north of the city.

Troviĝas balenoj en la maro.  
= Whales are found in the sea.

Troveblas filibrooj bruligendaj en ĉiu antaŭurba biblioteko!  
= Vile books we must burn are to be found in every suburban library!

**estonta** = future, eventual. See [eventuala](#).  
**estraro** = board of directors. See [guverni](#).  
**estri** = govern, direct, manage. See [guverni](#).  
**etaĝo** = floor, story.

In Asia and America people number the stories of a building beginning with the ground-level floor as 1. In Europe it is the customary practice to begin numbering with the floor above the one at ground level (presumably dating from a time when the ground-level was dirt, hence floor-less).

Seen another way, Europeans count stairways while we count levels. Esperanto tends to follow the European convention, although the influence of the new influx of Chinese speakers may help to change that. Meanwhile, you have to expect anything. Since elevators in different countries are differently numbered, my best recommendation is to follow whichever logic dictates elevator numbering in the country where you are talking. If you follow the European convention, the term for the “ground floor” (the American “first floor”) is **teretaĝo**. A basement is called a **subetaĝo**.

**eventuala** = possible, in case of need.

*Not to be confused with:*

**estonta** = future, eventual. Hence: **estonteco** = “the future.”

**futuro** = future tense (in grammar).\*

**fin**a = final, last, eventual. Compare **lasta**.

Oni aĉetas asekuran polison pro eventuala katastrofo.

= You buy an insurance policy in case of possible catastrophe.

La aktoro bezonas eventualan anstataŭulon.

= An actor needs an understudy in case of need.

Ĉio fine kadukiĝas.

= Everything eventually goes to pieces.

Morgaŭ estos mia fina tago en Filipino.

= Tomorrow will be my last day in the Philippines.

En la estonteco memoru alporti kreditkartojn al la kongreso.

\*-Although **futuro** refers only to grammar, borrowings from European languages sometimes entangle it in derivatives that having nothing to do with grammar. Thus **futurismo** is “futurism” (a movement in European art).

= In the future remember to bring credit cards to the convention.

Oni parolas pri la estonteco per la futuro.

= We speak of the future by using the future tense.

**eviti = to avoid. See [averti](#).**

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**fakultato = university faculty. See [fakulto](#).**

**fakulto = faculty, capability.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**fakultato** = (1) university faculty; (2) university division, college, or department.

**fako** = (1) department (including university departments); (2) branch (of science, art, etc.); (3) professional specialty; (4) section, compartment (of a drawer or box).

Mankas al la universitato ĝia fakultato.

= The university lacks its faculty.

Perdis la profesoro siajn fakultojn.

= The professor has lost his faculties.

Diplomon belan sed sensignifan mi ricevis de la fakultato pri frenologio.

= I received a beautiful but meaningless diploma from the department of phrenology.

Kio estas via fako, profesoro?

= What is your specialty, professor?

Por butero havas la fridujo specialan fakon.

= The refrigerator has a special compartment for butter.

**faldfolio = brochure, pamphlet. See [broŝuro](#).**

**fanfaroni = to brag, put on the dog, show off.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**fanfaro** = musical fanfare.

Unu fojon oni donas, kaj tutan vivon oni fanfaronas.<sup>z</sup>

= One gives once [to charity] and then brags about it all one's life.

Ŝi fanfaronis] per sia granda riĉeco.<sup>z</sup>

= She really put on the dog.

Li fanfaronis, ke neniu povos lin venki.<sup>z</sup>

= He bragged that no one would be able to beat him.

Rano malfacile fanfaronas.

= It's hard to put on the dog when you're a frog.

**far = by. Contraction of fare de. See [fare de](#).**

**Note that, although far has become relatively common, the Academy of Esperanto, like many Esperantists, (rightly) objects to it because it is irregular to use a verbal stem as a preposition.\***

\*-On the other hand there are instances of prepositions being used as verbal stems (such as **peri** = "to mediate" or **anstataŭi** = "to be a replacement for"). In any case, **far** as a preposition is probably destined to remain with us.

**fare de = by. There is a tendency for de's to pile up in some sentences:**

De ŝi mi ricevis bileton de la ludo de la Filharmonio de Novjorko de la "Simfonio de Printempo" de Ŝalov aranĝita de Volaŝ.

= I received a ticket from her for a performance by the New York Philharmonic of Shalov's "Spring Symphony" arranged by Volash.

The number of such **de**'s can be reduced by recasting the sentence slightly, selecting other prepositions when possible, and switching potentially confusing ones that represent the person who does something to **fare de**:

Ŝi transdonis al mi bileton por la ludo de la Novjorka Filharmonio de la Simfonio pri Printempo fare de Ŝalov aranĝita de Volaŝ.

Caution: A few Esperantists resist using **fare de** except with verbs that include the suffix **-iĝ-**:

La teatraĵo verkiĝis fare de fama mongola poeto.

= The play was written by a famous Mongolian poet.

The limitation seems prissy, especially since there is no very good reason to use **-iĝ-** in such sentences in the first place:

La teatraĵon verkis fama mongola poeto.

= A famous Mongolian poet wrote the play.

**farmi = to farm (land) as a tenant.**

**Hence: farmo = “rental farm land”; farmisto = “tenant farmer.”**

***Not to be confused with:***

**bieno** = farm, real rural estate, property.

**etbieno** = family farm.

**grandbieno** = landed estate.

**kolĥozo** = Soviet collective farm.

**kibuco** = Israeli collective farm.

Li farmas je duono.

= He farms land and gives half the harvest to the landlord.

La proprietulo bienigis al li bonan farmon.

= The owner let him cultivate a good rental plot.

Karlo esperis fariĝi bienisto ĝis li renkontis la dancistinon.

= Charles hoped to become an independent farmer till he met the dancer.

Miaj prapatroj estis etbienistoj en Pensilvanio.

= My ancestors were family farmers in Pennsylvania.

Hispanoj fondis grandbienojn en Meksiko.

= Spaniards founded land grants in Mexico.

**farti = get on, fare.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**farĉi** = to stuff (especially food: pork chops, grape leaves, etc.).

**furzi** = to fart.\* See also [peti](#).

<p>*-Speaking of breaking wind is indelicate in most countries, but the word <b>furzi</b> itself is not a vulgar word.</p>
--

Mi esperas, ke via patro nun pli bone fartas.

= I hope that your father is now better.

Kiam la reĝo bone fartas, la ŝtato bone fartas.

= When the king is well, the state fares well.



Plaĉegas al mi farĉitaj kotletoj de porkaĵo.  
= I'm very fond of stuffed pork chops.

Kiam la imperiestro envenis, la ĉefministro malbonŝance furzis.  
= When the emperor came in, the chief minister unfortunately broke wind.

Tiu triviala stultulo ne parolas; li nur furzas per la buŝo!  
= That vulgar idiot doesn't talk; he just farts through his mouth!

**fatalo = bad luck, fell fate.**

**Hence: fatala = “fated, unlucky, ill-starred.” The less common term fato = “ill fate” is used identically.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**mortiga = fatal.**

Super ni regas neŝanĝebla fatalo.<sup>z</sup>  
= Over us there reigns an immutable bad fate.

Kia fatala kaj malagrable eraro!<sup>z</sup>  
= What an unlucky and disagreeable error!

En fatala falo, ŝi rompis al si la brakon.  
= In an unlucky fall she broke her arm.

Li estis tro fatalista por labori por Esperanto.  
= He was too fatalistic to work for Esperanto.

Ŝi preparis mortigan trinkaĵon.  
= She prepared a fatal drink.

See also [sorto](#) = “luck, fate” under [speco](#).

**favorata = favored.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**plej ŝatata = favorite, best liked.**

**preferata = favorite, preferred.**

**plej amata = favorite, best loved.**

**favori = to be favorable toward; to favor.**

La poliestro favoris sian filon.  
= The police chief favored his son.

Malsaĝulon favoras feliĉo.<sup>2</sup>  
= Felicity favors the foolish.

Li estos favoranto de la nova leĝo.  
= He will be a supporter of the new law.

Glaciaĵo estas mia preferata manĝaĵo.  
= Ice cream is my favorite food.

Ŝi estis la plej ŝatata aktorino de la lando.  
= She was the country's favorite actress.

**favori** = to be favorable toward; to favor. See [favorata](#).

**Fek!** = Shit! See [ve](#).

**felo** = pelt. See [pelto](#).

**festeni** = to make merry. See [festi](#).

**festi** = to fête, to honor (someone) with a party or dinner. Hence: **festi** = "dinner party," "reception."

**Not to be confused with:**

**festeni** = to feast, to have a party, to attend a party. Hence: **festeno** = "a gala banquet," "dinner party."

**diboĉi** = to make excessively merry, to attend orgies, to be profligate, degenerate, licentious, and dissolute.

**festivalo** = festival, as in "film festival."

**festono** = festoon.

**bankedo** = formal banquet.

**akcepto** = reception. From **akcepti** = "to receive formally."

Por la festeno oni ornamis la akceptejon per festonoj.  
= For the banquet they decorated the reception hall with festoons.

Ni festis lin post lia sukcesoplena prelego pri verdaj insektoj.  
= We fêted him after his successful lecture about green bugs.

Kelkaj venas por studi Esperanton, aliaj nur por diboĉi!  
= Some come to study Esperanto, others only to yuk it up.

Mi festenis dum vespero kaj diboĉis ĝis mateno.  
= I went to a dinner party in the evening and made merry till morning.

Ni festis ŝin pro la plej grava kontribuo al la klubo en 2001.  
= We fêted her for 2001's most important contribution to the club.

Ĉiun decembron la klubo havas bankedon. Ne festenon, nur bankedon.  
= Each December the club has a banquet. Not a party, just a banquet.

**festivalo** = festival, as in “film festival.” See [festi](#).

**festono** = festoon. See [festi](#).

**Fik!** = Fuck! See [ve](#).

**fina** = final, last, ultimate; eventual. See [lasta](#), [eventuala](#).

**fini** = to finish (something, doing something). See [halti](#).

**finno** = Finn.

**A citizen of Finland is a finno. This avoids confusion with fino = “end.”**

**Similarly the country is Finnlando, not**

**finlando = “the end place.” The Finnish-derived word Suomio is gradually coming into limited use as the name of the country, but Finnlando remains more usual.\***

<p>*-Finnujo and Finnio are theoretically possible, but I have never seen them.</p>
---

**flata** = flattering. See [plata](#).

**flaŭro** = flora. See [floro](#).

**floro** = flower.

***Not to be confused with:***

**flaŭro** = flora.

La flaŭro de la suda poluso produktas malmultajn florojn.

= The flora of the South Pole produces few flowers.

**fojo** = occasion, time (as in “one time” or “next time”). This gives the adverb foje, which usually means “once” but for some speakers means “sometimes.”

***Not to be confused with:***

**tempo** = time (as in “time of day”).

Du fojojn ŝi penis ŝteli la kronon.

= Twice she tried to steal the crown.

Dufoje ŝi penis ŝteli la kronon.  
= Twice she tried to steal the crown.

Foje mi vizitis ŝin.  
= I once visited her.

Foje oni diras, ke li estos prezidento.  
= Sometimes they say he'll be president.

See also [okazo](#) = "opportunity, occasion" under instanco.

**fondo = founding, from fondi = to found.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**fondaĵo = fondumo** = charitable foundation.

**fonduso** = fund, charitable trust.

**fonto** = (1) fountain, spring; (2) font, origin.

**fontano** = fountain.

**fundo** = bottom, base, underside; innermost part (think of "profound").

**fono** = background.

**literaro** = typefont.

Li fondis fonduson.  
= He established a trust.

En la fono videblis bela fontano.  
= A beautiful fountain was visible in the background.

Ŝi estas fonto de misinformo.  
= She is a font of misinformation.

Ĝi loĝas en la fundo de la maro.  
= It dwells at the bottom of the sea.

Italio famas pro fontanoj.  
= Italy is famous for fountains.

La fondumo "Amikoj de Komiksoj" prizorgas la monon de la fonduso

“Zambalzam.”

= The Friends of Comic Books foundation manages the money in the Zambalm fund.

**fonduso** = fund, charitable trust. See [fondo](#).

**fono** = background. See [fondo](#).

**fonto** = (1) fountain, spring; (2) font, origin. See [fondo](#).

**for** = distant, away.

This particle functions as an adverb or a prefix. Because it is not formed in -e like derived adverbs, it does not require a final -n when it shows movement:

Ŝi iris for ĉagrenite.

= She went away, vexed.

Li forestos morgaŭ.

= He'll be away tomorrow.

Irena nun estas for.

= Irene is away at present.

**fraŭl(in)o** = miss/master. See also [sinjor\(in\)o](#).

Since the distinction between **fraŭlino** and **sinjorino** usually depends upon whether a woman is married (as we'll see below) the word **fraŭlo**, although not normally used as a title for men (any more than “master” is in English), is sometimes used to mean “bachelor,” regardless of age:

Ĉu li estas fraŭlo?

= “Is he single?”

For some Esperantists, **sinjorino** and **fraŭlino** straightforwardly distinguish married from unmarried women. For others, however, it would

be insulting to address a middle-aged or elderly woman as **fraŭlino**, and she is **sinjorino** regardless of marital state.\* **Sinjorino** in that sense corresponds to American “ma’am,” in addition to its use in the sense of English “Mrs,” although it is much higher in frequency than “ma’am.”

*-Cf. <i>madame</i> in French, <i>dama</i> in Spanish, or <i>nüshi</i> in Chinese.
--

In America we have traditionally tended to use “Miss” for stage names, regardless of the age or marital status of the stage star. That usage is not standardized in Esperanto.

Accordingly: you are always on shaky ground selecting between **fraŭlino** and **sinjorino** if you don't know what a woman prefers to be called.\* One logic that is at least defensible, if rarely followed, is to use **sinjorino** for all women on the grounds that **sinjoro** is usually used for all men. A few speakers simply say **-ino**, which is potentially interpretable as a bit abrupt. Another approach is to call a woman **samidean(in)o** = "fellow-Esperantist" and leave it at that. (If she is not a fellow-Esperantist, you presumably would not be speaking Esperanto to her!)

\*-Some people, not understanding that usage is not standardized and does not always correspond to what they are used to, are prepared to make that ground even shakier!

**frazo = sentence.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**frazero** = phrase.

**esprimo** = expression, turn of phrase, phrase.

Ĉu ĉiu frazo havas verbon?

= Does every sentence have a verb?

Post prepozicio venas substantiva esprimo.

= After a preposition comes a noun phrase.

"Fundamenta Krestomatio!" povas esti blasfema esprimo.

= "Basic Chrestomathy!" can be a swear word.

Ŝia esprimo de amo al mi vere kortuŝis, sed indikis nur, ke ŝi estas malsata ĉar la aliaj katoj formanĝis jam ĉion.

= Her expression of love for me was really touching, but indicated

= only that she was hungry, since the other cats had already

= eaten everything up.

**freneza = crazy. See [ravi](#).**

**frunto = brow. See [brovo](#).**

**fundo = bottom, base, underside; innermost part. See [fondo](#).**

**funebro = mourning (sentiment or costume).**

Kiam okazos la funebra rito?

= When will the funeral take place?

Vi portas funebron, eble pro la patrino?<sup>z</sup>  
= You wear mourning, perhaps for your mother?

La ĉinoj funebras tri jarojn pro la gepatroj.  
= The Chinese go into mourning for three years for their parents.

Ili dungis tri funebristojn.  
= They hired three professional mourners.

Akceptu mian funebran saluton!<sup>z</sup>  
= Accept my condolences.

Li funebre ridetis.  
= He smiled mournfully.

**furzi = to fart. See [farti](#).**

**fuŝi = to mess (something) up. Hence: fuŝ! = rats! See [ve](#).**

Ŝi probable fuŝos la ekzamenon.  
= She'll probably screw up the exam.

Vi tute fuŝis mian vesperon.  
= You have utterly ruined my evening.

Lia amafero ege fuŝiĝis.  
= His love affair went utterly to pieces.

Ho fuŝ! Mi forgesis la monon.  
= Oh bother! I forgot the money.

Sometimes **fuŝ-** is used almost as a prefix:

Mi estas fuŝfotografisto.  
= I am an amateur photographer.

Savu nin de fuŝtenoruloj.  
= Save us from amateur tenors.

**futuro = future tense (in grammar). See [eventuala](#).**

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

\*-A **gejo** is a homosexual person. The root

**gaja = jolly, festive, high spirited, carefree.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**geja** = homosexual, gay.\*

Ili estas gegejoj. Ankaŭ ŝi estas geja.  
= They are gays. She is also gay.

La gaja junulo plej amis junulinojn blondajn.  
= The carefree youth loved young blondes best.

Ŝi vestis sin en gajaj koloroj.  
= She dressed in cheerful colors.

Gaja gejo estis li.  
= He was a carefree gay guy.

**gajni = earn or win (money).**

Most Esperantists use this verb to mean “earn.” Dictionaries tend to ignore that sense, even though it accounts for by far the most occurrences of **gajni** in actual speech. A few speakers prefer to use **lukri** = “to earn,” thereby reserving **gajni** for the specific sense of winning money, especially in a lottery. The term **perlabori** was used in earlier Esperanto to mean “earn” but is now largely obsolete.

Li gajnis po 40.000 pesetojn semajne.  
= He earned/won 40,000 pesetas each week.

Li lukris po 40.000 pesetojn semajne.  
= He earned 40,000 pesetas each week.

Mi aĉetis loterian bileton kaj jes gajnis!  
= I bought a lottery ticket and actually won!

**gardi = to guard; keep.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ŝirmi** = shield, protect, guard.

**protekti** = protect, especially through one’s influence or authority.

does not normally occur as a prefix, but, mostly when joking, a few Esperantists use **gej--** as a prefix anyway, meaning homosexual. Thus the contrast between, say, **gekamaradoj** and **gejkamaradoj** depends entirely upon the contrast between **-e-** and **-ej-**. If you are one of those people who has been inattentively pronouncing them the same way all these years, be prepared to use the suffix **ge-** with circumspection or else get with it on correcting your pronunciation!



Caution: **Gardi** has a much wider range of meaning than English “guard,” importantly including the idea of keeping. However, it means specifically keeping something without damaging it. There is no exact Esperanto equivalent of “keep” with the English implication of ownership. Other Esperanto words that overlap with “keep” include **teni** = hold, **reteni** = retain, and **konservi** = preserve.

Skatoleto en kiu oni tenas cigarojn estas cigarujo.<sup>z</sup>  
= A box in which one keeps cigars is a cigarbox.

Li tenas hoteleton en Halifakso.  
= He keeps a hotel in Halifax.

Gardu la tombon, por ke oni ne ŝtelu la kadavron kaj juvelojn!  
= Guard the tomb so that no one will steal the body and jewels!

Ŝirmu la infanon kontraŭ la malvarma vento.  
= Guard the child against the cold draft.

La rabokaptistoj tenadas ankoraŭ la aviadilon kaj pasaĝerojn.  
= The hijackers are still holding the plane and passengers.

Vi rajtas gardi la libron; mi ne plu bezonas ĝin.  
= You may keep the book; I don't need it any more.

Bonvolu reteni la libron; mi jam finlegis ĝin.  
= Please keep the book; I've finished reading it already.

Kiun reĝo protektas, tiun ministro elektas.<sup>z</sup>  
= [Him] whom the king protects, the minister selects.

Estu mia genio protektanta kontraŭ tiu ĉi fremdulo.<sup>z</sup>  
= Be my protecting genius against this stranger.

**gaso** = gas (as against liquid).

**benzino** = gasoline (for automobiles).

**ligroino** = benzine.

**benzeno**\* = benzene.

\*-Benzene, or benzol, Esperanto **benzeno**, (or C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>) is a clear, colorless, flammable liquid used to make DDT, detergents, insecticides, etc. Benzine, or ligroin, Esperanto **ligroino**, is a mixture of hydrocarbons, obtained by distillation and used as a solvent. Esperanto **benzino** is

**petrolo** = petroleum.

**gazo** = gauze.

not benzine/ligroin, but rather gasoline,  
the common auto fuel.

La mondo dependas de Arabio por petrolo.  
= The world depends on Arabia for oil.

La kuracisto dependas de flegisto por gazo.  
= The physician depends on nurse for gauze.

Lavu ĝin per benzeno.  
= Wash it with benzene.

Aŭto kun benzino, kaj adiaŭ al edzino!  
= A car well gassed and the wife is past.

**gazetaro** = “the press.” See [ĵurnalo](#), [medio](#).

**gazeto** = periodical, including magazines & newspapers. See [ĵurnalo](#).

**gazo** = gauze. See [gaso](#).

**gazono** = decorative lawn. See [herbo](#).

**geja** = homosexual. See [gaja](#).

**gepatroj** = parents. See [parenco](#).

**gerilo** = guerilla war.

Hence: **gerilano gerilisto** = guerilla. A partial synonym is [makisano](#).

*Not to be confused with:*

**gorilo** = gorilla.

La gerilanoj mortigis gorilojn en la nacia parko kaj vendis la viandon.  
= The guerillas killed gorillas in the national park and sold the meat.

**getto** = ghetto.

**This is usually written with a double T, although the pronunciation is not necessarily affected by this.\* It means ghetto in the sense of “Jewish quarter.” American English now extends the word “ghetto” to refer to any sort of socially closed ethnic enclave. To speak of the “Black ghetto” in Los Angeles is not particularly metaphorical in English, but is more strongly so in Esperanto, where listeners might be led to believe that a negra getto was where Black Jews lived!**

\*-Many speakers, following the spelling, pause between the two Ts to emphasize the distinction from the word **geto**. **Geto**, however, does not exist! (Japanese wooden clogs, called *geta* in Japanese and English, are **getaoj** in Esperanto.) See note at [piĉo](#).

***Not to be confused with:***

**kvartalo** = a district of a city.

Zamenhof loĝis en la getto.  
= Zamenhof lived in the ghetto.

Kiel li povis loĝi en laĝeto?  
= How could he live in a lake?

Li parolis la jidan, la lingvon de tiu kvartalo.  
= He spoke Yiddish, the language of that district.

Ĉu do la fiŝoj parolis la jidan?  
= And so the fish spoke Yiddish then?

**giĉeto** = sales counter, sales window. See [kontoro](#).

**gimnazio** = high school (especially in German-speaking countries).

***Not to be confused with:***

**liceo** = high school (especially in French-speaking countries).\*

**gimnastikejo** = gymnasium.

**sportejo** = gymnasium, stadium.

Gimnazianoj plej rapide progresas en Esperanto.  
= High school kids make fastest progress in Esperanto.

En gimnastikejo mi studis Esperanton, ĉar oni ĉiam sidigis min.  
= I studied Esperanto in the gym because they always made me sit down.

La gimnastikejo estis lia dua hejmo.  
= The gym was his second home.

\*-Since human institutions differ so much from one society to another, there is no easy way to define terms for them that can be used rigorously in all places. As generic terms, **elementa lernejo** = “elementary school” usually refers to the first six years or so of school; **mezlernejo** = “middle school” usually refers to junior high school and high school, roughly grades 7 to 12 (and hence largely overlaps with **gimnazio** and **liceo**), and **alta lernejo**, literally “high school” corresponds with our college (grades 13 and above), sometimes implying technical college rather than university. The word **universitato** = “university” is used roughly as in English in most countries. Students at a university are called **studentoj**. Those at a lower level are referred to as **lernantoj** = “learners, pupils.”

**glata** = smooth. See [plata](#).

**gorilo** = gorilla. See [gerilo](#).

**graflando** = territory ruled by a count, county. See [kantono](#).

**granda** = large, big. See [larĝa](#).

**graso** = oil, fat.

Hence: **grasa** = “containing a lot of fat or oil” (sometimes including fat people!).

*Not to be confused with:*

**dika** = (1) thick; (2) stout, fat (of people or animals)\*.

**grejso** = sandstone.

**greso** = grazing material, pasturage.

Hence **engresigi** = “to put out to pasture.”

Skulptaĵo el grejso facile difektiĝas.

= A sandstone sculpture is easily damaged.

Li sendis la grasajn ŝafojn en la gresejon.

= He sent the fat sheep into the pasture.

Malmultaj dikiĝis per Esperantaj bankedoj.

= Few people have grown fat off of Esperanto banquets.

**grejso** = sandstone. See [graso](#).

**greko** = a modern Greek.

*Not to be confused with:*

**heleno** = an ancient Greek.

La helenoj estis la prapatroj de la grekoj.

= The ancient Greeks were ancestors of the modern Greeks.

\*-Fat people have conventionally been described by the word **dika** = “fat,” since saying they were **grasaj** could also mean they were greasy. Zamenhof sometimes used the word **grasdika**, which seems a bit much. Today the more polite (even conspicuously polite) terms **korpulenta** = “corpulent” and **korpulentulo** = “corpulent person” are considered preferable by some, but **dika** will probably remain the most common term.

**greso** = grazing material, pasturage. See [graso](#).

**grilo** = cricket. See [lokusto](#).

**grosieri** = to sell wholesale. See [debito](#).

**groto** = grotto. See [kavo](#).

**gruo** = crane (both bird and machine). See [krano](#).

**guverni** = be governess or tutor.

*Not to be confused with:*

**estri** = govern, direct, manage. (Hence: **estraro** = board of directors.)

**direkti** = govern, direct, manage.

**regi** = to govern, direct, manage, reign over; to understand (a subject); to speak (a language) well. (Hence: **registaro** = government.)

La guvernanto vipis la infanon.  
= The tutor whipped the child.

La registaro malpermesis politikajn opiniojn en ret-sitejoj.  
= The government forbade political opinions in web sites.

Li ja bone regis la landon.  
= Indeed he ruled the land well.

Ŝi mirinde regas la araban.  
= She has a marvelous command of Arabic.

Vi tre bone regas la tajan.  
= You have a very good command of Thai.

Li sukcese regis nek la infanon nek sian koleron.  
= He succeeded in controlling neither the child nor his anger.

Mi estas la klubestro kaj mi do estras ĝin!  
= I am the president of the club and so I run it.

Pardonu, sinjoro! Nur estraranoj rajtas voĉdoni.  
= Excuse me, sir! Only board members may vote.

**gvardio** = guard, as in “Swiss Guard” or “Red Guard”; a single guardsman is a **gvardiano**. Compare [polico](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)  
**ĝentila** = polite, genteel.

***Not to be confused with:***

**milda** = gentle, mild.

**dolĉa** = sweet, gentle; (of water) sweet, fresh, not salty.

Post la vespermanĝo, ŝia patro ĉiam fariĝis tre milda.

= After supper, her father always became very gentle.

Li ĝentile sed severe kondamnis la pekinton al la morto.

= He politely but severely condemned the sinner to death.

En la montoj ili trovis lagon dolĉan.

= In the mountains they found a freshwater lake.

Portu al mi aldonan bieron, dolĉulin'!.

= Bring me another beer, sweetheart.

**ĝis** = until, till; by; as much as.

Li restos ĝis morgaŭ.

= He'll stay till tomorrow.

Mi lamentos ĝis vi revenos.

= I'll lament till you return.

Ĝi devos esti preta ĝis morgaŭ.

= It will have to be ready by tomorrow.

Oni vendis ĝis mil biletojn.

= They sold as many as 1000 tickets.

Because **ĝis** can refer both to a point in time (*by* tomorrow) and to an extent of time (*till* tomorrow), some sentences are ambiguous:

Ŝi kantos ĝis la tagiĝo.

= She'll sing by dawn. / She'll sing until dawn.

Mi preparos la prelegon ĝis morgaŭ

= I'll prepare the speech by/until tomorrow.

**Ĝis** is sometimes used to refer to space.

Ili flugis ĝis Tokio.

= They flew as far as Tokyo.

**Ĝis** is sometimes also used as a prefix:

Li estis ĝisosta esperantisto.

= He was an Esperantist down to his bones.

Mi perdis la ĝis-berlinan bileton.

= I lost the ticket to Berlin.

For some reason, one also finds frequent mistakes linked to the use of this word, even in books edited by reputable publishers:

La plimulto de la taskoj devas esti preta ĝis hieraŭ.

= The majority of the jobs must be ready by yesterday.  
(should be past tense?)

[La] densarbara zono kontinuas ĝis la okuloj povis atingi...

= The zone of dense trees continues until the eye could see.  
(should be **ĝis tie kie** = “as far as”?)

Ĝis mi vivos mi helpos al vi kaj via familio.

= I shall help you and your family until I live.  
(should be **dum** = “while”?)

For the foreseeable future, be prepared for occasional guesswork.

**Ĝis (la) revido = Goodbye.**

**This is sometimes shortened to ĝis la or simply ĝis. If the speakers will never meet again or are parting for a very long time, they may say adiaŭ instead. This produces the verb adiaŭi = “to take leave of.”**

**ĝusta = correct.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**justa** = fair, just.

**precize** = exactly, just.

**korekta** = relating to correction.\*

**tuj** = immediately, just.

**ĵus** = a moment ago, just.

**apenaŭ** = barely, just.

\*-The basic form is the verb **korekti** = “to correct.” Accordingly the adjective **korekta** ought to mean “corrective,” as in **la korektaj procezoj** = “the procedures for making corrections.” **Korekta** more often turns up with the English sense of “correct,” however, and doesn’t seem to bother anybody.

**nur** = merely, just.

Ŝi estas la sola persono kiu ĝuste respondis.  
= She is the only person who replied correctly.

Via kalkulo estas malĝusta—jen la eraro!  
= Your calculation is incorrect—here's the mistake!

Ĉu vi do postulas monon? Ĝuste.  
= So are you then demanding money? Exactly.

La tribunalo estas ĉiam justa, ĉar ĝuste tiel la juristoj difinas justecon.  
= The court is always just, since that is just how jurists define justice.

La sorĉisto ĵus envenis; venu tuj!  
= The sorcerer just arrived; come quick!

Li donis al mi trinkmonon de nur kvin enoj!  
= He gave me a tip of just five yen!

**A B C Ĉ D E F G Ĝ H Ĥ I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z**

**halo (1) = hall, large room.**

**Not to be confused with:**

**haloo** = halo (in astronomy); a halo over a saint is an **aŭreolo**\*

**alo** = the side or wing of something, including an airplane, a building, or even a nose!

\*-An **aŭreolo** radiates from the head of a sainted personage represented in art. A similar radiance from the body is a **nimbo**.

**alero** = awning, eave, or other roof overhang.

**salo** = salt.

Dum la pluvo ŝi staris sub la alero.  
= In the rain she stood under the awning.

La danca halo estas en la alia alo.  
= The dance hall is in the other wing.

Ĉirkaŭ la luno ni vidis haloon.  
= We saw a halo around the moon.



Li portis aŭreolon, do mi sciis, ke li estas sanktulo.  
= He was wearing a halo, so I knew he was a saint.

**halo (2) = yoo-hoo; (by telephone) = hello?**

**Halo should be used sparingly. It is proper Esperanto only to answer the telephone. It is *not* used in ordinary conversation to mean “hello,” which is simply Saluton! The English word “hello,” from which halo is derived, has penetrated various other**

**languages with a variety of meanings and connotations. In France *allô* is used to answer telephones and to precede announcements on public address systems. In Palestine *halo* is shouted urgently by cart-pullers at people they are about to run down. In India “hello” is used by street vendors to attract the attention of obviously foreign tourists to whatever they are selling. In Taiwan *halo* is shouted at tourists by small children to see if they will react (like tapping the glass on the snake cage in the zoo).<sup>\*</sup> In short, outside the English-speaking world, *halo* is rarely very polite, and Esperantists from some countries may not take well to being hailed with a hearty halo. Others may try to hail you that way without thinking it particularly insulting. Give them the benefit of the doubt (or a piece of your mind if you must), but avoid this word yourself except for telephones.**

**haloo = halo (in astronomy). See also [halo](#).**

**halti = come to a halt.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ĉesi = to cease (doing something).**

**ĉesigi = to discontinue (something).**

**fini = to finish (something, doing something).**

**Haltu, ŝtelisto!**

**= Stop, thief!**

**Haltis nekonata sorĉisto ĉe la palaca pordego.**

**= There stopped an unknown sorcerer at the great gate of the palace.**

**Ĉesu kanti, mi petegas!**

\*-It is interchangeable in this usage with vulgar, rhymed catcalls. Because these other catcalls are noun phrases, *halo* may be evolving into a Chinese slang noun, meaning roughly “grubby foreigner.” I have heard children say the Chinese equivalent of **Jen revenas la halooj!** = “Here come the hellos again!”

= Stop singing, I beg of you!

Ĉu li neniam finos prelegi?

= Will he never stop talking?

Ili decidis ĉesigi sian laboron por Volapuko.

= They decided to stop their work for Volapük .

Ili ĉesis labori por Volapuko.

= They stopped working for Volapük .

**hano = an ethnic Chinese.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ĥano** = a khan (leader of Turkish, Tartar, or Mongol tribe).

**kano** = cane, as in sugar cane.

**Ĉinio** = China.

China has, like most nations, a number of ethnic groups living in it, of which by far the most numerous are the **hanoj** = Han, or “ethnic Chinese.” In principle a **ĉino** is a citizen of China and a **hano** is a member of the Han ethnic group anywhere in the world. In practice, the term **Ĉino** predominates in both senses when the distinction is not the focus of discussion.

La ĥano batigis la hanon per kano.

= The khan had the Chinese caned.

En Vankuvero loĝas multaj ĉinoj.

= Many Chinese live in Vancouver.

En Vankuvero loĝas multaj hanoj.

= Many Chinese live in Vancouver.

**haro = a hair.**

**To speak of a group of hairs (the hair on one’s head, the fur on an animal, etc.) one must use the plural haroj = “fur, hair” or the collective hararo = “fur, hair.” See also [pelto](#), [vila](#).**

Kombu viajn harojn; vi timigus furion!

= Comb your hair; you’d frighten a fury!

Mia frato Esav estas ja homo harkovrita, kaj mi estas homo glata.<sup>z</sup>

= Esau my brother is a hairy man, and I am a smooth man.

**heleno** = an ancient Greek. See [greko](#).

**helpi** = to help.

**In Esperanto you can help someone (or something) or you can help to someone (or something). However, it is most usual to help to someone. The following examples are all from Zamenhof.**

Helpu al la sinjoro porti lian keston.<sup>Z</sup>

= Help the gentleman carry his chest.

Li tre multe helpis al la vastiĝo de tiu lingvo.<sup>Z</sup>

= He greatly helped the spread of that language.

Min helpu forigi la erarojn.<sup>Z</sup>

= Help me get the errors out.

Pli helpas guto da feliĉo ol barelo da saĝo.<sup>Z</sup>

= A drop of happiness helps more than a barrel of wisdom.

Kion helpas al mi la beleco?<sup>Z</sup>

= What good does beauty do me?

Kontraŭ doloro helpas bona humoro.<sup>Z</sup>

= Good spirits help against grief.

Ĉiuj esperantistoj volonte helpados la organizantan komitaton per siaj konsiloj.<sup>Z</sup>

= All Esperantists will willingly help the organizing committee with their advice.

**herbo** = grass (one plant or blade of grass).

**A field or lawn of grass is herbaro.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**drogherbo** = medicinal herb.

**aromherbo** = seasoning herb.

**gazono ~ razeno** = decorative lawn.

**horizontala** = horizontal. See [plata](#).

**humoro** = humor (emotional state, body fluid). See [humuro](#).

**humuro** = humor (wit).

*Not to be confused with:*

**humoro** = humor (emotional state, mood; body fluid).

Post la bankedo okazis distra programo ege humura.

= After the banquet came a hugely humorous variety show.

Al miaj recenzistoj ĉiam mankas senso de humuro.

= My reviewers never have a sense of humor.

Li estas persono de melankolia humoro.

= He is a person of melancholy moods.

Mia avino ankoraŭ kredas je medicino de la kvar humoroj.

= My grandmother still believes in medicine based on the four humors.

Troviĝas du ridetoj en la vort' "humuro"; sed en "humor" nur unu, kaj apude moro.

= Two smiles (the letter U) are in the word "humuro," though in "humor" only one plus one exotic custom (**moro**).

[A](#)[B](#)[C](#)[Ĉ](#)[D](#)[E](#)[F](#)[G](#)[Ĝ](#)[H](#)[Ĥ](#)[I](#)[J](#)[Ĵ](#)[K](#)[L](#)[M](#)[N](#)[O](#)[P](#)[R](#)[S](#)[Ŝ](#)[T](#)[U](#)[V](#)[Z](#)

**ĥano** = a khan (leader of Turkish, Tartar, or Mongol tribe). See [hano](#).

[A](#)[B](#)[C](#)[Ĉ](#)[D](#)[E](#)[F](#)[G](#)[Ĝ](#)[H](#)[Ĥ](#)[I](#)[J](#)[Ĵ](#)[K](#)[L](#)[M](#)[N](#)[O](#)[P](#)[R](#)[S](#)[Ŝ](#)[T](#)[U](#)[V](#)[Z](#)

**implici** = imply.

*Not to be confused with:*

**impliki** = implicate, entangle.

Tiu argumento implicas la neekziston de Dio.

= That argument implies the non-existence of God.

La drako sin implikis en la reto.

= The dragon entangled itself in the net.

Ne impliku min en via krimo!

= Don't implicate me in your crime!

**impliki** = implicate, entangle. See [implici](#).

**imposti** = to tax. See [taksi](#).

**inciti** = to incite, stir up, agitate. See [inici](#).

**influi** = to affect, influence. See [afekti](#).

**inici** = to initiate, indoctrinate (into a society).

***Not to be confused with:***

**inciti** = to incite, stir up, agitate.

**iniciati** = to initiate, be the first to do.

Li ankoraŭ ne estas incito. Ne parolu antaŭ li!  
= He is not an initiate yet. Don't talk in front of him!

Kiu iniciatis la uzon de la esprimo "krokodili"?  
= Who initiated the use of the expression "to crocodile"?

... por mi estis ĝojo inciti la hundon  
= ... for me it was fun to rile up the dog.

Li incitis grandan popolamason, kiu bruligis ŝian palacon.  
= He stirred up a great crowd, which fire to her palace.

**instanco** = authority, the authorities (normally used in the plural).

***Not to be confused with:***

**ekzemplo** = example, instance.

**okazo** = occasion, opportunity, instance.

La instancoj faras nur malrapide decidojn.  
= The authorities make decisions only slowly.

Vi devas montri vian pasporton al ses instancojn ĉi tie.  
= You have to show your passport to six authorities here.

Tio, ke li bruligas eĉ akvon estas ekzemplo de lia kuira malkapablo.  
= That he burns even water is an example of his culinary incompetence.

Ŝi neniam havis okazon lerni la sanskritan.  
= She never had the chance to study Sanskrit.

Mi kaptis la okazon kaj ŝtelis la du anasojn.  
= I took advantage of the opportunity and stole the two ducks.

**insulti = yell at, abuse, revile.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ofendi** = insult, offend.

(The medical technical term “insult” is **vundi** in Esperanto.)

Ŝia silento ofendis min.

= Her silence insulted me.

Li laŭte insultis la hundidon kiam ĝi urinis sur lian ŝuon.

= He yelled loudly at the puppy when it wet on his shoe.

**interesi = to interest.**

**The noun *intereso* is also used for a financial interest, conflicts of interest, etc.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**interezo** = interest rate.

Tio interesis ŝin.

= That interested her.

Tio interesis al ŝi.

= That interested her.

Antaŭ ol subskribi, nepre enketu pri la interezo.

= Before signing, be sure to ask about the interest rate.

Lin interesas la lingvoj.

= He's interested in languages.

Min interesegegas amori.

= Making love fascinates me.

Mi interesiĝas pri hundoj.

= I'm getting interested in dogs.

Mi havas financon intereson en ŝia kantado, kara, sed ŝi mem ne interesas min,

= kredis min.

= I have a financial interest in her singing, my dear, but she herself does not

= interest me, believe me.

Caution: Some English speakers try to build a calque on “I am interested in...” by saying **Mi estas interesata pri....** That is not wrong, but it makes unnecessarily awkward Esperanto:

Clumsy: **Mi estas interesata pri fikologio.**

Better: **Min interesas fikologio.**

= I am interested in phycology (the study of algae).

**interezo** = interest rate. See [rento](#).

**iri** = go. See [veni](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**jaketo** = (1) book jacket, (2) baby’s jacket. See [jako](#).

**jako** = jacket (as in bed jacket, ski jacket, smoking jacket, etc., usually for a man).

*Not to be confused with:*

**jaketo** = (1) book jacket; (2) baby’s jacket; (3) little **jako**.

**ĵako** = electrical or telephone jack.

**ĵaketo** = (1) morning coat; (2) a woman’s suit jacket.; (3) little **ĵako**.

**smokingo** = smoking jacket.

**La libro pri ĵakoj havas belan jaketon.**

= The book on jacks has a nice jacket.

**Li portis plumpan smokingon.**

= He was wearing an inelegant smoking jacket.

**Ĉu mi lasis jakon ĉe vi?**

= Did I leave a jacket at your place?

**jam** = already. See [ankoraŭ](#), [ekde](#).

**je** = at.

The preposition **je** can often be translated “at,” but really has no stable English equivalent. It is defined as the preposition to use when you need a preposition and none of the other ones is suitable. Since Esperanto prepositions have fairly closely defined meanings, an all-purpose, “meaningless” preposition like **je** is arguably a necessary fudge factor. On the other hand, its very flexibility makes overuse of **je** stylistically painful. In its article on **je**, the *Plena Ilustrita Vortaro* quotes Zamenhof’s 1894 recommendation against excessive use of **je**. Modern

**usage is quite sparing of this preposition, perhaps even excessively so.**

An important use of **je** is in mentioning time:

Je kioma horo vi revenos?

= What time will you return?

Mi revenos je la 6a.

= I'll be back at 6.

Je la fino de la tago

= At the end of the day

A handful of other usages are also conventionalized:

Mi ne kredas je Dio.

= I don't believe in God.

Ŝi malsanas je la okuloj.

= She has something the matter with her eyes.

Ties karnon mi disŝiros je pecetoj.

= I shall rip his flesh to bits.

Ŝi prenos lin je la mano.

= She will take him by the hand.

Ŝi estis graveda je filo.

= She was pregnant with a son.

Mi estas riĉa je pensoj, ne je mono.

= I am rich in thoughts, not money.

Finally, **je** sometimes helps in resolving a cluster of **de**'s — see [fare de](#):

<p>*-If we used <b>de</b> after <b>mokado</b> it would seem as though the previous generations had been doing the mocking.</p>
--

Ĉion ĉi elpensis la historio-skribantoj pro mokado je\* la foririntaj generacioj.

= All this the writers of history thought out because of their mocking of previous generations.

**jen** = “here is,” “behold.” The word **jen**, followed by a noun or pronoun,



**constitutes a complete sentence:**

Jen patro, tiu nedorminto.

= There's a father, the one who hasn't slept.

Jen tiu damninda koko! = There's that damned rooster!

The verb **estas** can follow it optionally with no change in meaning:

Jen estas patro.

= There's a father.

Jen estas tiu damninda koko! = There's that damned rooster!

**Jen** is also what you say when you hand somebody something, comparable to English "here":

Ĉu vi dezirus kafon? Jen! = Would you like coffee? Here!

Vi deziras mian monon? Jen do! = You want my money? Here it is then!

**Jen** can also be followed by a complete sentence:

Jen la nova patro ŝanĝas la fetoran vindotukon!

= Ah, behold the new father changing the stinking diaper!

Of course if you are actually someone who goes around saying "behold," **jen** is the word to use:

Mi ekrigardis lian ĉambron kaj jen la Ĥaoso de ĉiaj Ĥaosoj!

= I looked into his room, and behold! The Chaos of all Chaos!

**jes = yes. Even as ne can be placed before a verb to negate it, so jes is occasionally placed before a verb to stress it (just as in Spanish). The closest English equivalent to this usage may be "do too":**

Mi jes ŝatas manĝi kukon! = I do too like eating cake!

This usage is quite rare in Esperanto, however. When one wants to stress the verb it is much commoner to use **ja**, corresponding roughly to English "indeed":

Mi ja ŝatas manĝi kukon.

= I do indeed like eating cake.

**ju pli ... des pli... = the more ... the more....**

Ju pli ŝi manĝas, des pli ŝi amas manĝi.

= The more she eats, the more she likes eating.

Ju pli mi legas, des pli interesa fariĝas la libro.

= The more I read, the more interesting the book becomes.

Ju pli multe da mono havas vi, des pli malŝparema vi estas.

= The more money you have, the more spendthrift you are.

Ju malpli dika estas fraŭlino, des pli ŝin ŝatas fraŭloj. Krom Alberto.

= The thinner a girl is, the more the fellas like her. Except Albert.

**Des pli** is occasionally used alone:

Kiam vi estas kolera mi amas vin des pli.

= When you are angry, I love you all the more.

Gravas des pli, ke vi ne forgesu.

= It's all the more important that you not forget.

**juro = jurisprudence, the science of law.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ĵuro** = an oath. Hence: **ĵuri** = to swear (an oath).\*

*-But to swear as in "cuss and swear" is <b>blasfemi</b> or <b>sakri</b> .
---

**ĵurio** = a jury.

Laŭ nia juro oni ĵuras antaŭ la ĵurio.

= In our law one swears before the jury.

**justa = fair, just. See [ĝusta](#).**

**justeco = justice, just-ness. See [justico](#).**

**justico = justice, the administration of law, the judicial system.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**justeco** = justice, just-ness (from **justa** = fair).

La justico tie estas maljusta.

= The judicial system there is unfair.

See also [ĝusta](#).

A B C Ĉ D E F G Ĝ H Ĥ I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z

ĵaketo = (1) morning coat, (2) a woman's suit jacket. See [jako](#).

ĵako = electrical or telephone jack. See [jako](#).

ĵaluza = possessive, jealous.

**Not to be confused with:**

envii = to envy.

Note that Esperanto routinely observes a distinction between **ĵaluza** = "afraid of losing someone or something or unwilling to share," and **envia** = "wishing to have what belongs to someone else." (In colloquial English, "jealous" tends to get used in both senses, although purists do sometimes insist on the same distinction that Esperanto makes.) In addition, in Esperanto, **ĵaluz-** is normally an adjective root, while **envi-** is usually a verb, and one may **envii** a person or thing:

Nia Dio estas ĵaluza Dio.  
= Our God is a jealous God.

Li estas ĵaluza pri siaj libroj.  
= He is possessive about his books.

Mi ĵaluzas mian hundon.  
= I am possessive about my dog.

Mi envias mian hundon.  
= I envy my dog.

Kial vi estas tiel ĵaluza pri via edzo?  
= Why are you so possessive/jealous of your husband?

One can envy someone "for" (**pro** or **pri**) something or you can envy something "to" (**al**) somebody:

Mi envias ŝin pro ŝia voĉo.  
= I envy her for her voice.

Mi envias ŝian voĉon al ŝi.  
= I envy her her voice.

Mi envias mian patron pri la fotoalbumo.  
= I envy my father his photo album.

Mi envias la fotoalbumon al mia patro.

= I am envious of my father's photo album.

**ĵeti** = to throw. See [disponi](#).

**ĵeto** = a pitch, toss, throw. See [piĉo](#).

**ĵuri** = to swear (an oath). See [juro](#).

**ĵurio** = a jury. See [juro](#).

**ĵurnalo** = newspaper.

(As a mnemonic, think of French *jour* = "day," as in "daily newspaper.")

Some speakers prefer the expression **tagĵurnalo** = "daily newspaper."

**Not to be confused with:**

**revuo** = magazine, journal, technical journal.

**gazeto** = periodical, including magazines and newspapers.

Hence: **gazetaro** = "the press." (In practice **gazet-** is used almost exclusively in this expression.)

**magazino** = popular magazine (for amusement).

**magazeno** = (1) powder magazine (for explosives); (2) warehouse; (3) department store, supermarket.

Ĉiun matenon la ĵurnalo enhavas la saman novaĵon.

= Each morning the newspaper has the same news in it.

La ĵurnalo kunportas magazinon ĉiun dimanĉon.

= The newspaper has a magazine with it each Sunday.

Ni kalkulis, ke ni abonas preskaŭ kvindek revuojn!

= We figured out that we subscribe to almost 50 magazines!

Eĉ en la plej grandaj magazenoj oni ne trovos librojn volapukajn.

= Even in the largest department stores you won't find Volapük books.

**ĵuro** = an oath. See [juro](#).

**ĵus** = a moment ago, just. See [ĝusta](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**k** = common abbreviation for **kaj** = and.

**kabei** = to give up Esperanto or the Esperanto movement.

The term derives from the name of Kazimierz Bein, pen-named Kabe, who contributed importantly to Esperanto in the early years of its existence but eventually abandoned the movement.

Dum tridek jaroj ŝi penis instrui Esperanton al sia edzo, sed fine kabeis.

= For thirty years she tried to teach her husband Esperanto, but finally quit the movement.

**kabineto = office, study. See [ŝranko](#).**

**kaj...kaj... = both...and...**

Kaj li kaj ŝi estas esperantistoj.

= Both he and she are Esperantists.

Mi kaj amas kaj malamas lin.

= I both love and hate him.

Li estas kaj forta kaj bela.

= He is both strong and handsome.

**kalkuli = to calculate, to count up, to count on, to depend on (= je) (someone).**

**kalumnio = libel, slander. See [libelo](#).**

**kamero = closet; chamber in a machine (as “combustion chamber”).**

**See [ŝranko](#).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**fotilo = camera, especially a still camera.**

**kamerao = movie camera; videocam.**

**kano = cane, as in sugar cane. See [hano](#).**

**kantono = Swiss canton; American county.\***

**kaprico = caprice, change of will.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kapriĉo = caprice (in music).**

Ŝi ludis la kapriĉojn de Paganini.

= She played Paganini's caprices.

Ŝi lin vizitis laŭ kaprico.

= She visited him on a whim.

**kapriĉo = caprice (in music). See [kaprico](#).**

**kara = expensive; dear, precious.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kompato = sympathy; compassion, forgiveness.**

\*-When the word “county” refers to the territory governed by a count (grafo), it is a graflando. Lacking grafoj, the counties Americans live in are best called kantonoj.

**simpatia** = agreeable, compatible (of people).

En Svisio ĉio estas tre kara.

= In Switzerland everything is very expensive.

Al mi tre kara estas la hundo.

= The dog is very precious to me.

Kara estas dono en minuto de bezono.<sup>z</sup>

= A gift is dear indeed given in time of need.

Ŝia edzo estas tre kara.

= Her husband is very dear.

Tiu ĉi lando havas la simpatian de la mondo.

= This country has the world's affection.

Ŝi vidis ... eksterordinare simpatian viron.<sup>z</sup>

= She saw an extraordinarily pleasant man.

Ili vivis en mirinda simpatio.<sup>z</sup>

= They lived in wonderful harmony with each other.

Mi tute ne kompatas krimulojn.

= I have no sympathy for criminals.

Dio kompatu nin, pekulojn.<sup>z</sup>

= God forgive us sinners.

Ĉu mi kompatu eĉ krokodilojn?

= Should I have compassion even for crocodiles?

In some contexts, especially direct address, **kara** loses much of its force and becomes merely polite, informal, or slightly ironic (partly depending upon the personality and language background of the speaker):

Karaj gesamideanoj

= Ladies & Gentlemen

Kara s-ino Zhang!

= Dear Ms. Zhang,

Ne forgesu, kara, ke vi ŝuldas monon al mi.  
= Don't forget, sweetheart, that you owe me money.

Kisu min, kara; milfoje kisu min.  
= Kiss me, darling; kiss me a thousand times.

**katuno** = cotton (cloth). See [kotonu](#).

**kavao** = kava. See [kavo](#).

**kavo** = hole, cavity, sunken spot, eye-socket, dimple. Hence: kava = "hollow" or "sunken."

*Not to be confused with:*

**kavao** = kava (both the plant and the drink made from its root).

**poro** = tiny hole, pore. Hence: **pora** = "porous."

**truo** = hole.

(A hole through something is a **truo**. A cavity on the surface of something is a **truo** or **kavo**. A cavity within something is generically a **kavo**.)

**kaverno** = cave, especially a natural cave.

**groto** = small cave, especially a decorated or artificial cave.

strigo en kavo de arbo<sup>z</sup>  
= an owl in a hole in a tree

Liaj okuloj preskaŭ elŝoviĝis el siaj kavoj.<sup>z</sup>  
= His eyes nearly popped out of their sockets.

la ĉarmaj kavetoj de fraŭlinaj vangoj<sup>z</sup>  
= the charming dimples of girlish cheeks

Lia tombo estos simpla kavo en la tero.  
= His tomb will be a simple hole in the earth.

Kaverno estas subtera kavo.  
= A cave is an underground cavity.

La serpento reiris en sian truon.  
= The snake went back into its hole.

En mia monujo estas granda truon kiu nomiĝas imposto.

= In my pocket there is a large hole named taxes.

En okcidenta Ĉinio ni vizitis groton plenan de antikvaj pentraĵoj.

= In western China we visited a cave full of ancient paintings.

En Francio ni vidis groton kie aperis la Virgulino.

= In France we saw a cave where the Virgin had appeared.

Kiel infano en Tongo li trinkis kavaon.

= As a kid in Tonga he drank kava.

**kep** = See [kiel eble plej](#).

**kiel eble plej** = as ... as possible.

**In writing, the abbreviation k.e.p. is not unusual. In extremely slangy Esperanto, the abbreviation is occasionally spoken as an acronym, kep:**

Kuru kiel eble plej rapide.

= Run as fast as possible.

Bonvolu faksi ĝin al ni k.e.p. baldaŭ.

= Please fax it to us as soon as possible.

Kuru kep rapide.

= Run as fast as possible.

Ni iru kep baldaŭ = Let's go as soon as possible.

**klaso** = sort, species, class; class in school. See [speco](#).

**klera** = wise, well informed, cultivated, educated. See [eduki](#).

**klopodi** = to make efforts, set about, endeavor to, take steps to. Klopodi usually implies a degree of concern or anxiety, and can even extend to the idea of “fussing over” something.

***Not to be confused with:***

**peni** = to try, strive, make an effort.

**strebi** = to strive.

**provi** = to try, test.

**entrepreni** = to undertake.

Li klopodis pri sia familio.



= He worked for [the good of] his family.

Ŝi klopodis por fondi Esperanto-klubon.

= She worked to found an Esperanto club.

Ŝi penis fondi Esperanto-klubon, sed nur ĝenis la aliajn papagojn.

= She tried to found an Esperanto club, but only annoyed the other parrots.

Ŝi provis fondi Esperanto-klubon kaj konstatis, ke ĉiu havas intereson.

= She tried founding an Esperanto club and found that everybody was interested.

Ne necesas klopodi pri mi.

= There's no need to worry about me.

Klopodi pri ĉies favoro estas plej malsaĝa laboro.<sup>z</sup>

= To work for everyone's favor is a foolish labor.

Compare [zorgi](#), [celo](#).

**kolero** = anger. See [angoro](#).

**komandi** = control, command. See [kontroli](#).

**kombi** = to comb (through something, especially hair).

*Not to be confused with:*

**rasti** = to rake up, comb up.

**balai** = to sweep, mop.

**ŝvabri** = to wetmop.

Each of these terms except ŝvabri is of far more general application in Esperanto than the English translation would suggest. **Kombi** means something like “to run a forked object through a field of stringy stuff,” so the same verb is potentially used for brushing, raking, or any similar operation. The emphasis is on the stringy stuff. In contrast, **rasti** tends to place the emphasis on what it is that the rake pulls up. One rakes the leaves. (In actual usage, one can also **rasti** the lawn, however, so the distinction is not always closely observed.)

One naturally combs with a **kombilo** and rakes with a **rastilo**. **Kombo** (or **kombado**) is the action of combing; **rasto** (or **rastado**) is the action of

raking. To push something around with a long-handled, fuzzy-ended instrument is **balai**, which can mean either to sweep or to mop. One naturally does this with a **balailo**. Although one can **balai** wet or dry material, the rather rare verb **ŝvabri** is specific to wet material.

There are some more specific names for particular kinds of tools. Most important among them perhaps is **broso** = “brush.” Since **broso** is already a noun, there is no need to call it a “**broсило**” to make it an instrument. (Naturally one can convert it to a verb, **broŝi**. The act of brushing must be **broŝado**. It is more Esperanto however to say that one **kombas per broso**.)

Li kombis la harojn.  
= He combed his hair.

Li kombis al si la harojn per broso.  
= He brushed his hair.

Ŝi kardis kaj poste kombis la lanon.  
= She carded and then combed the wool.

Ili rastis la foliojn.  
= They raked up the leaves.

Ŝi rastis zorge la laŭsojn el la hararo de la infano.  
= Carefully she combed the lice from the child’s hair.

Li rastis fojnon per forkego.  
= He gathered the hay with a pitchfork.

Li balais la straton antaŭ sia butikoj.  
= He swept the street before his shop.

Li balais la sablon desur la breto.  
= He swept the sand off of the shelf.

Li balais la plankon per franĝbalailo.  
= He mopped the floor.

Ŝvebrante la plankon, li glitis kaj falis.  
= He slipped and fell mopping the floor.

**komisiito = chair of a committee, special delegate in charge of something, etc.**

**(From komisii = “to commission, charge with responsibility.”)**

**komodo = chest of drawers.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**truseĝo** = toilet seat, commode (literally: hole-seat).

Li gardas la vestaĵojn en la komodo.

= He keeps his clothes in a dresser.

La infano ĉiam timis tion, ke li eventuale falos en la truseĝon.

= The kid was always afraid that he might fall into the commode.

**kompato = sympathy; compassion, forgiveness. See [kara](#).**

**kompensi = make up for (something), offset, compensate for. (One kompensas something, not someone.)**

***Not to be confused with:***

**rekompenci** = repay (a kindness or service). (One may rekompenci something or someone.)

La asekura kompanio kompensas la perdon.

= The insurance company will compensate the loss.

La interesa enhavo kompensas la plumpan stilon.

= The interesting content offsets the gauche style.

Vi devos pagi kompenson de 3,000 eŭroj!

= You'll have to pay compensation of 3,000 euros.

Li pagis monon kiel kompenson pro la difektita telefono.

= He paid money in compensation for the broken telephone.

Oni detruis la domon por nova ŝosejo kaj kompensetis ĝin al ni.

= They destroyed the house for a new highway and compensated us a bit for it.

Kiel mi povos rekompenci tiun helpeman knabon? = How can I repay that helpful boy?

Dio rekompencos vin per la feliĉo de tiuj, kiujn vi amas.<sup>z</sup>

= God will repay you with the happiness of those you love.

**komplezo = favor, kindness. Hence: komplezi = to be good enough to, to oblige.**

Mi komplezos al vi ankaŭ en ĉi tiu afero.<sup>z</sup>  
= I'll do this for you too.

Dankon pro via afabla komplezo.  
= Thanks for your kindness.

Ŝi estra tre kompleza persono.  
= She is a very obliging person.

**komuniki = to communicate, report.**

**In Esperanto you always communicate something, usually to somebody.**

Ŝi ne komunikis vian mesaĝon al mi.  
= She didn't pass on your message to me.

**koncerni = to concern, relate to, affect.**

Ŝiaj aferoj tute ne koncernas vin!  
= Her affairs don't concern you at all!

La romano koncernas tri fratojn.  
= The book is about three brothers.

**kondamno = a verdict and/or sentence (in court).**

“Verdict” is also expressed as **juĝaĵo**. See also [sentenco](#).

**kondiĉo = condition (of a contract).**

(In recent years, this has been sliding towards the additional mean of “situation,” or “state of things.”)

***Not to be confused with:***

**stato** = condition, situation, state (of being).

**ŝtato** = nation, state (including states of the USA).

Je 93 jaroj, mia avino estas en bona sanstato sed babilaĉas senĉese.  
= At 93, my grandmother is healthy but natters incessantly.

La ŝtatestro prelegos pri la ŝtatostato.  
= The governor will speak on the state of the state.

Mi kisos vin kondiĉe, ke vi antaŭe nek fumos nek manĝos ajlon.  
= I'll kiss you on condition that you don't smoke or eat garlic beforehand.

**konduki = conduct (an orchestra).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kondukti = conduct (an electrical current).**

**konduktoro = conductor (on a train or bus).**

**konduiti = conduct (oneself well or badly - intransitive verb!).**

La birdo malbone kondutis malpurigante la kapon de la prezidento.  
= The bird behaved badly, dirtying the head of the president.

La infanoj bone kondutis dum la meso.  
= The children behaved well during mass.

Lia onklino estas kondukisto de granda orkestro, sed Daĉjeto deziras fariĝi konduktoro en bruega metroo.  
= His aunt is the conductor of a large orchestra, but Little Davey wants to become the conductor of a noisy subway.

**kondukti = conduct (an electrical current). See [konduki](#).**

**konduktoro = conductor (on a train or bus). See [konduki](#).**

**konduiti = conduct (oneself well or badly - intransitive verb!). See [konduki](#).**

**koneksa = logically related.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**konekti = connect (e.g., an electrical circuit)**

Li konektis la draton al la ŝaltilo.  
= He connected the wire to the switch.

Historio kaj arĥeologio estas koneksaj studoj.  
= History and archaeology are related studies.

La unua fakto koneksas al la dua.  
= The first fact connects with the second.

**konekti = connect. See [koneksa](#).**

**konfekcio = mass production of ready-made clothing; a ready-made garment.\***

***Not to be confused with:***

**sukeraĵo = confection, candy.**

\*-As far as I can establish, this obsolescent word was slightly derogatory in days when "ordinary" clothing was made to measure.

Ideala onklo ĉiam portas en la poŝo sukeraĵojn por la genevoj.  
= In his pocket an ideal uncle always carries candies for nephews and neices.

Mia onklo portis konfekciojn ĉiam de malĝusta grandeco.  
= My uncle always wore discount house clothes of the wrong size.

Mia onklo konfekcias vestojn.  
= My uncle mass-produces clothing.

**kongreso = convention; congress.**

Mi ĉeestos kongreson de malfamaj verkistoj.  
= I'll attend a convention of unknown writers.

Mia edzino estas kongresano.  
= My wife is a conventioner.

Mia edzino estis kongresano.  
= My wife is a member of Congress.

**koni = to know, be acquainted with.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**scii** = to know, be aware of (a fact)

**povi** = to know how to, to be able to (do something).

**scipovi** = know how to (more specific form of **povi**). See also [studi](#), [rekoni](#), [renkonti](#).

Koni min estas ami min!  
= To know me is to love me.

Feliĉe venas la aŭtobuso; mankas tempo por ekkono.  
= Fortunately the bus is coming; there is no time to meet you.

Mi konas la nomon, sed ne la homon.  
= I know the name, but not the person.

Neniu scias ĉion.<sup>z</sup>  
= No one knows everything.

Mi scias lokon kie oni vendas maldecajn varojn.

= I know of a place where they sell indecent stuff.

Mi ne diris, ke mi konas la lokon, nur ke mi scias ĝin.

= I didn't say I knew it well, only that I knew of it.

Ĉu vi konas lian patrinon?

= Do you know his mother?

Mi scias, ke ŝi estas tre maljuna.

= I know that she is very elderly.

With languages both **koni** and **scii** (and **scipovi**) are used, more or less interchangeably, with Zamenhofan precedents for both **koni** and **scii**.

Current taste seems to favor **koni** for languages.

Mi ne scias la hispanan.<sup>z</sup>

= I don't know Spanish.

... koni la lingvon rusan.<sup>z</sup>

= to know the Russian language

Ĉu vi scipovas la turkan?

= Can you speak Turkish?

Ŝi estas la lasta kiu konas la familian lingvon.

= She is the last one who knows the family language.

**konkurenc**o = competition. See also [konkuri](#).

**konkuri** = to compete.

Rajtas konkuri nur membroj de la klubo

= Only members of the club may compete.

Li havas konkurantajn interesojn.

= He has competing interests.

Mi ne deziras konkuri kontraŭ/kun vi.

= I don't want to compete with you.

**Konkuri** is a term of very broad application. Specialized kinds of **konkuro** are:

**ludo** = game.

**konkurso** = contest (with judges and rules).

**konkurenco** = competition (especially commercial or political)

**loterio** = drawing.

Gajnis Argentino en la olimpika konkursaro.  
= Argentina won in the Olympic games.

Malplaĉas al mi la konstanta konkurenco de kapitalismo.  
= I don't like the constant competition of capitalism.

Ŝi gajnis flugbileton en loterio.  
= She won a plane ticket in a drawing.

Ŝi gajnis stipendion en konkurso de violono.  
= She won a scholarship in a violin contest.

In my dialect of English, a drawing is a kind of contest.\* Not so for most Esperantists, who distinguish carefully between a **loterio** where you win by chance and a **konkurso** where you have to be good at something.

\*-Drawings are distinguished from lotteries in American law, with implications for tax exempt organizations, but the distinction is not made in Esperanto. Indeed, most Americans are probably hard pressed to tell the difference even in English.

**konkurso** = contest. See also [konkuri](#).

**konsekvenco** = logical result. Hence: **konsekvenca** = logical, consistent; orthodox.

*Not to be confused with:*

**rezulto** = effect, result.

**sekvo** = fall-out, subsequent event, consequence.

In general, **konsekvenco** refers to what follows logically; **rezulto** refers to what is caused; and **sekvo** refers to what follows in time.

Frenezulo parolas nekonsekvence.  
= A madman speaks nonsensically.

Per siaj senkonsekvencoj refutiĝas la doktrino.  
= The doctrine is refuted by its own inconsistencies.



Tie ĉi la lingvo germana ĉesas esti konsekvenca.<sup>z</sup>  
= At this point the German language ceases to be logical.

La rezulto de ŝia konduto estis enkarcerigo.  
= The consequence of her behavior was incarceration.

Post diplomiĝo pri la medicino li senkonsekvence studis la juron.  
= After graduation in medicine, he, oddly, studied law.

Katastrofoj venis sinsekve.  
= Catastrophes came one after another.

**konstanta = permanent, regular.**

Post la disfalo de la laktodentoj, kreskas la konstantaj dentoj.  
= After the baby teeth fall out, the permanent teeth grow in.

Li ludas konstante la saman muzikon.  
= He constantly plays the same music.

Ŝi estas tre konstanta amikino.  
= She is a very faithful friend.

Ŝi estas konstanta kliento en la biblioteko.  
= She is a regular patron of the library.

Nia klubo havas konstantan oficon de instruisto.  
= Our club has a permanent office of teacher.

Ni havas konstantan rendevuon je la 5a en la trinkejo.  
= We have a standing engagement at five in the bar.

**konstati = to prove, discover, find out, scientifically demonstrate.  
This useful word is much more frequent in Esperanto than its  
translations in English are:**

Ni konstatis, ke Esperanto facilas.  
= We discovered Esperanto was easy.

Mi konstatos, ĉu ŝi mensogis.  
= I'll find out whether she was lying.

Mi telefonis kaj konstatis ke la flugo okazos je la 7-a atm.  
= I telephoned and learned that the flight will leave at 7 am.

Li konstatis, ke la bronzoj venis de la dinastio Zhou.  
= He showed that the bronzes came from the Zhou dynasty.

**kontoro** = office (clerical workplace).

**Although the distinction between kontoro and oficejo seems potentially useful, modern Esperanto tends to make almost exclusive use of oficejo to designate a place where office work is done.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ofico** = office (a profession or position).

Hence: **oficejo** = a professional office (place)

**giĉeto** = sales counter, sales window.

**vendotablo** = sales table, sales counter.

**nombrilo** = counter, numbering device.

Li havas komfortan seĝon en la kontoro.  
= He has a comfortable chair in the office.

Inter la kuirejo kaj la manĝejo troviĝis giĉeto, kiel en banko.  
= Between the kitchen and the dining room was a counter, as in a bank.

Ŝi staris ĉe la pordo kun nombrilo por scii kiom venos da gastoj.  
= She stood at the door with a counter to know how many guests would come.

Sur la vendotablo kuŝis porkaĵo, ŝafaĵo, kaj hundaĵo.  
= On the counter lay pork, mutton, and dog meat. See also [ŝranko](#).

**kontroli** = to inspect, check, supervise.

***Not to be confused with:***

**komandi** = control, command.

**direkti** = guide, direct (as questions, one's feet, a hose, or a tourist).

Oni prezentas la pasporton por kontrolo ĉi tie.  
= You present your passport for inspection here.

Ho! Kontrolu la naĝkostumon!  
= Wow! Check out the bathing suit!

Li komandos tutan taĉmenton.  
= He will command a whole detachment.

Ŝi komandis al li surgenuiĝi.  
= She commanded him to kneel.

Li direktis siajn okulojn ĉiam al ŝi.  
= He always directed his eyes to her.

Oni direktis la pafon al lia koro.  
= The shot was directed at his heart.

Li direktis la turistojn tuj al la butikoj, forgesinte la muzeon.  
= He directed the tourists immediately to the shop, having forgotten the museum.

See also [guverni](#).

**konvena** = fitting, well-suited, appropriate; seemly.

**Not to be confused with:**

**oportuna** = convenient, handy.

**kunveno** = meeting (literally **kun-veno** = “together-coming”).

**renkonti** = to meet, run into (someone).

**taŭga** = suitable, valuable (for something).

See also [taŭgi](#).

Nur la kulero estas konvena por la supo, Daĉjeto, ne la forko.  
= Only the spoon is suitable for soup, Davey, not the fork.

Renkontiĝo kun vi hodiaŭ estas ja tre oportuna, aĉa ŝuldulo!  
= A meeting with you today is indeed quite convenient, wretched debtor!

Nur lundo oportunas por la kunveno de la birdrigarda klubo.  
= Only Monday is convenient for the birdwatching club meeting.

Konvene ni kunvenos dum via vizito.  
= As it happens, we'll be meeting during your visit

Mi aĉetis la skribmaŝinon kiel oportunon por li.

= I bought the typewriter as a convenience for him.

Komputilo estas pli oportuna ol skribmaŝino, kaj preskaŭ samkosta.  
= A computer is handier than a typewriter, and almost the same price.

Ruĝaj ŝuoj por funebro certe estis ne tre konvenaj.<sup>z</sup>  
= Red shoes certainly were not very seemly for a funeral.

Ruĝaj ŝuoj ne taŭgas kiel manĝaĵo.  
= Red shoes are no good as food.

**kopio = imitation, reproduction, photocopy.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**ekzemplero** = copy (e.g., of a book).

**ekzemplo** = example.

**numero** = copy, edition (of a magazine); number.

Mi ankoraŭ ne ricevis la aprilan numeron de *Esperanta Mondo*.  
= I still have not received the April copy of Esperanto World.

Ĉu mi rajtos fari fotokopion de via ekzemplero?  
= May I photocopy your copy?

**korekta = corrective. See [ĝusta](#).**

**korespondi = to exchange letters or other messages. See [respondi](#).**

**koto = muck, mud. See [mukozo](#).**

**kotono = cotton (fiber).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**katuno** = cotton (cloth).

**kraĉi = to spit.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kraki** = to crack, to clatter (intransitive)

Liaj dentoj ĉesis kraki nur kiam li kraĉis.  
= His teeth stopped clattering only when he was spitting.

La sekaj folioj krakis sub miaj piedoj.  
= The dry leaves cracked under my feet.

**krajono = pencil.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**paŝtelo = crayon.**

Infanoj skribu per krajonoj, sed faru bildojn per paŝteloj.

= Children should write with pencils but draw pictures with crayons.

**kraki = to crack, to clatter (intransitive). See [kraĉi](#).**

**krakmaĉa = crisp, crunchy. See [krispa](#).**

**kramfo = cramp (medical condition).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**krampo = Clamp, bracket; parenthesis.\***

**parentezo = parenthetical expression.**

\*-**Krampoj** in printing are **rondaj (...)**, **rektaj [...]**, **angulaj <...>**, or **kurbaj {...}**.  
Some people call them all **parentezoj**, but a **parentezo** is properly the parenthetical material that goes between them.

Ŝi suferis kramfon kaj necesis operacii.

= She suffered a cramp and it was necessary to operate.

La ĥirurgo lasis en ŝi krampon.

= The surgeon left a clamp in her.

La krampo kaŭzis al ŝi pluajn kramfojn.

= The clamp caused her more cramps.

Skribu la vorton inter krampoj.

= Write the word in parentheses.

Tio skribita inter krampoj estas "parentezo".

= What is written between parentheses is a parenthetical expression.

Parenteze, ĉu vi jam manĝis?

= By the way, have you eaten yet?

**krampo = Clamp, bracket; parenthesis. See [kramfo](#).**

**krano = faucet.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kranio = skull, cranium.**

**gruo** = crane (both bird and machine).

**argano** = drilling hoist, crane (machine only).\*

Gruoj flugis super niaj kapoj.  
= Cranes flew over our heads.

Mi ne kapablas ripari la kranon. Ni devos novan aĉeti.  
= I can't repair the faucet. We'll have to buy a new one.

Oni uzis grupon por levi la gigantan kranon super la enirejon.  
= They used a crane to lift the giant faucet over the entry.

Kial vi diras "gruo"? Ne temas pri birdo, diable! Temas pri "argano"!  
= Why do you say "crane"? It's not a bird, dammit! It's a "hoist"!

Kial vi diras "argano"? Ne temas pri argano, diable! Temas pri "gruo"!  
= Why do you say "hoist"? It's not a hoist, dammit! It's a "crane"!

Jen la kranio de la antaŭa abato.  
= Here's the skull of the former abbot.

**kredi** = to believe. See [pensi](#).

**krevi** = burst, explode, pop apart. Hence: **krevmaizo** = popcorn.

**krispa** = crinkled, wavy.

*Not to be confused with:*

**krusta** = crisp (from **krusto** = crust\*).

**facilrompa** = crisp, fragile.

**krakmaĉa** = crisp, crunchy.

**vigla** = attentive, alert; crisp, brisk, smart.

La krisphara fraŭlino maĉis krake krakmaĉan lardon.  
= The wavy-haired girl crunchingly munched the crunchy bacon.

Nur plenkreskuloj kapablas taksi bongusta la pankruston.

\*-There exist people who object to using **gruo** both for a bird and for a construction machine, insisting that the industrial crane should be called an **argano**. Technically, an **argano** is a drilling hoist, not really a crane, so this does not solve the "problem" very well. Ordinary mortals use **gruo** both for bird and for machine, don't seem to get very confused, and lead full and productive lives despite using one word in two meanings.

\*-Caution: **Krusto** can also be the scab or "crust" that forms on a healing wound. Be circumspect in complimenting your host's "crusty" potatoes!

= Only adults can imagine the crust of the bread tastes good.

**krokodilo = (1) crocodile; (2) a person who speaks a language other than Esperanto during Esperanto get-togethers, despite knowing Esperanto.\***

Manĝis krokodilo la kompatindan raneton.

= The crocodile ate the poor little frog.

Horloĝon manĝis la krokodilo bonan svisan.

= The crocodile had eaten a good Swiss clock.

Sobeko, kun kapo de krokodilo, estis dio pri morto.

= Sobek, with a crocodile head, was a god of death.

Kiam ajn ŝi pritraktas monon, tiam ŝi ekkrokodilas.

= Whenever she talks about money she lapses into her bizarre native tongue.

Bonfartu malkrokodileco!

= Let incrocodility thrive!

**krusta = crisp. See [krispa](#).**

**ktp = kaj tiel plu and so forth. This abbreviation is occasionally actually pronounced ko to po and produces the slang acronym kotopoaĵoj = “miscellany.”**

**kulturi = to raise, develop, cultivate.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kultivi = to cultivate (crops); to till (soil).\***

**eduki = to tame, domesticate; to cultivate (a talent); to breed; to bring up, rear, educate.**

(See also [dresi](#).)\*

\*-Occasional antic wags insist that one can **krokodili** only in one’s own language and that speaking yet a different language instead of Esperanto is to **aligatori** = “to alligator,” but this nicety is rarely recognized in practice. Other wags, yet more antic, maintain that speaking a language native to neither party but also not Esperanto is **kajmani** = “to cayman.” Some people have peculiar ideas.

\*-Note that today **kulturo/-i** principally refers to something socio-cultural, while **kultivo/-i** refers to something biological, but, as in other Latinate languages, there is an historical heritage of the two roots overlapping slightly. Thus you will still find people who use **kulturi** to refer to raising plants or animals or who speak of an educated person as **kultivita**.

\*-The curious and rather charming verb **erudi** “to teach deeply” seems to exist as a back-formation from **erudita** = “erudite.” I

**instrui** = to teach (someone or something); to teach how (to do something).

have never heard it used except with slightly comic intent.
--

Ŝi kultivis novan varion de orkideo.  
= She developed a new variety of orchid.

Oni edukadis min kiel idealiston.<sup>z</sup>  
= I was raised as an idealist.

Niaj kongresoj povas vekti entuziasmon, sed ne eduki ĝin.  
= Our conventions can awaken enthusiasm, but not cultivate it.

Li edukis leonon, kiu fine loĝis en lia domo.  
= He tamed a lion, which finally lived in his house .

Mi neniam plu penos eduki vulturon.  
= I shall never again try to tame a vulture.

Mi neniam plu penos instrui vulturon.  
= I shall never again try to teach a vulture.

Mi promesas neniam plu instrui Esperanton al papago.  
= I promise never again to teach Esperanto to a parrot.

Kiu instruis al Daĉjeto uzi blovpafilon?  
= Who taught Little Davey to use a blowgun?

Ili kultivis la saman bienon jam dum generacioj sed neniam rimarkis la groton.  
= They had cultivated the same spread for generations but never noticed the cave.

Li kultivis magian pirujon.  
= He raised a magic pear tree.

Ŝi estas tre bone edukita persono.  
= She is a very cultivated person.

**kun** = with, in the sense of “together with” or “along with,” never in the sense of “by means of,” which is **per**.

Ŝi vojaĝis kun sia edzo.



= She travelled with her husband.

Ŝi vojaĝis per ŝipo.

= She travelled by ship.

Li ludis kun siaj infanoj.

= He played with his kids.

Ili ludis per pafiloj.

= They played with guns.

Oni kantas kun amikoj.

= You're singing with friends.

Oni kantas per la buŝo.

= You sing with your mouth.

Avoid using **kun** to correspond with English “with” when you mean “against.” Esperanto **kun** is likely to be taken literally to mean “alongside”!

La litovoj batalis kontraŭ la poloj.

= The Lithuanians fought with (against) the Poles.

La litovoj batalis kun la poloj.

= The Lithuanians fought alongside the Poles.

Daĉjeto ĉiam friponis kiam li ŝakludis kontraŭ sia fratineteto.

= Little Davey always cheated when he played chess with his little sister.

Similarly being in love “with” may be reciprocal (literally “with” = **kun**) or may be unrequited (love “towards” = **al** rather than “with”). Not everybody worries about this fine a distinction, but when in doubt about matters of love, **al** may be the better choice.

Ŝi enamiĝis kun sia dentisto.

= She fell in love with her dentist [and he with her].

Ĉiuj fraŭlinoj enamiĝis al la bela stelulo.

= All the girls fell in love with the handsome star.

(Naturally marriage has to be reciprocal, so, unlike love, engagement and marriage —**fianĉiĝo** and **geedziĝo**— are **kun** a partner!)

**kunveno = meeting (literally “together-coming”). See [konvena](#).**

**kurioza = strange, inscrutable.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**scivolema** = curious, wanting to know. (From sci- = “know” plus vol- = “desire.” Hence: **scivoli** = “to wonder.”)

Lia murdo estis kurioza afero.

= His murder was a strange business.

Scivolemo mortigis la katon; sed kion scivolis la kato?

= Curiosity killed the cat, but what did the cat want to know?

Ŝia patrino estos tre scivolema pri lia bankkonto.

= Her mother will be very curious about his bank account.

Mi scivolas, ĉu ŝi memoros min.

= I wonder if she'll remember me.

Ĉu ne estas kurioze kiom da tempo necesas por ellerni “facilan” lingvon kia estas Esperanto?

= Isn't it odd how much time is required to learn an “easy” language like Esperanto well?

**kurso = course (made up of lessons). See [speco](#).**

**kvartalo = district, quarter. See [getto](#).**

**kvazaŭ = like, as, as though, as if, as if it were, seemingly.**

**This word does a lot of work in Esperanto, but tends to be underutilized by English speakers because it has no single, simple translation.**

La ĉielo aspektis, kvazaŭ ĝi estus balaita.<sup>z</sup>

= The sky appeared as though it had been swept.

La patro frapis sur la pordo, kvazaŭ li estus fremdulo.<sup>z</sup>

= The father rapped at the door, as though he were a stranger.

La lando aperis al li kvazaŭ abunda fruktoĝardeno.

= The country appeared to him as though it were a beautiful orchard.

En sia mano ŝi sentis kvazaŭ brulantan fajron.

= In her hand she felt something like a burning fire.

[Li] prezentis kvazaŭ belegan tapiŝon, kiu invitis sidi.<sup>z</sup>

= [He] presented something like a beautiful carpet, which invited one to sit on it.

Ili paroladetis, kvazaŭ dezirante moki iun alian.<sup>z</sup>

= They nattered on as though wanting to make fun of someone else.

Estas ia kvazaŭa trompo, se oni silentas pri la vero.

= It's practically a kind of fraud if one keeps quiet about the truth.

Oni povis ekkoni el tio kun kvazaŭa certeco la skalon de la astroj.

= You could tell from this with near certainty the scale of the stars.

Ŝi estis lia kvazaŭedzino.

= She was his concubine.

For sentences 1 and 2, many American Esperantists would say **kiel**. That is not wrong, just overworked. (If you read early Esperanto works, you will find a couple of other uses of **kvazaŭ** that have fallen into obsolescence.)

**kvesti = ask for contributions.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**misio** = quest, mission. Hence: **misiejo** = mission building or complex.

**serĉo** = search, pursuit.

La Esperanta Societo bezonis monon; do mi kvestis ĉe la najbaroj.

= The Esperanto Society needed money, so I took a collection among the neighbors.

La agento havas sekretan mision.

= The agent has a secret mission.

Ni vizitis la misiejon de Capistrano.

= We visited the Capistrano Mission.

Li kvestas por la preĝejo.

= He's asking for contributions for the church.

Ŝi serĉas monon por aĉeti novan komputilon.

= She is looking for money to buy a new computer.

Lin obsedis serĉo al la Sankta Pokalo.

= He was obsessed by the quest for the Holy Grail.

A B C Ĉ D E E G Ĝ H Ĥ I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z

**lardo = bacon\* .**

**Not to be confused with:**

**porkograso** = lard.

Mi ĉiam manĝas lardon kun ovoĵ.  
= I always eat bacon and eggs.

Ŝi kuiras ĉion en porkograso kun cepoj.  
= She cooks everything in lard with onions.

\*-The verb **lardi** means to put bits of bacon on other meat before cooking it, e.g., **lardita ŝafofemuro** = "larded leg of mutton."  
From it comes the metaphor of decorating something unnecessarily: **Li lardis sian prelegon per seksismaj ŝercaĵoj por plaĉi al la trivialuloj.** = "He larded his address with sexist cracks to please the lowlifes."

**larĝa = wide.**

**Not to be confused with:**

**granda** = large, big.

Ŝi naskis bebon surprize grandan.  
= She bore a surprisingly large baby.

La ĉambro estis larĝa sed mallonga.  
= The room was wide but short.

Li havas larĝajn ŝultrojn, sed ĝenerale malgrandajn ostojn.  
= He has broad shoulders, but generally small bones.

**lasi = to leave, to let.**

Ŝi lasis la infanon en la aŭto.  
= She left the kid in the car.

Li forlasis Tajbejon.  
= He left Taipei.

Lasu min sola!  
= Leave me alone!

Lasu ŝin kisi lin!  
= Let her kiss him!\*

Note that in Zamenhof's usage

\*-To avoid two accusatives here, one could also say **lasu al ŝi kisi lin** or **lasu, ke ŝi kisu lin**. Ever more common is use of the

(though rarely today) it was possible after **lasi** to use an active verb as though it were passive:

verb <b>permesi</b> = “to permit” rather than <b>lasi</b> : <b>Permesu al ŝi kisi lin.</b>
---

Mi lasis min moki.  
= I allowed myself to be mocked.

Li ne lasis esplori sin.  
= He did not allow himself to be explored.

Malmultaj lasis sin kapti.  
= Not many let themselves be captured.

A rather inelegant Germanic usage occasionally is found:

Vi lasis min voki.  
= You had me called.  
(Better: **Vi vokigis min.**)

**lasta = recent.**

**Hence: lastatempe = antaŭ nelonge = recently.**

**Hence: plej lasta = most recent, last (in a series). See also [eventuala](#).**

En lasta gazeto mi legis pri ŝia granda sukceso.  
= In a recent magazine I read about her great success.

Multe pluvis lastatempe.  
= It's rained a lot recently.

La fina ludo okazis nur tre laste.  
= The last game took place only very recently.

**laŭ = according to; along. Laŭ is used to mean “along” in reference to long, narrow things like streets and rivers. It means “according to” in other contexts. In some sentences “according to” is not a very idiomatic English translation, however:**

laŭ la rivero  
= along the river

laŭ la vortaro  
= according to the dictionary

laŭ la mastro

= according to our master

laŭ li

= according to him

laŭ mi

= in my opinion/experience

**leki = to lick. See [liki](#).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**lekanto** = marguerite (a large daisy).

En la hasto de la vivo nepre paŭzu por leki la lekantojn.

= In the hurry of life, be sure to take time to lick the daisies.

Li estas lekanto-lekanto!

= He is a daisy-licker!

**lekanto = marguerite (a large daisy). See [leki](#).**

**lernanto = student. See [studento](#).**

**lernejo = school (a place where learning takes place). See [skolo](#).**

**lerni = learn, study.**

**Lerni contrasts with studi = “study,” but the relationship between the two words is different in English and Esperanto. See [studi](#).**

**lerta = quick to learn, adept. See [adepto](#).**

**lertulo = a quick learner, clever person. See [adepto](#).**

**libelo = dragonfly.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kalumnio = libel.**

Libelo flugis super la florbedo, kielfluganta drako.

= The dragonfly flew over the flower bed like a flying dragon.

Ni povos procesi kontraŭ vi pro via kalumnio kaj gajni milionojn da dolaroj; bonvolu do kalumniu nin!

= We will be able to sue you over your libel and gain millions of dollars, so please do libel us!

**libro = book. See [buklo](#).**

**liceo = high school. See [gimnazio](#).**

**ligroino = benzine. See [gaso](#).**

**liki = to leak.**

**Containers leak (likas), but note that when a liquid leaks out of something it likiĝas. (A better verb in that case may be elflui = “to flow out.”) See also [leki](#) = to lick.**

Likis la malnova kaldrono.

= The old kettle leaked.

Akvo likiĝis tra la truo.

= Water leaked out through the hole.

Studentoj likiĝis el lia klaso.

= Students leaked out of his class.

**liva = left (~ maldesktra).**

**loĝi = to dwell (somewhere). See [vivi](#).**

**lokalo = place, locale.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**loko** = place.

**Loko** is equivalent to the English “place” in all its broad range of senses.

**Lokalo** refers to a place in the more specific sense of a part of town, a quarter, a site or to part of a building intended for a particular purpose.

**Kvartalo** is specifically a district in a city or town. See also [getto](#).

**loko = place. See [lokalo](#).**

**lokusto = grasshopper.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**akrido** = locust.

**grilo** = cricket.

Akridoj en pestego formanĝis ĉiujn herbojn de la lando.

= A plague of locusts devoured all the grasses of the land.

Lokustoj lope leviĝante loze ludas ĉi-loke.

= Grasshoppers rising in circles play loosely here.

En Disneyland mi ĉiam tagmanĝas ĉe “Grill” de la Grilo!

= In Disneyland I always lunch at Jiminy’s Grill.

lordo = lord (British nobility). Hence: lordino = “lady.” See [sinjoro](#).

loterio = drawing. See also [konkuri](#).

ludo = game. See also [konkuri](#).

lukri = to earn, gain; to win. See [gajni](#).

lupo = wolf. See [vulpo](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#)  
[P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

maco = matzo.

*Not to be confused with:*

maĉo (also spelled matĉo\*) =  
sporting match. See also [konkurso](#).

\*-The spelling **matĉo** for a sporting match exists to avoid confusion with **maĉo** = “chewing.” For most speakers there is no detectable difference in pronunciation.

maĉo = chewing, from maĉi = “to chew.”

Ne maĉu macojn per malferma buŝo! = Don’t chew matzos with your mouth open!

maĉo = (1) chewing; (2) sporting match. See [maco](#).

magazino = popular magazine. See [ĵurnalo](#).

makiso = “maquis,” (1) a Mediterranean shrub, (2) the places where it grows, and (3) rebel groups that shelter in it. (A member of a makiso would, of course, be a makisano.) For the third meaning, see also [gerilo](#).

La plaĝo bedaŭrinde estas plena de makiso.  
= Unfortunately the beach is full of maquis.

Kiam vi tendumas, plej bone ne eniru la makison.  
= When you are camping, it is best to stay out of the maquis.

La franca makiso resistis la nazioj dum la Dua Mondmilito.  
= The French maquis resisted the Nazis during the Second World War.

Ankaŭ en Hispanio troviĝis makiso; la makisanoj resistis la registaro de Francisco Franco dum kaj post la hispania enlanda milito.  
= There was a maquis in Spain too; maquis opposed the government of Francisco Franco during and after the Spanish Civil War.

malantaŭ = behind. See [antaŭ](#).

malgraŭ = in spite of, despite.

*Not to be confused with:*

spite de = in defiance of, in order to spite. See [spite de](#).



Ŝi restis ĉarma malgraŭ la subita heredaĵo.

= She remained charming in spite of the sudden inheritance.

Ili elektis manĝi ekstere malgraŭ la malvarma vetero.

= They chose to eat outside in spite of the cold weather.

Ŝi iris spite de la ordono de sia patrino.

= She went in defiance of her mother's orders.

Li iris al la teatro kun Mimi spite de sia eksedzino.

= He went to the theatre with Mimi to spite his ex-wife.

**maltrinki** = “urinate.” See [pisi](#).

**mandareno** = Mandarin, an official in Imperial China.

**Hence: la mandarena** = a dialect of spoken Chinese, slightly modified and officialized as the official language of China.

**Not to be confused with:**

**mandarino** = Mandarin orange.

Mandarenoj mandarinojn maĉe manĝis.

= Mandarins chewed on Mandarin oranges.

**mandarino** = Mandarin orange. See [mandareno](#).

**manki** = to be missing, to be needed; to be missed.

Whatever is missing is the subject of the verb manki. The same verb, in the same structure, corresponds with our verb “to miss” somebody, i.e., to regret the absence of a person.

Mankas al ŝi kuko.

= She doesn't have any cake.

Kio mankas al nia Esperanta klubo estas bonaj kantistoj.

= What is missing in our Esperanto club is good singers.

Kio mankas en la nia estas mono.

= What's missing in ours is money.

Vi tre mankis al ŝi dum via vojaĝo.

= She missed you very much during your trip.

“Panbulo,” diris la Rosmaro, “Jen kio mankas al ni ĉefe.”

= “A loaf of bread,” the Walrus said, “is what we chiefly need.”

**manko** = defect, lack, missing part. See [difekti](#).

**mantelo** = robe. See [dresi](#).

**masiva** = solid, not porous (pora) or hollow (kava).

*Not to be confused with:*

**granda** = massive, large.

**solida** = massive, dense.

La lignoblokon enloĝas vermoj; ĝi ne plu estas masiva.

= Worms have moved into the wood block; it is no longer solid.

La magiisto uzis kavan bastoneton, ne masivan.

= The magician used a hollow baton, not a solid one.

Spongo estas pora, ne masiva.

= Sponge is porous, not solid.

**maso** = mass, indefinite quantity; mass (in physics).

*Not to be confused with:*

**amaso** = mass, pile, crowd.

Hence: **amase** = in throngs or in large quantities; **amasigi** = to amass (e.g., money).

**meso** = mass, Catholic service.

Ili strebis kalkuli la mason de la ora ringo.

= They tried to calculate the mass of the gold ring.

Kiel vi amasigis tiom da mono?

= How did you amass so much money?

Ili venis amase por vidi la monon.

= They came in droves to see the money.

Ŝi preparis nigran meson.

= She prepared a black mass.

**matĉo** = sporting match. See [maco](#).

**matraco** = mattress.

*Not to be confused with:*

**matraso** = long-necked glass vase.

**matrico** = matrix, mold. See also [ŝimo](#).

Ĉu ekzistas matrico por la matraso?  
= Is there a mold for the vase?

Alportu matraseton por la rozo.  
= Bring a bud-vase for the rose.

Ŝi sentis la pizon tra dek sep matracoj.  
= She felt the pea through 17 mattresses.

**matraso** = long-necked glass vase. See [matraco](#).

**matrico** = matrix, mold. See [matraco](#).

**meblo** = piece of furniture.

Furniture taken collectively is, of course, meblaro.

**medicino** = the theory or practice of medicine.

Medicine that one takes is a medikamento.

**medikamento** = medicine (as something to be taken). See [medicino](#).

**medio** = environment.

*Not to be confused with:*

**meza** = medium, middle.

**rimedo** = medium, means.

**perilo** = an intermediary, means.

**mediumo** = spirit medium.

**gazetaro** = (press) media,\*- “the press”

La mediumo eniris trancon kaj parolis  
per la voĉo de Grabowski.  
= The medium entered trance and  
spoke with the voice of Grabowski.

Ĉiuj gepatroj pripensas la medion de siaj infanoj.  
= All parents think about the environment of their children.

Mankas alia rimedo por esprimi min sufiĉe kolere, do mi uzas bombojn  
laŭ mia rajto de libera parolo.  
= There is no other way to express myself with sufficient anger, so I use

\*-**Gazetaro** is used in Esperanto very much as “media” is in English, but remember that it technically refers only to the press media. If you wish to speak specifically of the “broadcast media,” for example, it would be inappropriate, and you would probably have to specify [televido](#) kaj [radio](#).

bombs in accordance with my right of free speech.

La gazetaro estas interkomunika perilo nur se oni povas ĝin legi.  
= The press is a means of intercommunication only if one can read it.

**mediumo** = spirit medium. See [medio](#).

**merkato** = market (as a system of trading). See [debito](#).

**meso** = mass, Catholic service. See [maso](#).

**meza** = medium, middle. See [medio](#).

**milda** = gentle, mild. See [ĝentila](#).

**miliardo** = billion. See [biliono](#).

**misio** = quest, mission. See [kvesti](#).

**mojosa** = cool, fashionable, admirable.

**This is modern acronym derived from Moderna Jun-Stila, i.e., MJS-a.  
“Cool” meaning “not warm” is of course malvarma.)**

La de ŝi kantada muziko estas mojosega; bedaŭrinde ŝi kolorigas siajn dentojn bluaj. Tre malmojose!

= The music she sings is very cool. Unfortunately she colors her teeth blue. Very un-cool!

Oni devis sendi la novan entuziasman esperantiston al azilo por danĝere mojosaj junuloj.

= They had to send the enthusiastic new Esperantist to a home for dangerously cool youth.

Se maljunulo amas la muzikon, ĝi ne plu povas esti mojosa!

= If an old person likes the music, it can't be cool any more.

**montri** = show, demonstrate by illustration. See [pruvi](#).

**mopso** = pugdog. See [pugo](#).

**mordi** = to bite.

***Not to be confused with:***

**morti** = to die.

Hence: **mortigi** = to kill.

**murdi** = to murder.

La serpento mordis lin kaj li mortis.

= The snake bit him and he died.

Li mortis antaŭ ol mi kapablis lin murdi.

= He died before I could murder him.

Li pasigis la nokton sen dormo, mortigante moskitojn.  
= He passed the night without sleep, killing mosquitos.

Probable mordis la hundidon Daĉjeto pli ofte ol lin la hundido.  
= Little Davey probably bit the puppy oftener than the puppy bit him.

**morti** = to die. See [mordi](#).

**mosto** = grape juice.

**Not to be confused with:**

**moŝto** = highness, majesty, grace (a title for royalty) See also [plej](#).

Dum la aliaj trinkis vinon, li trinkis nur moston.  
= While the others drank wine, he drank only grape juice.

Informu lian moŝton, ke venkis la armeo.  
= Tell his majesty that the army has won.

**moŝto** = majesty. See [mosto](#).

**muko** = mucus. See [mukozo](#).

**mukozo** = mucous membrane.\*

**Not to be confused with:**

**muko** = mucus.

**malpuraĵo** = muck, filth.

**koto** = muck, mud.

El akvo kaj polvo Johano produktis koton.  
= John produced mud from water and dust.

Per sia nazo, Daĉjeto produktis mukon.  
= Little Davey produced mucus with his nose.

Mukon produktas la mukozo.  
= The mucous membrane produces mucus.

Kataro estas mukoza inflamo.  
= A “catarrh” is an inflammation of the  
= mucous membrane.

\*-Caution: **-oz-** is usually an unofficial suffix meaning “full of”. Here, however, it is part of the root. Thus **mukoza** may mean **muk-oz-a** = “full of mucus” or it may mean **mukoz-a** = “relating to the mucous membrane”! In the interest of clarity, avoid adding **-oz-** to **muk-**.

**muldi = to mold.**

**Hence: muldilo = a mold. See also [matraco](#), [ŝimo](#).**

**multa = much.**

**Note that this is generally avoided in the singular in favor of multe da, but in the plural multaj is commoner. Similarly in the comparative pli (multe) da is generally preferred in the singular, but in the plural pli multaj.**

Multe da mono li ne havas.

= He doesn't have a lot of money.

Multajn infanojn li havas.

= He has a lot of kids.

Ŝi portas multegajn orelingojn.

= She wears a whole lot of earrings.

Vi bezonas pli da kuraĝo por fariĝi fama boksisto. Ekzemple, ne plu kaŝru!

= You need more courage to become a famous boxer. Stop cowering, for example.

**murdi = to murder. See [mordi](#).**

**[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)**

**nacio = nation.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**nazio** = Nazi (a member of the German National Socialist party or regime).

Li estis kurda naciisma heroo.

= He was a Kurdish nationalist hero.

La nazioj strebis detrui la esperantan movadon sed ne sukcesis.

= The Nazis sought to destroy the Esperanto movement, but did not succeed.

La nazioj estis naciismaj kaj rasismaj.

= The Nazis were nationalistic and racist.

**negoco = a commercial transaction; a business.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**intertrakti** = negotiate.

Li zorge kontrolis la kvitancojn de ĉiuj negocoj de tiu tago.  
= He carefully inspected the receipts for all the transactions of that day.

Li posedas sian propran negocon; edzigu lin tuj!  
= He owns his own business; marry him immediately!

La du landoj intertraktis aktojn de armistico.  
= The two countries negotiated acts of armistice.

**negro** = Negro. See [nigra](#).

**nek...nek...** = neither... nor....

**Like English, but in contrast to some languages, Esperanto does not use a ne with nek...nek....**

Nek ĝojo nek malĝojo daŭras eterne.<sup>2</sup> = Neither joy nor sorrow lasts forever.

Iros nek Johano nek Marko.  
= Neither John nor Mark will go.

Al mi plaĉas nek teo nek kafo.  
= I like neither tea nor coffee.

In some cases one **nek** by itself can mean “not a single” or “not even one”:

Mi forlasis nek unu kluban kunvenon de esperantistoj.  
= I did not skip a single Esperanto club meeting.

A single **nek** occasionally occurs with a negative verb, where it has the quality of an afterthought:

Mi neniam renkontis ŝin, nek ŝian fratinon.  
= I never met her, nor her sister either.

**neta** = clearly visible, distinct.

**Hence: neto** = “final copy, clear copy”; **malneto** = “draft copy.”

**Not to be confused with:**

**reto** = net, network.

**la reto** = the Internet.

**TTT** = **tut-tera teksaĵo** = world-wide web (WWW)

La drako sin implikis en la reto.

= The dragon entangled itself in the net.

Mi aŭskultas esperantajn dissendojn per la reto.

= I listen to Esperanto broadcasts on the Web.

Mi sendos malneton per nia komputila reto.

= I'll send a draft through our computer network.

Esperantaj sitejoj en la TTT kompreneble estas avangardegaj.

= Esperanto WWW sites are of course very avant-garde.

**nigra = black (color).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**negro** = Negro, black (person of African ancestry).

For the African-derived portion of the American population, terms in American English have varied over the years, and some that are respectable in one period are politically incorrect in another. In Esperanto there have been less obvious swings of usage. In general people in Africa and of African descent are referred to as either **negroj** or **nigruloj** (lit.: "black people"), and neither term seems to be particularly contaminated with racial prejudice. For Americans of African ancestry one could propose the additional term **afriko-usonanoj** or **afrikdevenaj usonanoj**, I suppose, but I have never actually seen or heard these in colloquial Esperanto. Most discussions of race in the United States seem to contrast **nigruloj** and **blankuloj** as symmetrical color terms.

Ŝi portis nigran robon.

= She had on a black dress.

La foto estos nigra-blanka.

= The photo will be black-and-white.

La negra profesoro estis kuvajta civitano.

= The Negro professor was a Kuwaiti citizen.

**nombrilo = counter, numbering device. See [kontoro](#).**

**nombro = number, amount. Hence: nombri = (1) "to count," (2) "to be at the quantity of."**

***Not to be confused with:***

**numero** = (1) copy, edition (of a magazine); (2) number, digit, cipher.

Hence: **numeri** = "to number, put numbers on." (Some speakers use the



still unusual term **diĝito** = “digit,” especially in technical contexts.)

**numeralo** = numeral.

**numeratoro** = numerator.

**cifero** = number, written sign for a number.

Diru al mi vian telefonnumeron, fraŭlino. Neniam!

= Tell me your telephone number, miss. Never!

Kiom da gastoj venos? Diru al mi nombbron.

= How many guests will be coming? Give me a number.

Prenu numeron por pli bona servo.

= Take a number for better service.

Ni plej bone evitu romaniajn numeralojn en Esperanto.

= It'd be best for us to avoid Roman numerals in Esperanto.

Ŝi legadas la novan numeron de *Diĝita Mondo* (antaŭe *Numera Mondo*).

= She is reading the new issue of Digital World (formerly Number World).

Nun ni nombras nur dek ses, sed baldaŭ ni venkos la mondon.

= Now we number only sixteen, but soon we will conquer the world.

Ŝi misnombris la gastojn kaj preparis tro multe da sakeo.

= She miscounted the guests and prepared too much sake.

Li havas dek jarojn sed apenaŭ povas nombri.

= He is ten years old but can scarcely count.

Laozi ne numeris la paĝojn de la malneto antaŭ ol li faligis ĝin.

= Laozi didn't number the pages of the draft before he dropped it.

El la kvar ciferoj, ni povis legi nur du.

= We could read only two of the four digits.

**nomi** = to name; to call (a name).\*

**Not to be confused with:**

**nomumi** = to name, appoint (to a post).

\*-Some purists have worried that **nomi** seems ambiguously to mean both to give a name to something for the first time and to call something by a name it already has. This

Patro kaj patrino kune estas nomataj  
gepatroj.<sup>z</sup>  
= Father and mother taken together  
are called parents.

is true, but it is an ambiguity shared with  
many other languages, and nobody seems  
to have died of it yet.

Ni nomis Johanon Joĉjo kiam li estis bona, Joĉjaĉo kiam li estis malbona.  
= We called John Jacky when he was good, Jucky when he was bad.

Mi nomas min Adamo. Ĉu vi deziras esti mia Eva?  
= My name is Adam. Do you want to be my Eve?

Mi nomiĝas Eva, sed mi tute ne deziras, ke vi estu mia Adamo!  
= My name is Eve, but I don't at all want you to be my Adam!

Li estis nomita en la listo de ŝiaj viktimoj.  
= He was named in the list of her victims.

Ne sufiĉas nomi lingvon internacia, por ke ĝi estu tia.<sup>z</sup>  
= It is not enough to call a language international for it to be so.

Oni nomumis ŝin komitatestro.  
= They named her chair of the committee.

Li estis nomumita heredonto nur post la eluzo de ĉiom de la mono.  
= He was appointed heir only after all of the money had been used up.

**nomumi** = to name, appoint (to a post). See [nomi](#).  
**novalo** = land lying fallow. See [novelo](#).  
**novao** = nova (in astronomy). See [novelo](#).  
**novelo** = short story.  
**Not to be confused with:**

**romano** = (1) novel; (2) Roman\* .

**novalo** = land lying fallow.  
Hence: **novali** = to lie fallow\*.

**novao** = nova (in astronomy).

**novulo** = novice, layperson, newbie (from **nova** = new).

\*-To avoid confusion between “novel” and “Roman,” a few Esperantists use a capital letter on the latter, even though most names of peoples are not capitalized. This follows a convention already well established of capitalizing **Esperante** (and other variants on the name “Esperanto”) when it refers to the language to avoid confusion with **esperante** = “while hoping.” In fact, however, there is little danger of confusion in most contexts, and such capitalization distinctions are merely decorative most of the time.

**novico** = novice (in a religious order or in the sense of inexpert).

See also [Romo](#).

Parizanoj legas romanojn, sed  
romanoj preferas novelojn.  
= Parisians read novels, but Romans  
prefer short stories.

Li verkis novelon pri murdo en  
novalo.  
= He composed a story about a murder in a fallow field.

Mi estas novico pri komputiko.  
= I am a novice about computing.

Novicinoj ne rajtas legi romanojn.  
= Novices are not permitted to read novels.

La novicoj novalis dum teda prediko.  
= The novices' minds wandered during the boring sermon.

Se la stelo subite plibriliĝos, ni nomos ĝin novao.  
= If the star suddenly gets brighter, we'll call it a nova.

\*-I have noticed that people seem to lie fallow sometimes too. **Novali** thus seems a perfect translation for English "wool gathering." It can also be felicitously used to describe people who drop out of an Esperanto club for a time and then return.

**novico** = novice (in a religious order or in the sense of inexpert). See [novelo](#).

**novulo** = novice, lay person (from nova = "new"). See [novelo](#).

**numeralo** = numeral. See [nombro](#).

**numeratoro** = numerator. See [nombro](#).

**numero** = number, digit, cipher. Hence: **numeri** = "to number." See [nombro](#).

**nur** = merely, just. See [ĝusta](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**ofendi** = insult, offend. See [insulti](#).

**oferi** = offer as a sacrifice.

**Not to be confused with:**

**oferti** = offer (something for a price).

**ofri** = offer (to a guest) (a non-standard word\*).

\*-Some readers of draft copies of this book complained that they had never heard of this word, that it was unbelievably ugly, and that if it did exist it should be stamped

**proponi** = offer (something, to do something).

out. I concede that it is less common than the broader-purpose term **proponi**, but it is rarely misunderstood.

Li ofertis ses bananojn por unu dolaro.

= He offered six bananas for a dollar.

Ni ofertas al vi librojn je pli bona prezo ol aliaj libroservoj.

= We offer you books at a better price than other book services.

Ekonomio sekvas leĝojn de oferto kaj postulo.

= An economy follows laws of supply and demand.

Li oferis sian vivon por la partio.

= He offered up his life for the party.

Per sanga ritaĉo al fia diaĉo ili oferis la koron de la junulo.

= In a bloody rite to a foul demon they offered up the youth's heart.

Li proponis sian seĝon al la gasto.

= He offered his chair to the guest.

Li ofris sian seĝon al la gasto.

= He offered his chair to the guest.

Ŝi proponis al li vinon kaj montron de artaĵoj en ŝia loĝejo.

= She offered him wine and a showing of art objects in her quarters.

Permesu al mi proponi al vi kafon, sinjorino. Dankon, afabla sinjoro.

= Allow me to invite you to have coffee, madame. Thank you, kind sir.

Permesu al mi "ofri" al vi kafon, sinjorino. For, fineologisto!

= Allow me to offer you coffee, madame. Away, vile neologist!

**oferti** = offer (something for a price). See [oferi](#).

**ofic(ej)o** = office. See [kontoro](#).

**ofri** = Offer (to a guest). See [oferi](#).

**okazo** = occasion, opportunity, instance. See [instanco](#).

**okupi** = to occupy.

Hence: **okupiĝi** = to occupy oneself (+ **pri** = with [about] or + **per** with [by means of] or + **kun** = with [along with]). Hence: **okupita** = busy (literally "having been occupied"). (Some Esperantists say **okupata**

instead.) See also [zorgi](#).

Ŝi okupiĝis pri siaj libroj.  
= She was busy with her books.

Ŝi okupiĝis per libroj.  
= She kept herself busy with books.

Ŝi okupiĝis kun sia amiko.  
= She kept busy with her friend.

Li estas tro okupata por esti la ĉefa servisto de la loka klubo.  
= He is too busy to be the chief servant of the local club.

**ol** = than. See also [antaŭ](#).

**Ol** is nearly always paired with **pli** or **malpli**:

Ŝi kuras pli rapide ol vi.  
= She runs faster than you do.

Via domo estas pli luksa ol la nia.  
= Your house is more luxurious than ours.

Li vin amas pli ol ĉiujn.<sup>z</sup>  
= He loves you more than all [the rest].

Li vin amas pli ol ĉiuj.  
= He loves you more than all [the rest do].

Estas por mi nenio pli bona, ol ke mi forkuru.<sup>z</sup>  
= There's nothing better for me than to run away.

Occasionally one finds **ol** elsewhere when a comparison is made without **pli**:

Tiu esprimu signifas ion tute alian ol "jam ne".<sup>z</sup>  
= That expression means something entirely different from "not yet."

Li havas malsaman karakteron ol lia patro.  
= He has a different character from his father.

Mi preferas kukon ol glaciaĵon (or al glaciaĵo).  
= I prefer cake to ice cream.

Ni alvenis antaŭ ol komenciĝis la muziko.  
= We arrived before the music began.

**opinii** = to have the opinion that. See [pensi](#).

**oportuna** = convenient. See [konvena](#).

An “opportunity” is most often expressed as an **okazo**. See [instanco](#).

**oranĝerio** = conservatory, greenhouse.

Apparently the word comes from the French *orangerie*, which was an appropriate name when French conservatories were largely given over to orange trees. The name stuck so well that it entered Esperanto, where it refers to *any* sort of greenhouse. Another word, used interchangeably for greenhouse and lacking any connotation of orange tree production, is **forcejo**, from the verb **forci** = “to raise (plants) in a greenhouse because the outdoor weather is too cold for them.”

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**pagi** = to pay (One pays al = “to”

someone **por** = “for” something. The amount paid is in the accusative. One can also pay a cost or a bill (both in the accusative).\*

Mi pagos al vi tri magiajn fabojn por la bovo.

= I'll pay you three magic beans for the cow.

\*-The accusative is generally used with amounts, regardless of the verb: **Ŝia robo kostis 200 dolarojn.** = “Her dress cost 200 dollars.” **Lia filino pezas 30 kilogramojn.** = “His daughter weighs 65 pounds.” And so on.

**pamfleto** (= **paskvilo**) = usually libellous, often humorous, often political pamphlet. See [broŝuro](#).

**pansi** = to dress (a wound). See [dresi](#).

**paragrafo** = paragraph (numbered part of a legal document).

**Not to be confused with:**

**alineo** = paragraph (in ordinary text)

Por retositejo oni pli ofte alineigas ol por presita teksto.

= For a web site you indent more often than for printed text.

Vi trovos la regulon en paragrafo n-ro 432.B.xii.a. Kiel vi forgesis tion?!

= You'll find the rule in paragraph 432.B.xii.a. How did you forget that?!

**paroli** = speak. Hence: **parolo** = speech (a capacity, an action).

**Not to be confused with:**

**prelego** = speech, lecture

**prediko** = sermon

En la universitato oni aŭskultas prelegojn, en la preĝejo predikojn.  
= In the university we hear lectures, in church sermons.

Ŝi predikas virton, sed praktikas pekadon.  
= She preaches virtue but practices sin.

Lia parolo estas tre malklara, eble pro ikto.  
= His speech is very mushy, perhaps because of a stroke.

**parento** = a relative.

**Not to be confused with:**

**gepatroj** = parents.

Ĉiuj parentoj sendis donacojn okaze de la nasko.  
= All the relatives sent gifts on occasion of the birth.

Viaj gepatroj misedukis vin; vi estas kaj fripono kaj friponido.  
= Your parents miseducated you; you are a rascal and the son of rascals.

See also [peranto](#).

**parentezo** = parenthetical expression. See [kramfo](#).

**paskvilo** (= pamfleto) = usually libellous, often humorous, often political pamphlet. See [broŝuro](#).

**paŝtelo** = crayon. See [krajono](#).

**pato** = frying pan; stalemate (in chess).

**Not to be confused with:**

**poto** = pot, saucepan.

**frapeto** = pat (as in “pat on the backside”).

Lardon oni fritas en pato.  
= We fry bacon in a frying pan.

La falantan ovon ŝi kaptis en pato.  
= She caught the falling egg in a frying pan.

La malamikan reĝon ŝi kaptis en pato.  
= She captured the enemy king in a stalemate.

Reĝo kaptita en pato nek venkas nek malvenkas, sed nur patas en pataĵo.

= A king caught in stalemate neither wins nor loses, and the game ends in a draw.

Supon oni boligas en poto.

= You boil soup in a saucepan.

Misiistojn la sovaĝuloj kuiris en potego.

= The savages cooked missionaries in a great pot.

La katon ŝi turmentis per frapetoj sur la kapo.

= She was tormenting the cat with little pats on the head.

**peĉo** = pitch, tar. See [piĉo](#).

**pelto** = a furpiece.

**Not to be confused with:**

**felo** = pelt.

Kuniklo havas belajn harojn kaj tial valoran felon.

= A rabbit has pretty fur and thus a valuable pelt.

La pelto sur mia ĉapelo estas el felo de kuniklo.

= The furpiece on my hat is made of a rabbit pelt.

See also [haro](#).

**peni** = to try, strive, make an effort. See [klopodi](#).

**pensi** = to think, consider, ponder.

**Not to be confused with:**

**kredi** = to believe

**opinii** = to have the opinion that.

Pri kio vi pensos?

= What will you be thinking about?

Mi konfesas, ke mi neniam pensis pri tiu problemo.

= I confess that I never thought about that problem.

La filosofo havis profundajn pensojn kaj forĝesis manĝi.

= The philosopher was having deep thoughts and forgot to eat.



Mi kredas je Dio, sed mi kredas ankaŭ ke Dio estas kato.  
= I believe in God, but I also believe that God is a cat.

Mi opinias, ke ne valoras okupiĝi pri Esperanto ĉar ĉiu en la mondo jam scipovas la anglan, krom eble usonaj gimnazianoj.  
= I think it is no longer useful to worry about Esperanto because everyone in the world knows English, except perhaps American high school students.

See also [pensio](#)

**pensio** = pension. See [pensi](#). Hence: **pensiulo** = retired person.

See also [emerito](#)

La maljuna profesorino iun tagon forgesis sian nomon kaj decidis, ke jam venis la tempo por pensiigi.  
= The elderly professor one day forgot her own name and decided that the time had come to retire.

Multaj volontuloj en nia asocio estis pensiuloj ĉar ili havas pli da tempo post sia emeritigo.  
= Many volunteers in our association are retired people because they have more time after their retirement.

**per** = by means of, with. See [kun](#).

**peranto** = go-between, agent, facilitator.

**Peranto** is derived from the verb **peri** = “to mediate, act as go-between,” which in turn is derived from the preposition **per** = “by means of.”

**Not to be confused with:**

**svatisto** = marriage broker See also [gepatroj](#), [parencio](#).

Subramania Krisnakumar kaj Wu Guozhu geedziĝos: Esperanto vere estas edz-peranto.  
= Subramania Krisnakumar and Wu Guozhu are to be married;  
Esperanto really is a marriage broker.

Ĉar la knabo estis tiom malagrabla, la gepatroj decidis dungi svatistinon por trovi taŭge senesperan fianĉinon.  
= Since the boy was so disagreeable, the parents decided to hire a matchmaker to find an appropriately desperate fiancée.

**perforti** = to rape. See [ravi](#).

**perilo** = something intermediary, means. See [medio](#), [peranto](#).

**perlabori** = to earn. See [gajni](#).

**pesi** = weigh (something). See [pezi](#).

**pesto** = plague.

**Not to be confused with:**

**damaĝbesto** = pest, household beast.

Rato estas damaĝbesto.

= A rat is a pest.

Ĉiu mortis pro malsato post pestego de akridoj.

= Everyone died of hunger after the plague of locusts.

Tiu infano kaj pestas kaj bestas! Neniam mi vartu lin plu!

= That kid is both pestiferous and bestial! I'll never babysit him again!

**peti** = to ask (someone) for something. See [demandi](#).

Caution: This is a false cognate in French, where it tends to bring to mind the “familiar” French verb *peter* = to break wind, and the corresponding noun *pet* = a fart. French Esperantists learn to ignore the problem, but ever and anon one causes embarrassment, amusement, or both quite by accident.

See also [farti](#).

**petrolo** = petroleum. See [gaso](#).

**pezi** = to weigh (a certain amount).

**Not to be confused with:**

**pesi** = to weigh (an object).

Ni pesis nian avinon.

= We weighed our grandmother.

Ŝi pezis 99 kilogramojn!

= She weighed 218 pounds!

La maljuna paŝtisto ne pezis eĉ duonon de tio, kion pezis la malgranda Niko.<sup>2</sup>

= The old shepherd didn't weigh even half what little Nikko weighed.

Li pesadis en la kapo la argumentojn de la doktoro kontraŭ la argumentoj

de la advokatoj.<sup>z</sup>

= In his mind he was weighing the arguments of the doctor against those of the lawyers.

**Pezi** is also used metaphorically for a burden that weighs one down:

Mia studo de la hebrea lingvo pezas sur mi.

= My study of Hebrew is weighing on me.

**piĉo** = (1) female genitalia; (2) musical pitch.

*Not to be confused with:*

**pitĉo** = pitch (musical note).\*

**ĵeto** = pitch, toss, throw.

**asfalto** = asphalt, pitch, tar.

**peĉo** = pitch, tar.; bad luck.

La pitĉo de la piano estis malĝusta.

= The piano pitch is inaccurate.

Oni ofte renovigis la asfalton de la strato kie loĝis la urbestro.

= They often renewed the asphalt on the street where the mayor lived.

Venis la unua ĵeto de la basbala ludo.

= Here came the first pitch of the baseball game.

Ŝia piĉo ŝvelis pro infekto.

= Her pudendum was swollen with infection.

Oni peĉis la pekulon, kovris lin per plumoj, kaj poste trinkis teon.

= They tared and feathered the sinner and then had tea.

\*-The spelling **pitĉo** apparently exists in order to avoid lewd jokes with **piĉo**. (**La pianistino donis sian pi(t)ĉon al la orkestro**, and the like.) Since for most speakers the added **-t-** before **-ĉ-** does not affect the pronunciation, it does not solve the problem, and some Esperantists use the simpler spelling with both meanings. Use the spelling with **-t-** unless you want to be one of *them*! A similar spelling change that does not affect pronunciation for most speakers is **fino** = “end” vs **finno** = “Finn.” What **finno** would want to live in **Fin-lando** rather than **Finn-lando**, after all! Another example is **maĉo** = “chewing” vs **ma(t)ĉo** = “sporting match.” Yet another is Zamenhof’s own word **getto** with its anomalous double **-t-**. Speakers of languages that distinguish long and short consonants, such as Japanese and Italian, tend to observe that difference and to see **maĉo** and **matĉo** as different. It seems unlikely that Zamenhof intended a consonant-length difference to matter in Esperanto, but it is possible that the future may universalize it. For the time being we must live with the fact that *some* speakers both pronounce and hear this difference, while most do not, and regard it as merely a polite orthographic convention.

**pigo** = magpie.

*Not to be confused with:*

**porko** = pig.

**porkaĵo** = pork.

**pigra** = lazy.

Ni lupoj manĝas porkojn; vi homoj manĝas porkaĵon.

= We wolves eat pigs; you people eat pork.

Pigra pigido atendas nutraĵon de la pigopatrino.

= A lazy baby magpie is waiting for food from the mother magpie.

**pigra** = lazy. See [pigo](#).

**pikli** = to transplant. See [piki](#).

**pluki** = to pick (flowers). See [piki](#).

**pioĉo** = a pick. See [piki](#).

**piki** = to prick.

Hence: **pikilo** = thorn, pick, sting.

But: **piko** = spade (at cards).

*Not to be confused with:*

**pikli** = to transplant.

**pluki** = to pluck, pick (flowers).

**pioĉo** = a pick. Hence: **pioĉi** = to pick, work with a pick.

**dorno** = thorn.

Recenzistoj estas la dornoj en la rozujo de la verkado.

= Critics are the thorns in the rosebush of authorship.

Li plukis por ŝi belan rozon, sed kun pikiloj.

= He picked a beautiful rose for her, but one with thorns.

Li plukis por ŝi belan rozon, sed kun dornoj.

= He picked a beautiful rose for her, but one with thorns.

Li elektis la pikan ason.

= He drew the ace of spades.

La rapide kreskantan rizon oni devas tuj prikli.  
= The rapidly growing rice must be transplanted immediately.

Pioĉadis la kaptito en sala minejo.  
= The captive picked away in a salt mine.

**pisi** = to piss.

This is *not* a polite word. The more clinical term is **urini** = urinate. A whimsical and less crude euphemism is **maltrinki**.

**pitĉo** = pitch (musical note). See [piĉo](#).

**plaĉi** = to be pleasing to. See [ŝati](#).

**plado** = serving plate. See [plato](#).

**plata** = flat, i.e., (1) low in comparison with the width and depth, as a flat package, (2) not rounded, or (3) not bumpy (comparable to **ebena**).

*Not to be confused with:*

**ebena** = flat (not bumpy) (See also [plato](#).)

**glata** = smooth.

**horizontala** = horizontal.

**flata** = flattering.

Ili loĝas sur la tibeta altebenaĵo.  
= They live on the Tibetan high plateau.

La supraĵoj de la piramido estas ebenaj.  
= The surfaces of the pyramid are flat.

Li taksas Esperanton malpraktika kaj la mondon plata.  
= He considers Esperanto impractical and the world flat.

Platmondujoj ofte imagas la anglan ĉie uzebla.  
= Flat worlders often think English is usable everywhere.

Kiel oni flatu malbelulon? Nomu lin inteligenta!  
= How do you flatter someone ugly? Call him intelligent!

Se vi imagas, ke flato logos min al vi, vi pravas.  
= If you imagine that flattery will attract me, you are right.

**plato = slab, plate (generic, as in tectonic plates). (Compare [plata](#).)**

***Not to be confused with:***

**plado** = serving plate.

**telero** = dining plate.\*

**pleto** = tray.

**plejdo** = plaid.

**ŝildo** = signboard; license plate.

**afiŝo** = poster. (See also [flata](#).)

Babaon ni manĝis sur pladoj.  
= We ate rum baba on plates.

La templo konstruiĝis per marmoraj platoj.  
= The temple had been built of marble plates.

Ŝtalecaj platoj armis la raketon kontraŭ starvarsaj lazerradioj.  
= Steel plates shielded the rocket against Star Wars laser rays.

La kelnero alportis pleton da teleroj.  
= The waiter brought a tray of plates.

Sub la maroj estas tektonaj platoj.  
= There are tectonic plates under the seas.

Sur la tomboplato li trovis sian propran nomon.  
= On the tombstone he found his own name.

Ĉu li havas la aŭtoŝildon "IMAGU" ĉar li deziras imagi pli bonan aŭton?  
= Does he have the license plate "IMAGINE" because he wants to imagine a better car?

**plej = most. Pli is used to form the comparative form of an adjective or adverb. It is often used with ol. (See [ol](#).)**

**Plej** is used to form the superlative form of an adjective or adverb:

stulta = stupid   pli stulta = more stupid   plej stulta = most stupid

\*-The difference between a **plado** and a **telero** seems to be that a **telero** is slightly concave. Thus a shallow soupbowl can also be described as a **telero**. A **plado**, in contrast, is flatter and often larger, and overlaps with what we might call a "platter."

bona = good	pli bona = better	plej bona = best
peza = heavy	pli peza = heavier	plej peza = heaviest
eta = little	pli eta = littler	plej eta = littlest
ofte = often	malpli ofte = less often	malplej ofte = least often

Ŝi estas la plej inteligenta.  
= She is the most intelligent.

Li rompis mian plej ŝatatan pokalon!  
= He broke my favorite trophy!

Caution: In most Romance languages, the comparative and superlative forms of an adjective or adverb are distinguished by the presence or absence of an article (equivalent to Esperanto **la**). There is no such rule in Esperanto, but use of **la** with **pli** can potentially confuse Esperantists of Romance background. See also [pli](#), [mosto](#).

**plejdo** = plaid. See [plato](#).

**plenaĝulo** = adult. See [adulto](#).

**pleto** = tray. See [plato](#).

**pli** = more. See [plej](#), [plu](#), [des pli](#).

**plu** = further, additionally, more (in relation to time or space).

**Not to be confused with:**

**pli** = more (in relation to number, size, or degree).

**Plu** means continuing, going on in a series or continuation. **Pli** means more than a specified amount, and is also used to form comparative adverbs and adjectives.

(See also [plej](#), [multa](#).)

Mi neniam kantos plu.  
= I shall never sing again.

Diru plu!  
= Say on!

Vi ne plu plaĉas al mi.  
= I don't like you any more.

Mi devos enketi plu.  
= I'll have to look into it further.

Ŝi ŝoforas pli rapide ol mi.  
= She drives more rapidly than I do.

Mi ĉiam bezonas pli da mono.  
= I always need more money.

Vi donacis nur kvin dolarojn. Donacu pli!  
= You contributed only five dollars. Give more!

Ne petadu plu! Mi donacos pli!  
= Don't keep asking on and on. I'll give more!

**plumpa = awkward, inelegant, gauche.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**dik(et)a** = plump, fat.

**Ŝvela** = plump, bloated, swollen, filled (from **ŝveli** = "to bloat, be filled up").

Pro ŝiaj plumpaj spritaĵoj oni preferis ne inviti ŝin plu.  
= Because of her awkward jokes people preferred not to invite her any more.

Li posedis tutan keston de plumpaj ĉemizoj.  
= He had an entire chest of unflattering shirts.

Pro lia dika postaĵo, li preferis pli grandan seĝon ol en turista klaso; oni nomas la fenomenon "unuaklasa postaĵo".  
= Because of his fat butt, he preferred a larger seat than those in tourist class, a phenomenon known as a "first-class backside."

Ŝvelis la veloj kaj ni ekis!  
= The sails swelled and we were off!

**po = apiece.**

**Esperanto makes slightly heavier use of po than English does of "apiece." Usually po almost exactly translates "apiece," except that "apiece" comes after the number and thing counted, while po comes before them:**

Ili manĝis po tri pomojn.  
= They ate three apples each.



Ili kostas po sescent enojn.  
= They cost ¥600 apiece.

Sometimes **po** comes close to corresponding with the @ (“at”) sign used in shop signs (but *not* as used in Internet mail addresses):

ses lecionoj po dek eŭroj  
= six lessons @ €10  
= six lessons at €10 apiece.\*

lecionoj po dek eŭroj por horo  
= lessons @ €10/hr

pomoj po dek frankoj la seson (= po dek frankoj por ses)  
= apples @ 6 for 10 francs  
= apples at ten francs per half-dozen

Li lukras (po) tri dolarojn en samajno.  
= He earns [at the rate of] three dollars each week.\*\*

When several actors are involved, the **po** usually refers to them rather than to any objects involved:

Ili lukras po tri dolarojn en semajno.  
= They earn three dollars a week apiece.

Ili lukras tri dolarojn en semajno.  
= They earn three dollars a week [as a team].

Ili estas starigataj en vicoj, po ses en unu vico.<sup>2</sup>  
= They are being stood in lines, six to a line.

Sometimes other translations are more graceful:

Li ĉiam sendas al mi po 2-3 bildkartojn.  
= He is always sending me two or three postcards at a time.

Metu po du sukerkubojn en la tasojn.  
= Put two cubes of sugar in each of the cups.

\*-Ses lecionoj por dek eŭroj = ses lecionoj kontraŭ dek eŭroj = “six lessons for ten euros.” If *each* lesson costs ten euros, the **po** is needed, and the **por** or **kontraŭ** becomes optional: **ses lecionoj (kontraŭ/por) po dek eŭroj** = “six lessons at a rate of ten euros apiece.”

\*\*.-Notice that the **po** can be omitted in this example (and in some of the others) with no change in meaning. Some Esperantists get along perfectly well almost never using **po**. It is my impression that the use of **po** is generally decreasing in circumstances where it can be omitted or avoided.

La kurso daŭras dek tagojn po unu horo.  
= The class lasts ten days for an hour each day.

Mi devos skribi po kelkajn vortojn al miaj amikoj.  
= I must write a few words to each of my friends.

Po kvar glasoj staris antaŭ la festenantoj.  
= Po kvar glasoj staris antaŭ ĉiu festenanto.  
= Four glasses stood before each celebrant.

Ĉies profito estu po kvarono de la tuto.<sup>\*\*\*</sup>  
= Each one's profit shall be [at the rate of] a quarter of the whole.

\*\*\*-Note that if we said **Ĉies profito estu kvarono de la tuto.** = "Everyone's profit shall be a quarter of the whole," we would more probably mean that everyone would divide up one of the quarters, leaving the remaining three quarters for other uses.

CAUTION: Many speakers make errors in the use of **po**, and you will sometimes meet it wrongly used. (In general, if what follows **po** is not a number, it is probably being misused!) Here are some common errors:

Wrong: Mi donis du kraĵojn po studento.

Right: Mi donis po du kraĵojn al la studentoj.  
= I gave the students two pencils apiece.

Wrong: Ili kostis al mi \$1.25 po.

Right: Ili kostis al mi po \$1.25.  
= They cost me \$1.25 apiece.

Wrong: Ŝi enverŝis tri gutojn da viskio po glaso.

Right: Ŝi enverŝis po tri gutojn da viskio en la glasojn.  
= She poured three drops of whiskey into each of the glasses.

Wrong: La prezo estas tri dolaroj po persono.

Right: La prezo estas po tri dolaroj.

Right: La prezo estas po tri dolaroj por ĉiu persono.  
= The price is \$3 a person.

Some Esperantists argue (mostly in vain) that **po** is a preposition and

should therefore not take an accusative after it. That was indeed Zamenhof's customary usage.

Ni havas sur ĉiu mano po kvin fingroj.<sup>z</sup>  
= We have five fingers on each hand.

Al ĉiu infano mi donis po tri pomoj.<sup>z</sup>  
= I gave three apples to each child.

Societoj povas elekti po unu delegito por ĉiuj 25 membroj.<sup>z</sup>  
= The societies may elect one delegate for each 25 members.

However (as the earlier examples illustrate) modern usage tends to regard **po** as a non-prepositional particle (like **ĉi**), which does not affect the use of **-n** one way or the other, and it is *in fact* often followed by an accusative. Since there is nothing inherently “prepositional” in the relationship that **po** highlights, there is a good deal of logic to this, and my recommendation is to use the accusative when syntax requires it, whether or not there is a **po** floating around.

La gastoj trinkis po unu glaseto(n) da vino.  
= The guests drank one little glass of wine apiece.

If, after all this, **po** makes no sense to you and you want to avoid it altogether, you can simply use the derived adverb **poe** exactly in place of English “apiece” and forget all other possibilities. It won't be the soul of elegance —actually it is a bit bizarre— but chances are that nobody will misunderstand.

**podio** = rostrum. See [rostro](#).

**poe** = apiece. See [po](#).

**pokalo** = goblet. See [bokalo](#).

**policano** = **policisto** = police officer (a person). See [poliso](#).

**polico** = the police, as an institution. See [poliso](#). Compare [gvardio](#).

**poliso** = insurance policy.

*Not to be confused with:*

**polico** = police (as an institution).

**policano** = **policisto** = police officer (a person).

Ŝi vendis polisojn al ĉiuj siaj parencoj.

= She sold policies to all her relatives.

Tio estas problemo por la polico, sed policistoj evitemas ĝin.

= That's a problem for the police, but the police tend to avoid it.

Ne feliĉas la vivo de policano.

= A policeman's life is not a happy one.

See also [gvardio](#).

**politiko** = (1) policy; (2) politics.

Nia klubo havas tre klaran lingvan politikon.

= Our club has a very clear policy about language.

Nekompreneblas kroata politiko.

= Croatian politics is unintelligible.

**polucio** = nocturnal emission.\*

**Not to be confused with:**

**poluo** = environmental pollution (an unofficial and still rare word).

**malpuraĵo** = pollution, dirt.

**malpur(ad/ec)o** = pollution, uncleanliness.

**profano** = an uninitiated person.

Hence: **profani** = "to pollute a sacred place."

Laŭ ilia leĝo, post profanado de la templo oni devas tuj morti.

= By their law, after profaning the temple one must die immediately.

Ili festis tradician rajton je la unua polucio de junulo.

= They used to celebrate a traditional rite at the first nocturnal emission of a young man.

Li respondecis je la poluo de riveroj per kemiaĵoj.

= He was responsible for the pollution of the rivers by chemicals.

\*-For a growing number of esperantists, perhaps influenced by English, polucio is also used to mean "pollution," as in **polucio de riveraj akvoj per kemiaĵoj** = "pollution of river waters by chemicals." It is well to be sensitive to the problem, however, and avoid potentially ambiguous sentences like the following: **La prezidanto de la firmao "Aŭtoj Stelo" respondecas pri multe da polucio.** = "The president of Star Autos is responsible for a lot of emissions." So far as I know, nobody has yet proposed a non-solution to the problem by spelling one of them **polutcio** on the analogy of **pi(t)ĉo**! With luck, nobody will. **Poluo** is a fine word and deserves to become standard.

Ne diskutu malpurigon de la aero kaj akvo ĝis ni venkos kapitalismon.  
= Do not discuss air and water pollution till we have conquered capitalism.

**poluo** = environmental pollution. See [polucio](#).

**polvo** = dust. See [pulvoro](#).

**por/pro** = for.

**The two words por and pro can rarely be substituted for each other.**

**Essentially pro means “on account of, due to, because of,” while por means “for the sake of, in order to, in preparation for”\* :**

Ŝi faris tion pro li.

= She did that because of him.

Ŝi faris tion por li.

= She did that for him.

\*-Some Esperantists find it useful to think of **pro** as referring to past things (usually causes) and **por** as referring to future ones (usually goals), but this is often misleading, since time is often less important than other considerations: **Ĉe la bankedo ni trinkis/trinkos pro nia komuna celo.** = “At the banquet we drank/will drink to our common goal.”  
**Por veni pli rapide mi biciklis/biciklos.**  
= “To arrive faster, I came/will come by bike.”

With a noun or pronoun, **por** means “for the sake of”:

Mi pentris ĝin tute por vi.

= I painted it entirely for you.

Mi ĉion oferis por la lekantetoj.

= I sacrificed everything for the daisies.

La plej granda parto de la publiko estas tute indiferenta por ĉia nova afero.<sup>2</sup>

= The greatest part of the public is entirely indifferent toward everything new.

**Por** used with a verb means “in order to”:

Ni iros por aĉeti rizon.

= We'll go to buy rice.

Ni iru por saluti la aliplanedanojn.

= Let's go say hello to the space aliens.

After the verb **danki** = “to thank,” either **pro** or **por** is used to refer to the thing one is thanking about. Most speakers prefer **pro** in this case, but

both are colloquial:

Dankon por/pro via letero.  
= Thanks for your letter.

**Por** is sometimes used in place of **dum** to indicate extent of time:

Ni iros al Seŭlo por/dum tri semajnoj.  
= We'll go to Seoul for three weeks.

**Por** is used to indicate prices and payments:

Ili pagis tro multe por tiu domo.  
= They paid too much for that house.

porko = pig. See [pigo](#).

poro = pore, tiny hole. See [kavo](#).

post = after (in time). See [antaŭ](#).

postuli = to require, demand. See [demandi](#).

poto = pot, saucepan. See [pato](#).

praktiko = practice (as against theory), practical experience, usage (as “religious practices”); profession.

Hence: praktiki = to put into practice; to be a professional at (as “to practice medicine.”)

*Not to be confused with:*

ekzerci = to drill, exercise (somebody).

ekzerciĝi ~ sin ekzerci = to practice (as the piano).

(Caution: You don't exercise the piano; you exercise yourself “to” = **al** or “in” = **en** the piano.)

ekzerco = an exercise.

Kio bonas en teorio ofte fuŝas en praktiko.

= What's good in theory often screws up in practice.

Ŝi praktikas juron, li medicinon.

= She practices law; he, medicine.

Ni praktikas universalan amon per kvesto por nia homama asocio.

= We practice universal love by collecting money for our human love association.

La ĥorestro ekzercis la ĥoron.  
= The choirmaster exercised the choir.

La tigro ekzercis siajn piedojn.  
= The tiger exercised its legs.

En Nuakĉoto oni parolas Esperanton nur por ekzerĉi la voĉon.  
= In Nouakchott one speaks Esperanto only to exercise the voice.

Ĉiutage mi ekzercas min duonhoron.  
= I exercise for half an hour every day.

Li ĉiutage ekzercis sin du horojn al la piano.  
= He practiced the piano two hours every day.

Ĉiutage li ekzerciĝis du horojn al la piano.  
= Every day he practiced the piano for two hours.

Daĉjeto ekzerciĝas nokte kaj tage en la parolado, neniam en la silentado.  
= Night and day Little Davey practices talking, never shutting up!

Trijaraĝa, Daĉjeto jam havis bone ekzercitan buŝon.  
= At three, Little Davey already had a well exercised mouth.

Lokaj kluboj ekzistas por ekzerciĝi al Esperanto, ne por krokodili!  
= Local clubs exist to practice Esperanto, not to crocodile.

**pramo = ferryboat.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**infanĉareto** = pram, baby carriage.

**ĉaro** = cart, carriage, chariot.

Ni transiris la riveron per pramo.  
= We went by ferry across the river.

La du infanetojn feoj forŝtelis el la ĉareto.  
= Fairies stole the two babies from the carriage.

Tondre antaŭen iris la ĉaroj.  
= The chariots thundered forth.

**preciza** = precise, accurate. See [akurata](#).

**precize** = exactly, just. See [ĝusta](#).

**prediko** = sermon. See [paroli](#).

**preferata** = favorite, preferred. See [favorata](#).

**preĝejo** = church, temple, synagogue (a building, literally “place where people pray”).

*Not to be confused with:*

**eklezio** = church (as an organization).

**prelego** = speech, lecture. See [paroli](#).

**preni** = to take (to carry along a physical object to some other location).

In English we also “take” all sorts of things metaphorically: baths, showers, pictures, taxis, walks, and so on. Most of these “takings” require other verbs in Esperanto:

take a bus = *trafi buson*

= take a picture = *foti*

take a pill = *gluti pilolon*

= take a shower = *sin duŝi*

= take a walk = *promeni*

= take coffee = *elekti kafon*

= take supper = *vespermanĝi*

Because **preni** literally refers to carrying something, to take people somewhere is normally expressed by **konduki** = “to lead.” If you take them by car, you **ŝofori** or **veturigi** them or **konduki aŭtomobile** them. See [ŝofori](#) and [veturi](#).

**preteksti** = to adduce (as a pretext). See [pretendi](#).

**pretendi** = claim (to one’s own advantage).

*Not to be confused with:*

**aserti** = assert, claim (in good faith or in logic).

**ŝajnigi** = pretend, make it seem as though.

**preteksti** = to adduce (as a pretext).

*Ambaŭ du pretendas esti la posedanto de la bieno.*

= Both claim to be the owner of the estate.

*Mi argumentu negative, vi aserte.*



= I'll argue the negative case; you take the positive side.

Mi asertas, ke la aŭto tre alte valoras, sinjoro.

= I assure you that the car is very valuable, sir.

La fripona eksterulo sukcese pretendis la rajton heredi ĉion.

= The roguish outsider successfully claimed the right to inherit everything.

Por eviti la imposton ŝi pretekstis nescion de la leĝo.

= She claimed ignorance of the law as a pretext to evade the tax.

Ili pretekstis la ĉeeston de komencantoj por krokodilaĉi senĉese.

= They used the presence of beginners as a pretext for crocodiling without end.

Li ŝajnis, ke la aŭtaĉo alte valoras, do mi aĉetis ĝin.

= He made it seem as though the junk car was valuable, so I bought it.

Nun ni ŝajnu, ke mi estas la lupo kaj vi estas Ruĝa Kapuĉulineto.

= Now let's pretend that I am the wolf and you are Red Riding Hood.

**prezidanto** = president (of an organization). See [prezidento](#).

**prezidento** = president (of a country).

*Not to be confused with:*

**prezidanto** = president (literally presiding person) of an organization.

**Prezidanto** is a participle form from the verb **prezidi** = "to preside,"

hence one can also say **prezidinto** = "ex-president" and **prezidonto** =

"president-elect." The president of a country is a kind of **prezidanto**, but the term **prezidento** is reserved only for that meaning.

**pro** = for. See [por/pro](#).

**procedo** = procedure, process (as an industrial process). See [proceso](#).

**proceso** = lawsuit.

*Not to be confused with:*

**procedo** = procedure, process (as an industrial process).

**procezo** = natural process.

**proceduro** = customary or legal procedure.

Ni procesis kontraŭ ŝi ĉar ŝi konstante malplenigis sian hundaĉon sur nian gazonon.

= We sued her because she was constantly emptying her damned dog onto our lawn.

Pri la eduka procezo ĉiu pretendas spertecon. Jen la problemo!

= Everyone pretends to be an expert on the process of education. That's the problem!

Per sekreta procedo oni kreis pilolon kontraŭ stulteco, sed ĝi estas dikigema.

= With a secret process they created a pill for stupidity, but it's fattening.

Ni ne plu havas piroteknikaĵojn pro proceso fare de la Kampajno por Purigi la Oceanojn.

= We don't have fireworks any more because of a lawsuit by the Campaign to Clean Up the Oceans.

Kio estas la proceduro por geedziĝi en ĉi tiu lando, mia karega?

= What's the procedure for getting married in this country, my beloved?

**proceduro = customary or legal procedure. See [proceso](#).**

**procezo = natural process. See [proceso](#).**

**profano = religious pollution. See [polucio](#).**

**profiti = to profit from, take advantage of.**

Mi profitu vian viziton por demandi pri Edmond Privat.

= Let me take advantage of your visit to ask about Edmond Privat.

Ĝuste vi profitos la aranĝon.

= You'll be the one to profit from the arrangement.

**promeni = to go for a stroll or for an outing. Note that in Esperanto one can promeni in a boat, on a bike, in a car, etc. as well as by foot.**

**proponi = offer (something, to do something). See [oferi](#). Caution: If you proponi something drinkable or edible to someone, you have to foot the bill.**

Permesu al mi proponi al vi manĝon de omaro, sinjorino. Dankon. Al mi plaĉegas lerni, ke vi riĉas.

= Allow me to invite you to have a lobster dinner, madame. Thank you. I am delighted to learn you are rich.

**protekti = protect, especially through one's influence or authority. See [gardi](#).**

**provi = to test, measure, try out; to try (to do something). See [pruvi](#),**

**klopodi.**

**provianto = provisions, normally food. (Awkwardly, the derivative verb provianti, to cater, produces proviantanto, a caterer.) See provizi.**

La ŝarĝoĉevalo portis kofrojn, tendon kaj provianton.<sup>z</sup>  
= The workhorse carried boxes, a tent, and provisions.

Ĉu via onklino estas proviantantestro?  
= Is your aunt the chief caterer?

Ŝi okupiĝas pri proviantado, sed nur je la financa flanko.  
= She works in catering, but only on the financial side.

**provizi = “to provision; supply.” One usually provizas someone “with” (per or je) something. See provianto.**

Li provizis la armeon per municioj.  
= He supplied the army with munitions.

Ĉu vi senpage provizos mian kelon je vino se mi lernos Esperanton?  
= Will you provision my cellar with wine for free if I learn Esperanto?

Ŝi provizis lin per alibio.  
= She provided him [with] an alibi.

Similarly, we do not usually say “She provided the cork for the bottle” in Esperanto, but rather:

Ŝi provizis la botelon per korko.  
= She provided the bottle with a cork.

However, in one place Zamenhof did in fact use **provizi** plus the thing provided, so if you slip into using **provizi** like “to provide” rather than like “to provision,” you can still say you are following him:

Provizu al vi akvon por la tempo de sieĝo.<sup>z</sup>  
= Provide yourself water for the time of siege.

**pruno = plum.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**sekigita pruno** = prune.

Kroatoj trinkas brunan prunan brandon.  
= Croatians drink brown plum brandy.

Mi neniam kuraĝis demandi, kial la maljunulo insiste manĝis ĉiutage sekigitajn prunojn.

= I never dared ask why the old man insisted on eating prunes every day.

**prunti = borrow; lend.**

If the same word is used both for borrowing and for lending a book, say, how does one distinguish between being a borrower and being a lender? Esperanto seems to be taking the book's perspective here! The answer is that one uses (al)prunti al = "lend" or (el)prunti el = "borrow." De may be used instead of el. Similarly one can say pruntedoni (or prunte doni) = "to give on loan" and pruntepreni (or prunte preni) = "to take on loan."

Li pruntis al mi sian dentobroson.

= He lent me his toothbrush.

Li "pruntis" tri forkojn de la restoracio.

= He "borrowed" three forks from the restaurant.

Nek elpruntu nek alpruntu.

= Neither a borrower nor a lender be.

**pruvi = show by reasoning.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**provi** = test, measure, try out; to try to do something.

**montri** = show, demonstrate by illustration; point at or out.

See also [konstati](#).)

Ni provis la novan aŭton kaj bedaŭrinde detruis ĝin.

= We tried out the new car and unfortunately totalled it.

Li pruvis, ke aliplanedanoj ne havus problemojn pri participoj.

= He showed that extraterrestrials would not have problems with participles.

Ŝi montris, ke la korelativoj facile lerneblas per la metodo "Gugululu".

= She showed that correlatives were easily learnt by the "Gugululu" method.

Ŝi montris/pruvis, ke la akuzito estis kun ŝi dum la krimo.

= She showed that the accused had been with her during the crime.

Ŝi pruvis, ke triangulo ne povas esti trionigita per geometriaj metodoj.  
= She showed that a triangle could not be trisected by the methods of geometry.

Montru al mi la vorton en la vortaro!  
= Show me the word in the dictionary!

Daĉjo, ne montru homojn!  
= Davey, don't point at people.!

**pudro** = face powder. See [pulvoro](#).

**pugo** = backside, buttocks.

***Not to be confused with:***

**mopso** = pugdog.

Li aĉetis ĉarman, malgrandan mopson.  
= He bought a charming little pug.

Mi batos al vi la pugaĉon!  
= I'll beat your miserable backside!

**pulvo** = gunpowder. See [pulvoro](#).

**pulvoro** = powder.

***Not to be confused with:***

**pudro** = face powder.

**pulvo** = gunpowder.

**polvo** = dust.

Por fari turkstilan kafon, necesas pulvorigi la kafberojn.  
= To make Turkish coffee you have to reduce the coffee beans to a powder.

Se mi aĉetos pulvon anstataŭ pudron, ĉu eksplodos mia vizaĝo?  
= If I buy gunpowder instead of face powder, will my face explode?

Ni identigis la murdistinon per la pudro sur la pulovero.  
= We identified the murderer by the face powder on the sweater.

Kiu ŝutis polvon en la pudron?!  
= Who dumped dust in the face powder?!

pupitro = rostrum, bookstand. See [rostro](#).

A B C Ê D E F G Ĝ H Î I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ŝ T U V Z

radio = (1) ray; (2) radio (as a communications medium, formerly sometimes also radiofonio); (3) radiation (as in radiotherapy, radioactivity); (4) spoke (of a wheel or the analogous part of a radially symmetrical object).

(The third meaning appears mostly as a prefix. In physics most kinds of radiation are referred to as radiado.)

*Not to be confused with:*

radioricevilo ~ radioaparato (an individual instrument, formerly sometimes radiofono). See also [televido](#).\*

*-The same general distinction between the system and the instrument is observed in telegrafo/telegrafio and (less often) telefono/telefonio.
---

Ŝi aŭskultadis la radion.

= She was listening to the radio.

Li prelegis per radio.

= He gave a speech over the radio.

Mi aĉetos novan radioaparaton.

= I'm going to buy a new radio.

Subite lumradio penetris la obskuron.

= Suddenly a ray of light penetrated the darkness.

Radio de espero lumigis ŝian vizaĝon.

= A ray of hope illuminated her face.

Ŝi esploris transruĝan radiadon.

= She studied infrared radiation.

Li mortis pro atoma radiado.

= He died of atomic radiation.

rajdi = to ride (astride something). See [veturi](#).

rakedo = (1) tennis racket; (2) snowshoe. See [raketo](#).

raketo = rocket.

*Not to be confused with:*

rakedo = (1) tennis racket; (2) snowshoe (= neĝoŝuo).

bruego = noise.

**ĉantaĝo** = racket, especially blackmail.

**malhonestaĝo** = racket, shakedown.

La raketoj mistrafis la esplorejon kaj mortigis ses pingvenojn.  
= The rockets missed the research station and did in six penguins.

Tenison oni ludas per rakedoj, ne per bastonoj.  
= You play tennis with rackets, not bats.

Bubaĉa bruego finfine sendis lin al Vartejo por la Ĝisfine Angorigitaj.  
= The brattish racket finally sent him to the Home for the Terminally Bothered.

Sen sekretoj maleblas ĉantaĝo.  
= Blackmail is impossible without secrets.

**rasti** = to rake up, comb up. See [kombi](#).

**ravi** = to enrapture.

**Not to be confused with:**

**deliri** = to rave, be delirious.

**frenezi** = to be crazy, raving mad.

**perforti** = to rape, ravish. (But: **perforto** = violence.)

La baletto ravis ŝin, sed poste la baletisto perfortis ŝin.  
= The ballet enraptured her, but afterward the dancer raped her.

Ne aŭskultu ŝin, oficisto; ŝi frenezas.  
= Don't listen to her, officer; she's raving.

La febro delirigis lin.  
= The fever made him delirious.

Lin delirigis ravaj belulinoj.  
= Ravishing beauties made him delirious.

Diskuto buĝeta estas preteksto nek por perforto nek por la angla.  
= Discussing the budget is no excuse either for violence or for English.

**razeno** = decorative lawn. See [herbo](#).

**redaktisto** = editor (from **redakti** = "to edit"). Redaktoro has the same

**meaning. Redakcio is used for editor in the sense of the editorial office or editorial authority.**

La redaktoro estas mia edzo.

= The editor is my husband.

La redakcio havas kontraŭpoezian politikon.

= The editors have a policy against poetry.

Post lia redakto, mia artikolo longis nur 20 procenton de la originalo.

= After his editing my article was only 20% as long as the original.

**referi = make a research report. Hence; referajo = technical report or professional paper.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**aludi** = speak (of), allude (to) (+ **al**).

**sin turni** = turn to.

**temi pri** = to be about, to concern. (See [temi](#).)

**rilati** = have a connection with, relate to.

**plusendi** = refer (something to someone), send on to.

Vian leteron mi plusendis al sinjoro Katonski.

= I referred your letter to Mr. Katonski.

Mi preparas referaĵon pri la disiĝo de Sovetunio.

= I am preparing a paper on the disintegration of the Soviet Union.

Mia referaĵo temas pri Kubo.

= My report is about Cuba.

Ŝi malĝentile aludis al miaj antaŭaj edzinoj kaj mia blua barbo.

= She impolitely referred to my previous wives and my blue beard.

**regi** = control, manage; to reign over. See [guverni](#).

**registaro** = government. See [guverni](#).

**reĝisoro** = stage manager; film producer. See [reĝo](#).

**reĝo** = king.

***Not to be confused with:***

**reĝisoro** = stage manager; film producer.



**registaro** = government. See [guverni](#).

**rekomenci** = to resume, begin again. See [resumo](#).

**rekompenci** = repay (a kindness or service). See [kompensi](#).

**rekoni** = recognize

The word is used especially in the sense of acknowledging or admitting, as in recognizing an illegitimate child or acknowledging the potential utility of Esperanto. Rekoni is a lower frequency word in Esperanto than “recognize” is in English.

*Not to be confused with:*

**agnoski** = to recognize (by official declaration).

**renkonti** = to meet, encounter.

Tiuj sonoj restis en la lingvo por ebligi la rekoneblecon de la vortoj <sup>z</sup>  
= These sounds remained in the language to facilitate the recognizability of the words.

Esperanto trovis rekonon ĉe la urbestro.  
= Esperanto found recognition among the city council.

Sen barbo li ne estis plu rekonebla.  
= Without a beard he was no longer recognizable.

En mia lando oni ne agnoskas multoblan geedziĝon, bedaŭrinde.  
= In my country they don't recognize multiple marriage, unfortunately.

**renkonti** = to meet, run into (someone). See [konvena](#).

**rento** = interest payment, dividend.

*Not to be confused with:*

**rentumo ~ interezo** = interest rate.

**lupago** = rent payment.

Por via konto ni pagos renton je rentumo de 4 procento jare.  
= For your account we'll pay interest at the rate of 4% yearly.

Lupagon ŝi ŝuldas monate.  
= She owes rent monthly.

**respondi** = to take responsibility. See [respondi](#).

**respondi** = respond, answer; correspond, line up.

When respondi means “answer,” the content of the answer is the direct object of the verb (just like “say”), but one answers “to” (= al) a person. When respondi means “correspond,” in the sense of lining up, the preposition al is used.

**Not to be confused with:**

**respondeci** (= **responsi**) = to take responsibility.

**korespondi** = to exchange letters or other messages.

Timigite, li respondis nenion.

= Frightened, he said nothing in response.

Timigite, li ne respondis al ŝi.

= Frightened, he didn't answer her.

Vian respondon sendu antaŭ la fino de la monato.

= Send your reply before the end of the month.

Ili longe korespondis per e-poŝto, sed ĝis la geedziĝa ceremonio ŝi neniam vidis lin.

= They had long corresponded by E-mail, but until the wedding ceremony she had never seen him.

Luna kalendaro ne respondas perfekte al suna kalendaro.

= A lunar calendar does not perfectly correspond with a solar calendar.

Ŝi respondecos pri la tagordo de la seminario.

= She will be responsible for the agenda.

**responsi** = to take responsibility. See [respondi](#).

**resumo** = summary, abstract, résumé.

**Not to be confused with:**

**abstrakto** = abstraction.

**rekomenci** = to resume, begin again.

**daŭrigi** = to continue. See [daŭri](#).

**reto** = net. See [neta](#).

**revo** = daydream; aspiration.

**Not to be confused with:**

**sonĝo** = dream (during sleep).

Ŝi revis pri riĉa edzo.

= She dreamt of a rich husband.

Ŝi revis edzigi lin, sed li ŝin abomenis.

= She dreamt of marrying him, but he loathed her.

Mi sonĝis, ke mi estas hundo.

= I dreamt I was a dog.

La hundo ne memoras kion ĝi sonĝis.

= The dog doesn't remember what it dreamt.

**revuo** = magazine, journal (serious). See [ĵurnalo](#). A “stage review” is a **varia teatraĵo**.

**rezignacio** = resignation (as a mental state). See [rezigni](#).

**rezigni** = abandon, give up, surrender, give up claims to.

*Not to be confused with:*

**rezignacio** = resignation (as a mental state).

**eksiĝi** = resign (from a position).

**demisii** = resign (from a position).

As far as I can tell, **eksiĝi** (**eks-iĝ-i** = “become former”) and **demisii** (**de-misi-i** = “go from mission”) are exact synonyms.

Kun rezignacio li rezignis la estrecon kajeksiĝis de la estraro.

= With resignation he gave up trying for leadership and resigned from the board of directors.

Ŝi estis ĉefministro, sedeksiĝis post la seksoskandalo.

= She was prime minister, but resigned after the sex scandal.

Ŝi estis ĉefministro, sed demisiis post la monoskandalo.

= She was prime minister, but resigned after the money scandal.

Li rezignis sian prelegon kontraŭ Esperanto ĉar li restis solsole en la halo.

= He gave up on his speech against Esperanto because he remained all alone in the hall.

Although **rezigni** is officially transitive, I have usually heard it used intransitively:

Mi rezignis pri ŝia lernado de la albana.  
= I have given up on her learning Albanian.

**rezulto** = effect, consequence, result. See [konsekvenco](#), [afekti](#).

**ribeli** = to defect, rebel. See [difekti](#).

**ribo** = currant (berry).

*Not to be confused with:*

**ribo** = rib.

Ŝi preparis konfitaĵon de riboj kaj enmetis la sukeron.  
= She prepared currant jelly and put in the sugar.

Li difektis al si du-tri ripojn.  
= He broke a couple of ribs.

**ridi** = to laugh.

Hence: **rideti** = to smile, smirk.

(Illogically, **rideti** does *not* mean to snicker, titter, or giggle, all of which are **subridi** or **subridaĉi** or **klukridi**. A **subrideto** is a sly smile.) See also [rikani](#).

**ridinda** = funny, ridiculous. See [amuza](#), [humuro](#).

**rigora** = severa = strict, rigorous. See [striкта](#).

**rikani** = to cackle malevolently. See also [ridi](#).

**rilati** = (1) make reference to, relate to; (2) to be connected to, related to, entailed by (+ al). See [afekti](#), [referi](#).

**rimarki** = to notice.

*Not to be confused with:*

**atentigi** = remark, call someone's attention to (pri) something, caution somebody.

**diri** = remark, say.

Ŝi rimarkis, ke mi rimarkis, ke restas sango sur ŝiaj manoj.  
= She noticed that I had noticed that there was still blood on her hands.

"Mi ĵus preparadis la viandon," ŝi diris.  
= "I was just preparing the meat," she remarked.

Mi atentigu vin, ke mi ege malsatas.  
= Let me caution you that I'm very hungry.

**rimedo** = device, means, solution, medium, resource. See [devizo](#),

[medio](#).

ribo = rib. See [ribo](#).

robo = dress. See [dresi](#).

Romanio = Romio = Rome (Empire). See [Romo](#).

romano = (1) novel; (2) Roman. See [novelo](#), [Romo](#).

Romo = Rome (city). Hence: romano = a citizen of Rome.

*Not to be confused with:*

**Romanio** = **Romio** = Rome (Empire). Hence: **romiano** = **romaniano** = an ancient Roman.

**Rumanio** = Romania. Hence: **rumano** = Romanian.

**Rumandio** = French Switzerland. Hence: **rumando** = a Swiss from a francophone canton. See also [novelo](#).

Romanoj manĝas picon.  
= The people of Rome eat pizza.

Romanianoj tamen manĝis nur prapicon, ĉar mankis tomatoj.  
= The ancient Romans, however, ate only proto-pizza, since there were no tomatoes.

La plej fama rumano, bedaŭrinde, estas la Grafo Drakula de Transilvanio.  
= The most famous Romanian, unfortunately, is Count Dracula  
= of Transylvania.

En Rumanio oni prikantas amon.  
= In Romania they sing about love.

En Rumandio oni kantas pri fromaĝo.  
= In the Suisse Romande they sing about cheese.

**roso** = dew.

*Not to be confused with:*

**rozo** = rose.

**rostro** = trunk, proboscis, snout.

*Not to be confused with:*

**tribuno** ~ **podio** = speaker's platform; pulpit; reviewing box.

**pupitro** = bookstand, lectern.

**tribunuso** = tribune (a Roman official).

Both **tribuno** and **podio** refer to a speaker's stand or pulpit on the one hand, and also to the seating for speakers and distinguished visitors on the other. When someone is said to sit on either a **podio** or a **tribuno**, there is therefore no sure way to know the sitter is a performer or an onlooker. (We have the Romans to thank for this confusion, which apparently existed for the two cognate words in Latin too.)

A **pupitro** is a bookstand, pure and simple. A large dictionary, for example, may occupy a **pupitro**. But because some speaker's stands are designed to hold books, and some bookstands are pressed into service by speakers, the word **pupitro** sometimes is used in place of **tribuno** or **podio** to designate a speaker's stand. (The word is also sometimes used for a school desk intended for an individual pupil.)

Kiom da muko produktas en unu tago rostro de elefanto?  
= How much mucus does an elephant's trunk produce in a day?

La episkopo sidis ĉe sia tribuno kaj elegantege dormetis. (Probably a platform.)  
= The bishop sat at his podium and most elegantly dozed.

La reĝino sidis sur la tribuno. (Has to be a balcony.)  
= The queen sat in the reviewing box.

La reĝino staris ĉe la tribuno. (Probably a podium)  
= The queen stood at the speaker's stand.

La kondukisto falis de sur la podio. (Must be a conductor's platform.)  
= The conductor fell from the podium.

Li legis la biblion sur la podio. (The speaker was on the podio.)  
= He read the Bible on the platform.

Li legis la biblion sur la pupitro. (The Bible, not the speaker, was on the pupitro.)  
= He read the Bible on the lectern.

Grava usona ĵurnalo estas La Tribunuso de Ĉikago.  
= The Chicago Tribune is an important American newspaper.

rozo = rose. See [roso](#).

rumano = Romanian. See [Romo](#).

samideano = comrade, brother/sister  
(as in “Hallelujah, brother!”).

Literally Samideano refers to a person  
with whom you share an opinion

(sam+ide+an+o = “same idea  
member”), but in practice it nearly

always means a fellow speaker of  
Esperanto. Because of its literal

derivation, it is probably a silly word

to use for somebody with whom you are having a strong disagreement,

but the sense of fellow-travellerism is rarely understood as meaning

anything except that you recognize each other as agreeing that

Esperanto is, on the whole, not a bad idea.\* (“Hallelujah,” if you need it  
, is haleluja, by the way.)

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

sankta = holy, sacred.

Sankta is also used as a title for saints, although the noun “saint” is  
sanktulo.

Dankon. Vi estas vera sanktulo.

= Thanks. You’re a real saint.

Inter ĉiuj sanktuloj, Sankta Nikolao plej plaĉas al Daĉjeto.

= Among all the saints, Little Davey likes Saint Nicholas best.

scii = to know. See [koni](#).

scivol(em)a = curious, wanting to know.

From sci- = “know” plus vol- = “desire.”

Hence also mi scivolas = “I wonder.”

Scivolema is slightly more common than scivola. “Curious” in the  
sense of “strange” is, unsurprisingly, stranga. See [kurioza](#).

seanco = meeting, sitting (of parliament, committee, doctor & patient,  
painter & model, etc.).

*Not to be confused with:*

sesio = session.

spiritista seanco = séance.

The words **seanco** and **sesio** overlap quite a bit. In principle a **sesio** may  
be composed of several individual **seancoj** when it comes to something

\*-For some, especially older, Esperantists it  
can go considerably further than that, and  
the word can take on a strongly familial  
emotional loading. For such people,  
disagreeing with a **samideano** is a very  
painful business, and using the word in an  
argument might very well end the  
disagreement right there.

like a parliamentary “session.” When in doubt, the overused generic term **kunveno** = “meeting” can always be used.

Ĉiutage la tri instruistoj seance planas la lecionojn.

= Every day the three instructors plan the lessons in a meeting.

Pro longa seanco ĉe la kuracisto, mi iom malfruas.

= I am a little late because of the long session at the doctor’s office.

Dum la spiritista seanco aperis Miĥalski, kiu verkis poezion.

= During the séance Michalski appeared and wrote poetry.

**sekvo** = fall-out, consequence. See [konsekvenco](#).

**selekti** = breed selectively; select.

*Not to be confused with:*

**elekti** = select, elect.

**voĉdoni** ~ **baloti** = to vote.

**senco** = sense, meaning.

*Not to be confused with:*

**senso** = sense of touch, hearing, etc.

Hence: **sensi** = to perceive with one’s senses.

**sento** = feeling.

Hence: **senti** = “to have a sense about something”; **sentemo** = “sensitivity”; **sentumo** = a sense, insight, suspicion)

Lia libro estas absoluta sensencaĵo.

= His book is utter nonsense.

Mi spertis antaŭsenton pri la katastrofo.

= I had a premonition of the disaster.

La homoj havas kvin sensojn, sed kelkfoje vi ŝajnas havi sesan.

= People have five senses, but sometimes you seem to have a sixth.

La sesa senso estas senso de humuro.

= The sixth sense is the sense of humor.

Li sentis sin netaŭga por la tasko.

= He felt himself inappropriate for the task.



Ili estas tre sentemaj kaj deziris eviti vian eventualan embarason.  
= They are very considerate and wanted to avoid your possible embarrassment.

**senco** = sense of touch, hearing, etc. See [senco](#).

**sentenco** = maxim, pithy saying. See also [devizo](#), [kondamno](#).

La Sentencoj estas en la Biblio.

= The book of Proverbs is in the Bible.

**sento** = feeling, suspicion. See [senco](#).

**serĉo** = search, pursuit. See [kvesti](#). Contrast [ŝerco](#).

**servico** = service, set (as in “a service of china”). See [servo](#).

**servo** = service (to someone).

*Not to be confused with:*

**servico** = service, set (as in “a service of china”).

**diservo** = religious service.

**meso** = a Catholic mass.

(See also [maso](#).)

**severa** = rigora = strict, rigorous. See [strikta](#).

**simpatia** = agreeable, compatible (of people). See [kara](#).

**sinjor(in)o** = Mr(s); sir/madam.

Note that **sinjor(in)o** can also mean lord/lady or master/mistress in some contexts. In religious contexts, **sinjoro** is used to refer to God. In Esperanto **sinjor(in)o** is used with much higher frequency than **sir/madam** is used in English (so the best translation is sometimes to ignore it). See also [fraŭl\(in\)o](#).

*Not to be confused with:*

**lord(in)o** = lord/lady (British nobility).

Kredu min, sinjorino.

= Believe me, madam!

Ne diru, sinjoro, ke vi ne plu memoras min!

= Don't tell me [sir] that you don't remember me any more!

Li estas granda sinjoro.

= He is a great lord.

Jen venas sinjoro Ĉun!

= Here comes Mr. Chun.

Jen venas sinjorino Gato!

= Here comes Madame Gateau.

Ĉu tiu estas lordo Brawling?

= Is that Lord Brawling?

Ne. Tiu estas lordino Ranting.

= No. That's Lady Ranting.

Iu ŝtelis ĉiujn komiksojn el la kluba biblioteko! Ho sinjoro!

= Someone stole all the comics from the club library! Oh Lord!

Preĝu ĉiutage al la Sinjoro.

= Pray to the Lord every day.

**sinteno = perspective, point of view, stand, attitude. (From teni = “to hold.”)**

Kia estis via sinteno dum la revolucio?

= What was your stand in the revolution?

Lia sinteno pri Esperanto estas tro mokema.

= His position on Esperanto is too derisive.

Pro lia kontraŭpartia sinteno ni devis lin pafigi.

= We had to have him shot for his anti-party attitude.

**skeptik(em)a = cynical, skeptical. See [cinika](#).**

**skolo = school of philosophy, school of thought.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**lernejo** = school (a place where learning takes place). See also [studi](#).

**skribi** = to write. See [verki](#).

**socio** = society.

**Socio** means society in the sense of “Argentine society” or “modern society.” A society in the sense of a club, professional organization, or Esperanto group is **societo**.

**solida** = massive, dense. See [masiva](#).

**sonĝo** = dream during sleep. See [revo](#).

**sorto** = luck, fate, destiny. See [speco](#).

**specio** = biological species. See [speco](#).

**speco** = kind, type, sort.

**Not to be confused with:**

**klaso** = sort, species, class; class in school (made up of students).

**kurso** = course (made up of lessons).

(In actual practice, **klaso** tends to be used also for a course.)

**specio** = biological species.

**spico** = spice.

**sorto** = luck, fate, destiny. See also [fatalo](#).

Spegulos la spiro la specon de spico.

= The breath will reveal the species of spice!

En biologio, genro dividiĝas en speciojn.

= In biology, a genus is divided into species.

Lin tuŝetis la fingroflugema flirtema de la sorto.

= He was touched by the flying fickle finger of fate.

Provu vian sorton! Aĉetu bileton en la nova, senpremia loterio!

= Try your luck! Buy a ticket in the new, prizeless lottery!

Kia idioto aĉetus loterian bileton de tiu speco?!

= What kind of idiot would buy a lottery ticket like that?!

Mi ne scias; ĉu ekzistas klasoj de idiotoj?

= I don't know; are there different kinds of idiots?

Mi sekvas kurson pri la Interreto.

= I'm taking a course about the Internet.

Kelkaj el miaj samklasanoj estas hundoj.  
= Some of my classmates are dogs.

**spico** = spice. See [speco](#).

**spite de** = “in defiance of,” a (much overused) stronger form of **malgraŭ** = “despite.” (The verb **spiti** means to defy someone openly, but it is far less common than **spite de**.) See [defii](#), [malgraŭ](#).

Abelujon ne incitu, amason ne spitu.<sup>Z</sup>  
= So not stir up a beehive nor incite the masses.

Pli facile estas eviti ol spiti.<sup>Z</sup>  
= It is easier to avoid than to confront [someone].<sup>Z</sup>

Li fariĝis aktoro, malgraŭ sentalenteco; spite de la deziroj de sia tro mono-amanta patrino.  
= He became an actor, despite his lack of talent, to defy the wishes of his excessively money-loving mother.

La direktorino estas spitema.  
= The director is spiteful.

**sportejo** = gymnasium, stadium. See [gimnazio](#).

**stabila** = stable.

Hence: **stabileco** = stability, **stabiligi** = to stabilize, to balance. See [stablo](#), [balanci](#).

**stablo** = workbench, easel, trestle, workstand.

*Not to be confused with:*

**stalo** = stable, stall in a stable. A stable specifically for one kind of animal can be specified with **-ej-**, e.g., **ĉevalejo** = “horse stable.”

**stativo** = stand (as for a movie screen).

**stabila** = stable. Hence: **stabileco** = stability.

**stando** = stand (temporary sales or display area)

Metu la rompitan ludilon sur la stablon de Avĉjo.  
= Put the broken toy on Grandpa’s workbench.

La stablo de Avĉjo ne plu estas tre stabila.  
= Grandpa’s workbench is not very stable any more.

Kiel kuglo el pistolo elsaltis la bovego el la stalo.  
= The bull shot from the stall like a bullet from a pistol.

La fotila stativo tute mem difektiĝis, klarigis Daĉjeto.  
= The camera stand broke all by itself, Little Davey explained.

Ĉe stando en la foiro oni povas fotiĝi.  
= At a stand at the faire you can take a picture of yourself.

**stalo** = stable, stall in a stable. See [stablo](#).

**stando** = stand (temporary sales or display area). See [stablo](#).

**stativo** = stand (as for a movie screen). See [stablo](#).

**stato** = condition, state. See [kondiĉo](#).

**stigmato** = birthmark, scar, mark (esp. of infamy).

*Not to be confused with:*

**stigma** = birthmark, scar, mark (esp. of infamy).

**stigma** = receptive surface of a flower pistil; pore, spiracle (respiratory structure of an animal)

*Not to be confused with:*

**stigmato** = birthmark, scar, mark (esp. of infamy).

**stranga** = strange, peculiar, funny. See [amuza](#).

**strebi** = to strive. See [klopodi](#).

**streĉi** = to wind (a watch); to pull longer, stretch.

The adjective streĉ(it)a means “tense” when it is applied to people, situations, suspense stories, diplomatic relations, and the like.

Specifically, streĉa (= “stretching”) means “causing tension”; streĉita (= “tightly wound up”) means something is causing you tension!

(Compare English “high strung.”) Hence: streĉo = great effort.

Streĉu la antenon inter la du arboj.

= Stretch the antenna between the two trees.

La situacio estis tre streĉa.

= The situation was very tense.

Aŭskulti lian prelegon estas vera streĉo.

= Listening to his lecture is a real effort.

*Murdo en Esperantujo* estas streĉa romano.

= Murder in Esperantia is a tense novel.

Ŝi ĉiam ŝajnas tre streĉita.

= She always seems very tense.

Tro streĉite, la brakhorloĝo kompreneble rompiĝis.

= Having been too tightly wound, the watch naturally broke.

Por la malsanulo, eĉ maĉi estis granda streĉo.

= For the invalid, even chewing was a great effort.

**striкта = tight, close-fitting.**

**Not to be confused with:**

**rigora = severa** = strict, rigorous.

La guvernanto severegas; li ne permesas ludojn sur la tegmento.

= The tutor is very strict; he doesn't allow games on the roof.

La dikiĝantoj ofte portas striktajn vestojn; dikiĝintaj lozajn.

= People growing fatter often wear tight clothes; those already fat, loose ones.

**studento = student.**

The word refers usually to a university-level student. Elementary and high school students are **lernantoj**. Adult education students are often also referred to as **lernantoj**. Fellow participants in a particular course are often called **klasanoj**.

**studi and lerni = "study" and "learn," respectively.**

In my dialect of English, one can study something for years and never really learn it, but if one has learnt it, one knows it. Thus I can say, "I *studied* French but didn't *learn* it."

For the majority of European Esperantists, **lerni** refers to acquiring basic knowledge, normally in a school (**lernejo**), while **studi** is often more advanced, and may take place in a school (especially a **gimnazio** or **universitato**) or a room at home (**studejo**). It is not unusual to hear European speakers say **mi lernis la anglan dum tri semajnoj**, meaning "I studied English for three weeks," *not* "I learned English in three weeks"!

\*-Chinese Esperanto dictionaries I have checked reflect the usage of Europeans, but it is my impression that Chinese speakers actually use the two words more the way Americans do. Zamenhof makes broad use of **lerni** and less use of **studi**, often using **lerni** in a sense very close to English. As a rule of thumb, when in doubt, use **lerni** rather than **studi**; when you mean initial or incomplete study, use **eklerni**, thorough learning can be **ellerni**.

The same European sense leads most Esperantists to avoid speaking of elementary school pupils as studentoj (since by definition their studies are elementary), but to call them instead lernantoj.

*Plena Ilustrita Vortaro*, the largest Esperanto dictionary, fence-sits. On the one hand, **lerni** is defined as including successful completion of one's efforts (as in English); on the other hand, **studi** is defined as involving detailed and profound exploration of a subject (as for Europeans). Be prepared for a certain mismatch of preferences between these words, with much higher frequency of **lerni** on the part of European speakers than among Asian and American Esperantists.\*

*Some other related terms are:*

**informiĝi** = learn about, become informed about, check out.

**ekscii** = find out about, come to know.

**ekkoni** = become acquainted with, come to know.

**konstati** = discover, prove, find out. (See [konstati](#).)

Ĉiam informiĝu pri la firmo antaŭ ol vi aĉetos akciojn.  
= Always find out about the company before you buy shares.

En la lernejo mi ekkonis la rusan kaj konstatis ke ĝi estas mirinde malfacila.  
= At school I became acquainted with Russian and discovered that it is remarkably difficult.

Ŝi lernis Esperanton en Finnlando.  
= She [first] studied Esperanto in Finland.

Ŝi eklernis Esperanton en Finnlando.  
= She began studying Esperanto in Finland.

Ŝi studis Esperanton en Sandiego.  
= She studied [researched] Esperanto in San Diego.

[Ni ne dediĉu] tutan vicon da jaroj al la ellernado de la latina lingvo.<sup>z</sup>  
= = Let's not dedicate a whole course of years to learning Latin.

**sufiĉe = enough; fairly, rather.**

Vi estas sufiĉe maljuna por memori.

= You're old enough to remember.

Sufiĉe malvarmas hodiaŭ.

= It's rather nippy today.

**sukeraĵo = confection. See [konfekcio](#).**

**[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)**

**ŝajnigi = pretend, make it seem as though. See [pretendi](#).**

**ŝatata = appreciated, much liked. See [favorata](#).**

**ŝati = to value, to appreciate, to like.**

Originally in Esperanto ŝati meant to appreciate, value, or think highly of something. It corresponded to some senses of the English verb "to like," but not to all of them. It was also a lower frequency word in Esperanto than "like" is in English (even ignoring the use of "like" as ...like... spoken punctuation). Other senses of "to like" were expressed in Esperanto by the verb *ami*, which also corresponds to most senses of "to

love." There is a tendency among

English speakers to equate *ami* too exactly with "love" and *ŝati* too closely with "like." That should be resisted, since it results in an overuse of *ŝati* (sometimes inappropriately) and an underuse of *ami* (and leads us to misunderstand those who use *ami* where we might say "like"). *Mi amas vin* can mean "I like you" as well as "I love you" in Esperanto.\* Widespread English study seems to be moving the Esperanto verbs toward closer correspondence with the English pattern, but the usage in the two languages still is not quite identical. You have been warned!

A related verb is **plaĉi**, which is the closest equivalent to most senses of "like" except that the action of the verb goes in the opposite direction. While in English John likes coffee, in Esperanto coffee **plaĉas al** John. The word-for-word translation "is pleasing to" is not very colloquial in English, but **plaĉi** is very colloquial in Esperanto. (Compare Spanish *gustar*.)

\*-Sexual love is **amoro**, with the derivative verb **amori**, "to make love." It is unclear to me to what extent some speakers use **amori** to refer to feelings of sexual attraction rather than the act itself of sexual congress. Only the latter seems to be meant by the word **seksumi** = "to have sex." To the extent that **amori** is used for the sexual act, **ami** tends to move into the semantic terrain of English "love" and **ŝati** tends to correspond better and better to English "like." Let it never be said that Esperanto usage is static! Copulation, animal or human, is **kopulacio**.



Ŝi tre plaĉas al Johano.  
= John really likes her.

Viaj ideoj iom plaĉas al mi.  
= I rather like your ideas.

Pollando plaĉas al la poloj.  
= The Poles like Poland.

Vi ege plaĉas al mi, kara.  
= You really turn me on, sweetheart.

To sound less parochially American, make more use of **plaĉi** and less of **ŝati**!

**ŝerco** = joke, witticism; practical joke. See also [serĉo](#), [blago](#).

Caution (1): Even though really committed soreheads rarely speak Esperanto, there almost does not exist a joke that won't offend somebody, usually unexpectedly. To apologize if someone takes offense, quickly mutter, **Pardonu! Mi nur ŝercis!** = "Pardon me! I was only joking!"

Caution (2): Many Esperanto speakers make verbal jokes pretty much full time. Accordingly: (A) they are not to be taken too seriously, especially if what they say seems bizarre, and (B) don't be surprised if they don't take you too seriously either, especially if what you say seems bizarre.

**ŝimo** = mildew, mold.  
**Not to be confused with:**  
**ŝlimo** = slime, sludge.

**muldi** = to mold. Hence: **muldilo** = a mold. See also [matraco](#).

**ŝirmi** = shield, protect, guard. See [gardi](#).  
**ŝlimo** = slime, sludge. See also [ŝimo](#).  
**ŝofori** = to drive.

**This verb is derived from the noun ŝoforo = "chauffeur," and it is still unclear whether ŝofori will evolve to mean be a chauffeur, drive (a car), or drive (a person somewhere).\*** (My own usage is to regard ŝofori as what one does to a car, and konduki as what one does to a person.) Another

<p>*-Similarly in early XXth-century English it took some years before it became clear that a typewriter was the machine and not the operator of the machine.</p>
---

verb, good for either purpose, is **veturigi**. See [veturi](#).

**ŝranko** = cupboard, cabinet; clothes closet.

**Not to be confused with:**

**breto** = shelf. Hence: **bretaro** = set of shelves.

**kamero** = closet; chamber in a machine (as combustion chamber).

**kabineto** = (1) study, office; (2) cabinet (in a government); (3) small exhibition hall.

Mi dum la tuta mateno skribis leterojn en la kabineto.

= I was writing letters in the study all morning.

La muzeo havas kabineton de naturaj kuriozaĵoj, kie mortis la kato.

= The museum has a small hall of natural curiosities, where the cat died .

La prezidento fotiĝis kun sia kabineto.

= The president was photographed with his cabinet.

Metu la librojn en la ŝrankon.

= Put the books in the cabinet.

En Usono oni uzas vestokamerojn, sed en Eŭropo oni uzas vestoŝrankojn.

= In America people use closets, but in Europe they use cabinets.

Fotilo devas havi senluman kameron.

= A camera must have a dark chamber.

Ŝi ŝutis pulvon en la kameron kaj celumis la musketon.

= She poured the gunpowder into the chamber and aimed the musket.

See also [kontoro](#).

**ŝtato** = nation, state. See [kondiĉo](#).

**ŝuti** = to pour (a non-liquid). See [verŝi](#).

**ŝvabri** = to wetmop. See [kombi](#).

**ŝvela** = plump, bloated, swollen, filled. See [plumpa](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**taksi** = (1) to evaluate, to judge (especially when applied to people); (2) to calculate, estimate; (3) to surcharge, assess, (4) to set a maximum legal price for something.

***Not to be confused with:***

**imposti** = to tax.

**taksio** = a taxi. Hence: **taksii** = to taxi (someone).

Mi taksas la domon tro kosta por vi.

= I estimate the house to be too expensive for you.

La doma imposto sekvas ĝian taksitan valoron.

= The tax on the house follows its assessed value.

Mi alte taksas ŝian kantadon, sed ne ŝian kanton.

= I have a high opinion of her singing, but not of her song.

Ni taksas ĉiun laŭ la merito.

= We evaluate everyone by merit.

Ne taksu vian kontraŭulon tro malforta.

= Don't judge your opponent too weak.

Belecon taksu ne okulo, sed koro.

= Beauty should be judged not by the eye, but by the heart.

Ŝi alte taksis lian oficon.

= She held his position in high esteem.

Ni taksis je mil frankoj la deficiton de la kongreso.

= We estimated the deficit of the convention at 1000 francs.

Note that some sentences can have double meanings because of the differences among the different senses of this word.

Ĉi tie la benzino estas taksita tre alte.

= Gas here is very heavily surcharged.

= Gas is very highly thought of here.

La registaro taksos medikamentojn.

= The government will put a price ceiling on medicines.

= The government will put a surcharge on medicines.

It would be nice if Esperanto-speaking commercial interests could sort this out a little better. For the time being the important thing is that **taksi**

always has to do with guessing the value or appropriateness or quality of something. Evaluation is the key issue.

**taŭgi = to be serviceable, of use, fit , valuable (for something). See also [konvena](#).**

Kio taŭgas por somero ne taŭgas por vintro.<sup>z</sup>  
= What's good for summer is not good for winter.

Mi konvinkiĝis, ke mi por la komuna medicina praktikado tute ne taŭgas.<sup>z</sup>  
= I became convinced that I was completely unsuited for ordinary medical practice.

Unu vido taŭgas pli ol dek aŭdoj.<sup>z</sup>  
= One viewing is worth more than ten hearings.

Mia amato estas sentaŭgulo, sed riĉa sentaŭgulo.  
= My beloved is a good-for-nothing, but a rich good-for-nothing.

**tedi = to annoy (someone); to be boring (to someone). See also [malgraŭ](#).**

Mi bedaŭras tedi vin per tio ĉi.  
= I'm sorry to trouble you with this.

Li estas la plej teda instruisto en nia lernejo. Li eĉ ricevis premion por tedeco!  
= He's the most boring teacher in our school. He even got a prize for boringness!

La spektaklo de talentoj tedis al li.  
= The talent show bored him.

Contrast [amuzi](#), [enua](#).

**telero = dining plate. See [plato](#).**

**televideo ~ televizio = television (as a communications medium, phenomenon, institution, industry).**

***Not to be confused with:***

**televidilo** = television (an individual instrument). See also [radio](#).\*

Ŝi tro amas la televidon.

<p>*-The same general distinction between the system and the instrument is observed in <b>telegrafo/telegrafio</b> and (less often)</p>
---

= She is too fond of television.

Ŝi rigardis la televidilon kiam ĝi eksplodis.

= She was looking at the television when it blew apart.

**telefono/telefonio.** (Cf. English “telegraphy” and “telephony.”) However the prevalence of **televidilo** suggests that there is little probability of the same contrast becoming general for **televideo** over and against **televizio**.

Li instruis Esperanton per televido.

= He taught Esperanto on television.

Mia televidilo paneis.

= My television broke down.

La televizio estas grava ankaŭ en la politiko.

= Television is important also in politics.

**temi = to be a matter of. Often used without a stated subject:**

Temas pri...

= It's a matter of..., it's about...

Li diris, ke ne temis pri la mono, sed pri la principo. Sed mi dubemis.

Ĉiam temas pri la mono.

= He said it was not about the money, but about the principle of the thing. But I was doubtful. It's always about the money.

**tendenco = bias, twist, inclination.**

**Hence: tendenca = biased, tendentious. (In recent years this has evolved toward the additional meaning of “tendency.”)**

***Not to be confused with:***

**emo** = tendency.

La ĵurio de malriĉuloj estis tendenca kontraŭ la eksprinco.

= The jury of poor people was biased against the former prince.

Ĝi estis tendenca romano.

= It was a propaganda novel.

La rakonto havis komunistan tendencon.

= The story had a communist bias.

Ŝia mistika tendenco batalas kontraŭ ŝia racia.

= Her mystical inclinations are at odds with her rational ones.

Mi havas la emon tro paroli.  
= I have a tendency to talk too much.

La loka klubo ruiniĝis pro lia tendenco.  
= The local club came to grief because of his tendentiousness.

**testo = (1) test, especially placement test, diagnostic test, school quiz;  
(2) experimental test of competing brands, procedures, etc.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**kvizo** = competition, context (especially between teams and about current events, scientific facts, trivia, etc.)

**testiko** = testicle.

**ekzameno** = detailed examination, thorough inspection or inquiry.  
(Note that Esperanto less freely than English mixes up mighty **ekzamenoj** and more trivial **testoj**.)

Ni testis tri markojn de kafpulvoro.  
= We tested three brands of instant coffee.

Komence de la seanco la doktoro testis ŝin.  
= At the beginning of the session the doctor tested her.

La teamo de nia lernejo gajnis premion en televida kvizo pri bestbredado.  
= The team from our school won a prize in the husbandry quiz show.

Meze de la kurso venis testeto pri korelativoj.  
= Midway through the course came a quiz on correlatives.

Fine de la kurso venis la timiga ekzamenego pri la tuta gramatiko.  
= At the end of the course came the huge, horrifying exam over the entire grammar.

La patro ekzamenis ŝian amikon kaj rifuzis permesi la geedziĝon.  
= Her father examined her boyfriend and refused to permit the marriage.

**trafi = to hit a target, to attain a goal.**

**The verb is often used for “catching” a bus, train, etc. Hence: trafa = appropriate, telling.**

Ŝi mistrafis la buson kaj venis per mulo.  
= She missed the bus and came by mule.

Li proponis iom tro trafan ŝercon kaj ŝi responde batis lin ombrele.  
= He proposed a rather too pointed joke and in reply she hit him with her umbrella.

Ŝia bato mistrafis lin sed trafis la mulon.  
= Her blow missed him but hit the mule.

**trakti** = to deal with, to treat (a subject). See [negoco](#).

**tribuno** = podio = rostrum. See [rostro](#).

**trinki** = to drink (including alcohol in moderation). See [drinki](#).

**triviala** = vulgar, indelicate, low class. See [vulgara](#).

**truo** = hole. See [kavo](#).

**truseĝo** = toilet seat. See [komodo](#).

**ttt** = tut-tera teksaĵo = world-wide web (www). See [neta](#).

**tuj** = immediately, just. See [ĝusta](#).

**tuta** = entire. Hence: **tute** = “entirely.”

Ŝin amas la tuta mondo.  
= The whole world loves her.

Ŝin amas tute la mondo.  
= The world loves her entirely.

Ŝin amas la mondo tute .  
= The world loves her entirely.

Mi komprenas la tutan gramatikon.  
= I know the whole grammar.

Mi komprenas tute la gramatikon.  
= I understand the grammar entirely.

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**urini** = urinate. See [pisi](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**varti** = to tend, raise, take care of (a child, invalid, animal, potted plant, pet store, etc.); to baby-sit. See also [zorgi](#), [eduki](#).

Salutu la vartonton, Daĉjeto.  
= Say hello to the sitter, Davey.

Ŝi lasis la du infanojn en la vartejo.  
= She left the two kids in the daycare center.

Li estos vartisto de maljunuloj, sed nur post alia ekzameno.  
= He'll be a nurse for old people, but only after another exam.

Ho, iru kaj vartu vian kakton!  
= Oh, go putter with your cactus!

Li loĝas en vartejo por eksprofesoroj de Esperanto.  
= He lives in an asylum for former Esperanto teachers.

**vazo = vessel, container.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**florvazo** = vase.

Metu la nemanĝitan fabaĵon en vazon.  
= Put the unfinished beans in a container.

Ne ĉia vazo taŭgas por floroj.  
= Not every kind of container is appropriate for flowers.

**ve = alas.**

**Ve is more common in Esperanto than “alas” is in English. (I can't remember when I last heard anybody say “alas,” but Esperantists seem to say ve at me all the time.) It can be used of great or small catastrophes, but for sudden minor annoyances fuŝ! (“rats!”) is probably better.**

Ho fuŝ! Mi perdis la krajonon.  
= Oh rats! I lost the pencil!

Ho ve! Mi perdis la edzon!  
= Oh me! I've lost my husband!

**Fik!** and **Fek!** correspond literally with the unimaginative but common American “Fuck!” and “Shit!” respectively. Comparable words are not profanity in all languages, but, accompanied by the right tone of voice and flushed face, they will usually convey the same general impression as their English equivalents anyway. (If you want to offend Esperantists in six countries at a time, try prefixing **Zamen-** to these!)

Ho fuŝ! Iu forŝtelis la bebon! = Oh bother! Someone stole the baby!

Ho ve! Mi perdis la monon! = Oh my God! I've lost the money!



Z...k! Aĉegulo forŝtelis la Plenan Vortaron!

= S...t! Some schmuck stole the unabridged dictionary!

**vendejo** = market, shop. See [debito](#).

**vendotablo** = sales table. See [kontoro](#).

**veni** = come.

The difference between coming (**veni**) and going (**iri**) seems easy enough, but there are different conventions in different nations about where the speaker is assumed to be. (If I meet you on the street, do I ask you to “go” to my house or to “come” to it?). In the following example, the English is inconsistent with itself, but conventional. Esperanto has no fixed convention. Be prepared for anything.

Venu/iru al mia domo morgaŭ. Ĉu vi scias iri/veni?

= Come to my house tomorrow. Do you know how to go?

**verki** = to compose, write.

**Not to be confused with:**

**skribi** = to write (produce letters lined up in rows).

Ŝi skribis tiel malklare, ke neniuj povis legi la leteron.

= She wrote so unclearly that nobody could read the letter.

Li verkis romanon kiun bonvolis legi nur lia patrino.

= He wrote a novel that only his mother would read.

Ĉar nun studentoj uzas komputilojn, iliaj eseoj estas klare presitaj anstataŭ manskribitaj, kaj stulta verkado pli facile videblas.

= Because students use computers now, their essays are clearly printed rather than handwritten, and stupid composition is more readily visible.

**vermo** = worm.

**Not to be confused with:**

**bestetaĉoj** = vermin.

Dum vermo serĉis verminon, birdo manĝis ambaŭ.

= As a he-worm sought a she-worm, a bird ate them both.

La lito estis plena de bestetaĉoj kiuj mordis kaj pikis ŝin.

= The bed was full of vermin, which bit and stung her.

**vesto** = article of clothing.

Many speakers unnecessarily use **vestaĵo** with the same meaning. For

some speakers, **vesto** can also mean a suit of clothing, in which case **vestaĵo** distinguishes each of the parts of it. Note that a modern suit is a **kompleto**.

**verŝajne** = seemingly, apparently, probably (= ver+ŝajn+e).

Although the word literally means “seemingly,” some Esperantists use **verŝajne** as a non-committal comment about pretty much anything that anybody says to them (just like **efektive** = “really” and **kompreneble** = “of course”). The meaning in that case is roughly comparable to “so it seems” or “I guess so.”

**verŝi** = to pour (a liquid)

**Not to be confused with:**

**ŝuti** = to pour (a non-liquid).

Ŝi verŝis la lakton en la bovlon.

= She poured the milk into the bowl.

Ŝi ŝutis la farunon en la bovlon.

= She poured the flour into the bowl.

La enhavo de la ŝranko ŝutiĝis super lin.

= The contents of the cabinet dumped out on him.

Li estis superŝutita per la eksa enhavo de la ŝranko kaj bunte sakris.

= He was buried by the former contents of the cabinet and swore colorfully.

**veturi** = to travel, especially by vehicle. Hence: **veturigi** = to take (someone somewhere) by vehicle, to drive (a vehicle).

**Not to be confused with:**

**rajdi** = to ride (astride something).

Li falis de la biciklo sur kiu li rajdis.

= He fell off the bike he was riding.

Ŝi rajdas al Esperanto-kunvenoj per ĉevalo.

= She rides to Esperanto meetings on horseback.

Ĉiuj aliaj veturas per aŭtoj aŭ aŭtobusoj.

= All the others travel by car or bus.

Bv. veturigi nian gaston al la hotelo.

= Please take our guest to the hotel.

See also [ŝofori](#).

**vic-** = prefix comparable to English “vice-.” See [vico](#).

**vico** = line, queue; one’s turn, place in line.

**Not to be confused with:**

**vic-** = prefix comparable to the English prefix “vice-.”

**malvirto** = vice, sin.

Laŭ la pado kreskis vico da arboj.

= A row of trees grew along the path.

Staras vicoj de samformaj dometoj sur monteto.

= There are rows of identical little houses on a hill.

La tuta mondo viciĝu malantaŭ mi!

= Let the whole world line up behind me!

[Ni ne dediĉu] tutan vicon da jaroj al la ellernado de la latina lingvo.<sup>2</sup>

= Let’s not dedicate a whole course of years to learning Latin.

Baldaŭ venos via vico kanti.

= Your turn to sing will come soon.

Nun mia vico, diable!

= My turn now, dammit!

La vickasisto forŝtelis ĉiom de la mono!

= The vice-treasurer stole all the money!

**vigla** = crisp, smart. See [krispa](#).

**vila** = hairy, fuzzy, furry.

**Viloj** are the tiny hairs constituting the fuzz on a peach or similar fruit and similar structures on animal skin. In the singular, **vilo** often refers to a tuft of such hairs, rather than to a single hair. As an adjective, **vila** almost exactly corresponds both with English “fuzzy” and with English “hairy” and can be used of plants, dogs, people, etc.

**Not to be confused with:**

**fi-** = vile (prefix and interjection).

Mia frato estas vila viro.

= My brother is a hairy man.

Mia frato estas fiviro.  
= My brother is a vile man.

Fi al vi, ho malbonegulo!  
= Fie upon you, you monster!

**vivi = to be alive.**

***Not to be confused with:***

**loĝi** = to dwell (somewhere).

Ŝi loĝis en Novgineo dum multaj jaroj.  
= She lived in New Guinea for many years.

Elvis vivas kaj loĝas en Indianapolo.  
= Elvis is alive and living in Indianapolis.

Nia Napoleono ne plu vivas; katoj mallonge vivas.  
= Our Napoleon isn't alive any more; cats don't live long.

Ĉu li ne plu vivas aŭ nur ne plu parolas Esperanton? Samas, ĉu ne?  
= Is he no longer alive or does he simply no longer speak Esperanto? It's the same thing, isn't it?

**viziti = pay a visit to.**

**Caution: viziti cannot be used to mean “talk to” or “visit with.” Try paroli = “speak,” konversacii = “converse,” klaĉi = “gossip,” or babili = “chat” plus kun. Some speakers use viziti to mean “attend” when talking about school, despite possible confusion:**

Ŝi nun vizitas la elementan lernejon.  
= She is now attending elementary school.  
= She is now visiting the elementary school.

**voĉdoni = to vote. See [selekti](#).**

**Volapuko = Volapük.**

**Volapük is an extinct artificial language project published in 1879; it attracted a large following till it was eclipsed by Esperanto about 1900. All current users of the language seem to be Esperantists of waggish or antiquarian inclination. Hence: volapukaĵo = inscrutable utterance, gibberish.**

La spiritisma mediumo parolis nur volapukaĵojn.  
= The spirit medium spoke only gibberish.

**voli = want, be willing, choose, have a mind to.**

Mi volis respondi al via letero, sed vermoj formanĝis la krajonon.  
= I wanted to reply to your letter, but worms ate the pencil.

To stress willingness rather than real desire, it is usual to use the compound **bonvoli** = “to be willing.” As a noun, **bonvolo** is someone’s benevolence, good will, or kindness.

volo de Dio  
= will of God

Ni venis pro ŝia bonvolo.  
= We came through her good will.

Mi ĉiam volis viziti Ekvadoron.  
= I always wanted to visit Ecuador.

Ŝi ne bonvolas vojaĝi kun mi al Ekvadoro.  
= She is unwilling to go to Ecuador with me.

**Bonvolu** is usual to mean “please” in polite requests and could probably be literally translated “have the kindness to.” It is followed by the infinitive. (A minority usage creates the adverb **bonvole** and uses it with a verb in the U-mood.)

Bonvolu pagi lin.  
= Please pay him.

Bonvole pagu lin.  
= Please pay him.

In writing, the abbreviation **bv.** often substitutes for **bonvolu**.

**Bonvolu!** is also a polite expression used to signal that the other person should take the thing offered, when passing out candies or snacks, for example. (= “Please have some!”) It may also be used in ceding the way to someone else, as through a door (= “After you!”) or to invite someone to proceed with his plans (= “Go right ahead!”). In some countries it is said by the host to signal that guests should begin eating.

**vulgara = popular, ordinary, lay, common ; colloquial.**

**Not to be confused with:**

**triviala** = vulgar, indelicate, low class.

**bagatela** = trivial.

**maldeca** = indecent.

Li estas famega scienca vulgarigisto.  
= He is a famous science popularizer.

La keĉva estas la vulgara lingvo de Bolivio.  
= Quechua is the colloquial language of Bolivia.

Li studis la klasikan araban lingvon, ne la vulgaran.  
= He studied Classical Arabic, not spoken Arabic.

Al decaj personoj kiel ni, neniam plaĉas trivialaj ŝercoj!  
= Vulgar jokes never please decent people like us!

La prezo estos por la riĉuloj nur bagatela afero.  
= For the rich, the price will be only a trivial matter.

Ŝi verkas vulgaraĵn librojn, li maldecajn.  
= She writes books for a lay audience; he writes dirty ones.

**vulpo** = fox.

**Not to be confused with:**

**lupo** = wolf.

*-Stupid mnemonic for “fox”: “The wily vulp in a single gulp ate the hen entirely ulp!”
--

Laŭ okcidentuloj, vulpoj estas ruzaj kaj ruĝaj.  
= According to Westerners, foxes are clever and red.

Lupo primanĝis Ruĝan Kapuĉulineton. Li nomiĝis Lupi-la-Lupo.\*  
= A wolf devoured Little Red Riding Hood. His name was Wooly-the-Wolf.

**vundi** = to hurt, wound. See [dolori](#).

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [Ĉ](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [Ĝ](#) [H](#) [Ĥ](#) [I](#) [J](#) [Ĵ](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#) [O](#) [P](#) [R](#) [S](#) [Ŝ](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [Z](#)

**zorgi** = attend to, take responsibility for, care for, tend (normally plus pri).

Even more than **klopodi**, **zorgi** tends to suggest anxiety. The compound **prizorgi** is as common as **zorgi pri**.

Patrino zorgas pri siaj infanoj.  
= A mother looks after her children.

Vi prizorgu la manĝaĵon.

= You look after the food.

Vi neniam prizorgas pri mi!<sup>z</sup>

= You never bother about me!

Pli da havo, pli da zorgoj.<sup>z</sup>

= More possessions, more cares.

Li suferas pro financaj zorgoj.

= He suffers from financial worries.

Li havas financajn zorgojn.

= He has financial responsibilities.

Compare [varti](#), [klopodi](#), [okupiĝi](#).

A B Ĉ D E E Ĝ Ĥ H Ĥ I J Ĵ K L M N O P R S Ĥ T U V Z

---

## Part I: Esperanto Grammar

### Appendix on Participles

Because participles have a particularly nasty reputation among American Esperantists, this appendix aims to supplement the discussion in the text by providing some background into the issues involved in the inordinate amount of discussion they have received.

#### Participles: The Brief Story

A participle is an adjective formed from a verbal stem.

She is the **reigning** monarch.

They bought a **used** car.

He sat on the newly **painted** bench.

It will be a **written** exam.

The English *-ing* (“reigning”) participle is a “present active” participle because

it refers to the present and reflects the action of the noun it modifies. (The monarch reigns and does so at this time.) The *-ed* participle (“used”) is a “past passive” participle because it usually reflects the previous action of others upon the noun it modifies. (The car was already used by someone.)

Esperanto also has active and passive participles that reflect time. But, unlike English, Esperanto includes participles for all three of its tenses, both active and passive: a total of six participles.\*

\*-In the nature of things the distinction between active and passive forms makes sense only with transitive verbs. Passive participle endings are not used with intransitive verb roots. At least not correctly!

The Esperanto verbal system includes three tense-linked suffixes attached directly to a verbal stem:

amas = loves (the present tense)  
amis = loved (the past tense)  
amos = will love (the future tense)

The same vowels are used as time-markers in the system of participles:

	Active Participles	Passive Participles
Present	am-a-nta = loving	am-a-ta = being loved
Past	am-i-nta = having loved	am-i-ta = having been loved
Future	am-o-nta = going to love	am-o-ta = to be loved

(Note that in English I have used forms of the verb “to have” to try to create approximations to the Esperanto forms. There is no such usage in Esperanto. In particular **havi** must *never* be used as an auxiliary verb this way. **Havi** means “to possess” and nothing else!)

These verbal adjectives, like any other adjectives, can be used attributively:

la dormanta virino = the sleeping woman  
la manĝanta porko = the pig that is eating

Or they can be used with the verb **esti** to form a predicate:

La virino estas dormanta. = The woman is sleeping.  
La porko estas manĝanta. = The pig is eating.



Of course, since participles, unlike other adjectives, show time, and since the verb **esti** in such sentences also shows time, time can become very precisely indicated in such sentences, sometimes ludicrously so:

La porko estas manĝonta. = The pig is going-to-eat.

La porko estis manĝonta. = The pig was going-to-eat.

La porko estos manĝonta. = The pig will be going-to-eat.

That is probably all you need to know about participles. As a bottom line for people who do not want to read “The Full Story,” below, what is shown in verbs is time, but what is shown by participles, most Esperantists now finally agree, is actually state of completion rather than time as such. That is to say, **-is**, **-as**, and **-os** show when something happens. But **-inta** and **-ita** show that the action is completed at the time in question, **-anta** and **-ata** show that it is in progress, and **-onta** and **-ota** show that it is anticipated but not yet begun. To say “The building was built in 1935,” one uses the form **estis konstruita** because construction was completed. To say it “had already been built by 1935,” one says **estis jam konstruita**, showing the pluperfect by means of the adverb **jam**.

An idiom that may constitute a partial exception is the expression **esti okupata** = “to be busy,” which also occurs as **esti okupita** with no difference whatever in meaning, at least when it refers to people.

### Participles: The Full Story (And the Famous “Ata/Ita” Problem)

Now we come to the core of the so-called ata/ita problem, which so plagued Esperanto stylists during the 1950s and early 1960s. Although the three regular verb forms themselves are always active (**manĝas**, **manĝis**, **manĝos**), the participles may be either active (**manĝinta** = “having eaten”) or passive (**manĝita** = “eaten, having been eaten”). Therefore the combination of **esti** and a passive participle constitutes a kind of passive verb:

La libro estas jam legita. = The book has already been read.

La unua pilko estos ĵetita de mi. = The first ball will be thrown by me.

Because the passive participle includes an indication of time, and the form of **esti** also includes an indication of time, time is potentially shown twice. There is therefore no exact passive equivalent of a sentence like **La porko manĝas** = “The pig is eating,” which contains only one indication of

time (-as). The passive sentences that are possible are made with the passive participles. Because the passive sentences each have two time markers, the active equivalents must also have two time markers. So **La porko manĝas** is not strictly an active equivalent of any passive form. A real passive can only be made with passive participles, not with simple verbs. Here is a table. The English glosses are very artificial in order to line up directly with the Esperanto expressions. English, after all, is a different language!

Active	Passive
La porko manĝas. = The pig eats/ is eating.	(no strict equivalent)
La porko estas manĝanta. = The pig is eating.	La porko estas manĝata. = The pig is being-eaten.
La porko estas manĝinta. = The pig has eaten (Lit.: is having- eaten)	La porko estas manĝita. = The pig has been eaten (Lit.: is having-been-eaten)
La porko estas manĝonta. = The pig is going-to-eat.	La porko estas manĝota. = The pig is to-be-eaten.

If we shift the **estas** to **estis** in each of these sentences, the effect is to change the “is” of the English translations to a “was”:

Active	Passive
La porko manĝis. = The pig ate/ was eating.	(no strict equivalent)
La porko estis manĝanta. = The pig was eating.	La porko estis manĝata. = The pig was being-eaten.
La porko estis manĝinta. = The pig had eaten (Lit.: was having- eaten)	La porko estis manĝita. = The pig had been eaten (Lit.: was having-been- eaten)
La porko estis manĝonta. = The pig was going-to-eat.	La porko estis manĝota. = The pig was to-be-eaten.

Technically there is no way to say in Esperanto “The pig is eaten,” or “The pig

\*- Esperanto also possesses a “pseudo-passive”

was eaten.” One has to specify whether the pig is (or was) *being* eaten or whether it has (or had) *already been* eaten. Esperanto is more precise than English (or most other languages) in this particular because Esperanto passive constructions are made only with participles.\*

form made with **-iĝ-**. It also exploits the use of the dummy pronoun **oni** with active verbs. Both of those devices are simpler, more frequent, and more elegant than full passives. There is therefore no problem expressing passive ideas in Esperanto; the problem arises when people insist on expressing them exclusively by using passive participles!

In many cases so much precision is not actually desirable. Consider the following sentence: “The house was built many years ago.” As a practical matter, in Esperanto we would probably say **Oni konstruis la domon** or **La domo konstruiĝis**, but if we want to use a passive participle, then we have to decide whether “was built” here means

estis konstru-ita = was having-been-built = had been built

OR

estis konstru-ata = was being-built = was under construction

In other words, we have to decide whether what we care about is that the house was abuilding many years ago, or that it was finished. Both of these things are true. The English sentence does not distinguish between them. Neither, presumably, would an Esperanto passive that was a true transform of the active sentence: **Li konstruis la domon.** = “He built the house.” How then are we to choose between the two forms? Should the passive be formed with **-ata** or with **-ita**?

The way in which this choice was to be made became a technical problem in Esperanto linguistics, but the way in which arguments were devised to justify one solution rather than the other is a fascinating study in the ideology of language and a stormy chapter in the history of the Esperanto movement. The ata/ita problem is probably one of the most absurd trivia of Esperanto grammar, and yet at one moment in our history it turned father against son, student against teacher, friend against

\*-Principal books by atists include: Jung: *La esperanta konjugacio* (1965-66); Setälä, Vilborn, & Støp-Bowitz: *Esperanto: moderna lingvo* (1965); Mimó: *Kompleta lernolibro de regula Esperanto* (1973).  
Principal books by itists include: Glük & Willems: *La verbo en Esperanto* (1937).  
Kalocsay: *Vojaĝo inter la tempoj* (1966);  
Kalocsay & Waringhien: *Plena gramatiko de Esperanto* (1935, 1938, 1964);  
Kalocsay & Waringhien: *Plena analiza gramatiko de Esperanto* (1980);  
Schwartz: *Ne kiel Meier!* (1964);  
Waringhien: *Lingvo kaj vivo* (1959).

friend, and colleague against colleague in the most bitter internal conflict. For years argument went back and forth, and there were whole books devoted to the problem of the passive participles!\*

So far I have translated and explained the participles as though only “tense” or “time” were at issue. The choice of a translation for a sentence seemed simply a matter of being more precise about time than one is in English. However Zamenhof's explanations about his intentions are not unambiguous about this. He described the use of passive participles in two slightly different ways. On the one hand, **-ata** is to be taken to mean that “the act is, was, or will be present in relation to the time in question,” i.e., the time of the main verb; and **-ita** is to be used “if the act has been accomplished earlier than the time in question,” i.e., earlier than the time of the main verb. In other words, the issue is time.

On the other hand, he continues by saying: “If one considers only the deed accomplished, the result of the act and not its taking place, one uses **-ita**.” And “in sum, **-ata** always entails the idea of some duration in the accomplishment of the act, which one regards as present in its mode or tense. On the contrary, **-ita** always entails an idea of an act that is not continuing, of which one is concerned only with the fulfilled action, the result. This form shows the priority of the action [in time], if one compares its time with the time of another act.”\* 2 In other words, the issue is completion or incompleteness.

\*-Quoted in *Aktoj de la Akademio* 1963-1967:  
*Oficiala Bulteno de la Akademio de Esperanto* n-ro 9. 1968, pp. 41-42.

Zamenhof, in other words, sees the difference between **-ata** and **-ita** as one both of tense and of what in Slavic languages is called “aspect” or completion. The point of controversy arises in whether a sentence like “The house was built many years ago” should be translated as

A. La domo	estis	konstruata	antaŭ multaj jaroj
	past time of the action	same time as the main verb	

or as

B. La domo	estis	konstruita	antaŭ multaj jaroj
	past time of the action	accomplished act (duration of the act unimportant)	

The first position, technically referred to as the “clearly temporal system” (**nete tempa sistemo**), was colloquially called **atismo**, while the second was referred to as **itismo**, because of the two participles selected.

Actually, a third translation could also be made, following the view that, although one is concerned with a house already built, one's concern is a present one, and accordingly the constructing should be put in the past, while the verb should be in the present:

C. La domo	estas	konstruita	antaŭ multaj jaroj
	present, time of reference	past, time of the action	

There was a simplifying logic to this, but it was clearly a minority view that need not be seriously considered in understanding the Great Debate over all of this.

The arguments in favor of one position or the other made appeal to various sources of authority. Both sides cited the writings of Zamenhof, both in and about Esperanto, but Zamenhof's statements never (and his examples rarely) distinguished tense from aspect with sufficient clarity to allow a decision to be made by anyone not already committed. The “atists” made an additional appeal to the verbal system of Western European languages: **Estis -ita**, they argued, is a “pluperfect,” corresponding to the English “had X-ed,” and to comparable forms in other western European languages. (That is how I translated **La porko estis manĝita**, above.) The “atists” probably committed a rhetorical blunder here, since appeals to general Western European usage sometimes succeed in defending choices of vocabulary in Esperanto, but rarely succeed in defending one or another grammatical usage, and can usually be counted on to raise the hackles of those

Esperantists who (like me) insist that Esperanto is an *independent* language, not a mere shadow of Latin or English or French or German or whatever.

Arguments raged between “atists” and “itists, with most Esperantists rather puzzled about the whole thing. The closest thing to an “official” solution that ever emerged, and the triumph in the end of “itism,” was a 1965 notice from the Academy of Esperanto, which enunciated four positions:\*

\*-Ibid., p. 43. The document is not a formal declaration of the Academy, since the “atists,” sensing defeat, apparently staged a walk-out to prevent a quorum. So it merely reports the vote of those attending, as I understand it, which was 26 favoring the itist side out of 31 voting. Such an overwhelming victory for itism has since been regarded by most Esperantists (including me) as tantamount to an Academy declaration, official or not.

1. The Esperanto tense system consists of but three tenses: the present, the past, and the future.
2. All other time relationships (such as the pluperfect, future perfect, etc. of many other languages) are expressed by adverbs, conjunctions, or simply by context.
3. The six participles, used either with nouns or with the verb **esti**, show aspect, not tense. They show, in other words, in what phase of the action the subject finds himself with respect to the object: whether beginning and unfinished (**-ant**, **-at**), finished and fulfilled (**-int**, **-it**), or not yet begun but intended or awaited (**-ont**, **-ot**).
4. Accordingly the forms with **-ata** focus upon the duration or repetition of the act, and the forms with **-ita** focus upon the result of the act. The forms with **-ita** can also show priority in time in the event that there is separate evidence of that in the sentence, such as a word like **jam** = “already.”

Thus **La domo estis konstruita** (“The house was having-been-built”) means “the house was built” unless some additional word in the sentence specifically requires it to mean “the house had been built.” And conversely “the house was built many years ago” *must* correspond to **estis konstruita**, *not* to **estis konstruata** (or **estas konstruita**).

But the Academy draft text continued with a further note. Since up to now no “official” definition had existed for the usage of the passive participles, opinions on this matter have naturally been diverse, it explained, so the new ruling should not be interpreted as a condemnation of those Esperantists who had taken the “atist” position. To encourage peace in the

family, the Academy recommended that all further abstract discussion be avoided and it be left to practical usage to drift into logical conformity with itself.

Agreement with the new position was not immediate, in spite of Academy efforts to stifle debate after it had spoken, and in 1967 the Academy released some examples to the press in answer to some rather legalistic language problems developed by the French Union for Esperanto and the Esperanto Union of German Instructors. The test examples were, it seems to me, clear examples of the difference between an “artist” and an “itist” position, but even so the Academy was not unanimous in its vote. Here are the test sentences. The English glosses follow the scheme for literal translation used earlier when the pig was being eaten, and therefore contain something of an “artist” bias, but they should be understood as neutral at least in intention, seeking merely to provide a crude English gloss that will be as literal as possible.

### Problem 1.

Ni garantias, ke la domoj detruitaj dum la milito **estos rekonstruataj** en 1970.

= We guarantee that the houses destroyed during the war will-be being-reconstructed in 1970.

Thus the guarantors will have made good

A. if in the course of 1970 the reconstruction begins and continues.

B. only if in the course of 1970 the reconstruction is finished.

### Problem 2.

Mi promesas, ke mia ŝuldo **estos pagita** la 9an de majo.

= I promise that my debt will-be having-been-paid the 9th of May.

Thus the debtor will relieve himself from debt

A. on or before the 9th of May.

B. earlier than the 9th of May.

### Problem 3.

Ni asertas, ke la aŭtomobilo de s-ro X **estis efektive riparata** la lastan semajnon.

= We affirm that Mr. X's car was actually being-repaired last week.

Thus last week

A. someone was really occupied with the repair of the car.

B. the repair of the car was finished.

#### Problem 4.

Via propono estis unuamente akceptita la 3an de junio.

= Your proposal was unanimously having-been-accepted on the 3rd of June.

Thus they accepted the proposal

A. on the 3rd of June.

B. before the 3rd of June.

The Academy, by a vote of 26 to 5 (with six abstentions) decided only sense A in each case “conforms to the traditional language usage of Zamenhof.” [Ibid., p. 74. ]\*

Prominent among the “itists” was Gaston Waringhien, President of the Academy of Esperanto, and insofar as it is possible to tell, the Academy's decisions were based very heavily on documents prepared for them by Waringhien. The logic presented in public documents may or may not have been the only logic discussed in the Academy debates themselves, but it is worth examining here because of its importance in establishing how one determines “correct” usage in Esperanto.

In this case, the issue is represented as having been resolved by appeal to “the traditional language usage of Zamenhof.” Zamenhof's instructions, as we noted, were unclear. And various other writers used the forms differently. The word “traditional” suggests that all of Zamenhof's writings were investigated. But this in itself raises a problem: If Zamenhof was an “atist” in one essay but an “itist” in another, which was to have priority? The most frequent usage? The earliest? The latest? The one I agree with?

The first Esperanto congress in Bologna-sur-Mer had already decreed in 1905 that the only strictly “canonical” portion of Zamenhof's work was the *Fundamentals of Esperanto* (*Fundamento de Esperanto*), and subsequent editions of that work have left the text of it untouched, even when minor errors and inconsistencies have been found and have had to be corrected in marginalia. In Academy Circular No. 76 of February, 1965, President Waringhien argued that the *Fundamentals of Esperanto* consists of four parts: “Preface,” “Grammar in Five Languages,” “Exercises,” and “Universal Vocabulary.” The preface was not officially regarded as part of the *Fundamentals* until 1958, and the “Universal Vocabulary” is only a vocabulary list, rarely germane to problems of usage. [Ibid, p. 29.]\* The “Grammar in Five Languages” provides only the famous sixteen rules, where



this point is not clearly discussed. [Ibid., p. 30.]\* So the “Exercises” of the *Fundamentals* becomes the principal place to look for pointers to good usage. [Ibid., p. 35.]\*

In general one seeks first in the *Fundamentals*; and within the *Fundamentals*, in the “Grammar” before the “Exercises,” and in the “Preface” last of all. Minute examination of the *Fundamentals* precedes even casual examination of other works of Zamenhof or of anybody else, not to say contemporary spoken usage.

The points that an English speaker should bear in mind about all this pettifoggery are these:

1. Ideas expressed with passives in English are usually expressed with **oni** or with **-iĝ-** in Esperanto. There is no direct passive verb as such in Esperanto, only a participial passive form which can be used to create compound passive constructions.
2. Accordingly, passive constructions in Esperanto have greater precision (whether about time or aspect) than they do in many languages, often more precision than you really want.
3. If an idea really is best expressed by a passive participle construction, the distinction among **-ata** (duration) and **-ita** (completion or, with an adverb, prior time) and the occasional **-ota** (expectation) is not usually difficult to make.
4. If there is any doubt, it is nearly always preferable to recast the sentence into the active form and use **oni** as the subject:  
Oni konstruis la domon antaŭ multaj jaroj.  
= The house was built many years ago.  
Oni manĝis la porkon.  
= The pig was eaten. = They ate the pig.
5. If you insist on using passive participle constructions in doubtful cases, you will almost certainly be thought inelegant, but fewest Esperantists will be jarred by the **-ita** form.
6. When using **-ita** to represent the English pluperfect (= “had X-ed”), be certain that an adverb (usually **jam** = “already”) or clear context makes any other interpretation of the clause impossible:  
La libroj estis venditaj kiam li venis.  
= The books were sold when he came. (ambiguous)

La libroj estis jam venditaj kiam li venis.  
= The books had already been sold when he came.

La libroj estis venditaj antaŭ ol li venis.  
= The books had been sold before he came.

La libroj estis venditaj post kiam li venis.  
= The books were sold after he came.

Final Note: The participles are occasionally rendered into verbs by substituting verbal endings for the final -a of the participle and dropping the form of **esti**, producing verbally complex ideas. Such forms are sometimes adduced as evidence that the Esperanto verbal system is non-European in its basic logic.

konstru-at-as (= estas konstruata) = is being constructed  
konstru-ot-is (= estis konstruota) = was to be constructed  
konstru-int-os (= estos konstruinta) = will have constructed etc.

The odd wit even occasionally produces monsters like **konstruintus** and **konstruontu**, although I have never seen them get as far as an above-ground printing press. Unfortunately, such verbs can themselves logically become participles: **Ĝi estis konstruotinta!** = "It was to be constructed."

Pagu tuj la monon, kiun vi al mi ŝuldas!  
= Immediately pay the money you owe me!

Mi estas pagonta.  
= I am going to pay it.

Jam hieraŭ vi estis pagonta. Pagu nun!  
= Already yesterday you were going to pay it. Pay now!

Vi pravus ke mi pagontis hieraŭ, do hodiaŭ mi pagontintas.  
= You are right that yesterday I was going to pay it, so today I have already been going to pay it!

Jam hieraŭ jam vi pagontintontis. Pagu tuj!  
= Already yesterday you had been going to have been going to pay it. Pay immediately!

Ho, do morgaŭ mi estos pagontintinta. Ĉu vi ne povos atendi ĝis mi jam

pagontintontintos?

= Oh well, tomorrow I shall have been having been going to have been going to pay it. Couldn't you wait till I will already have been going to have been going to pay it?

Nun mi plene kunfuziĝas.

= Now I am completely confused.

Ĝis revido.

= See you later.

Attractive as such forms are to a certain kind of mentality, they are far outside of mainstream Esperanto, and tend to confuse one's listener or reader, so they are actually available only as a form of verbal play. But who knows what the future may hold?